



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

✓ Educ T 919.00.448



HARVARD UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

TRANSFERRED

TO

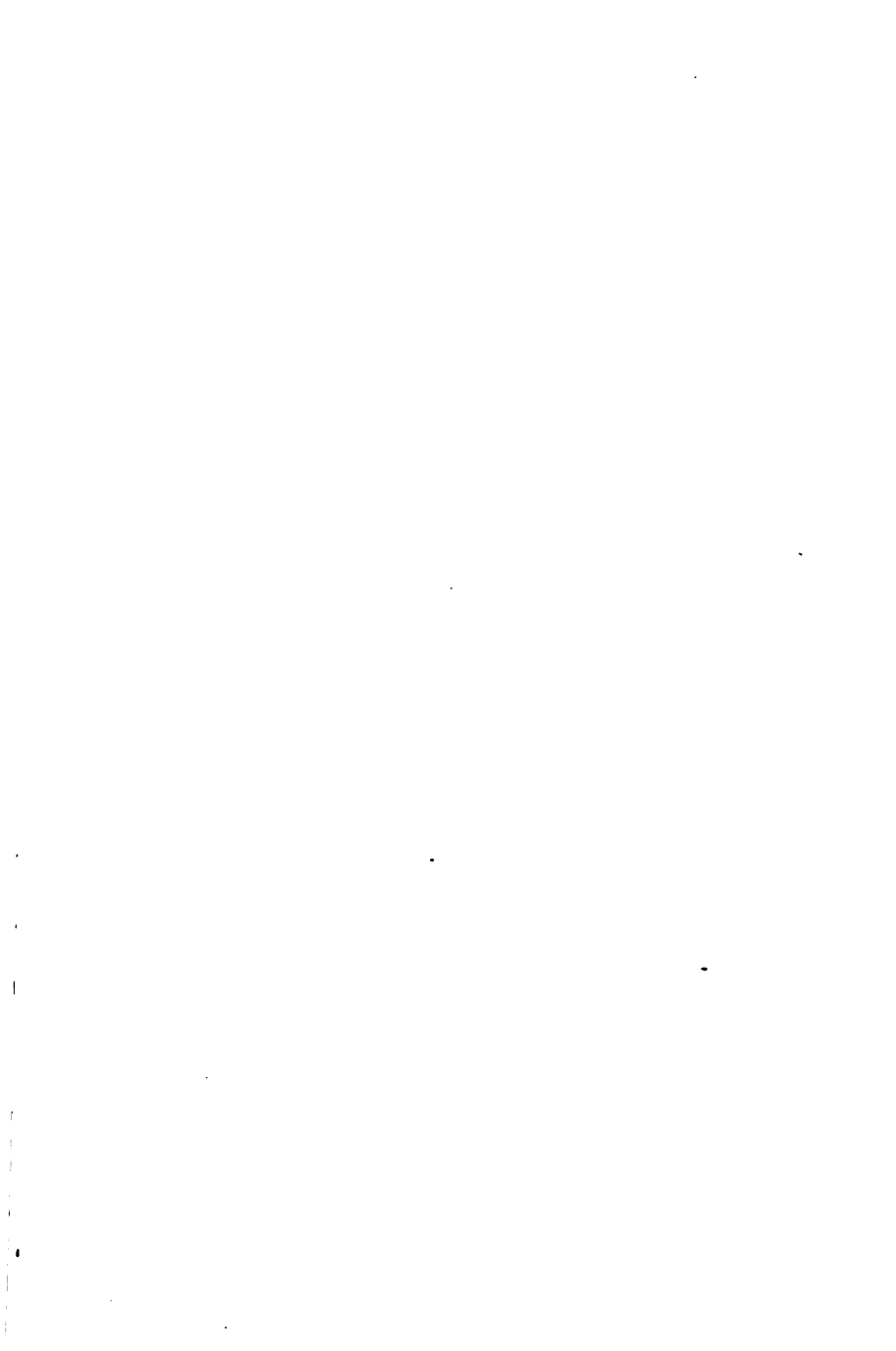
HARVARD COLLEGE

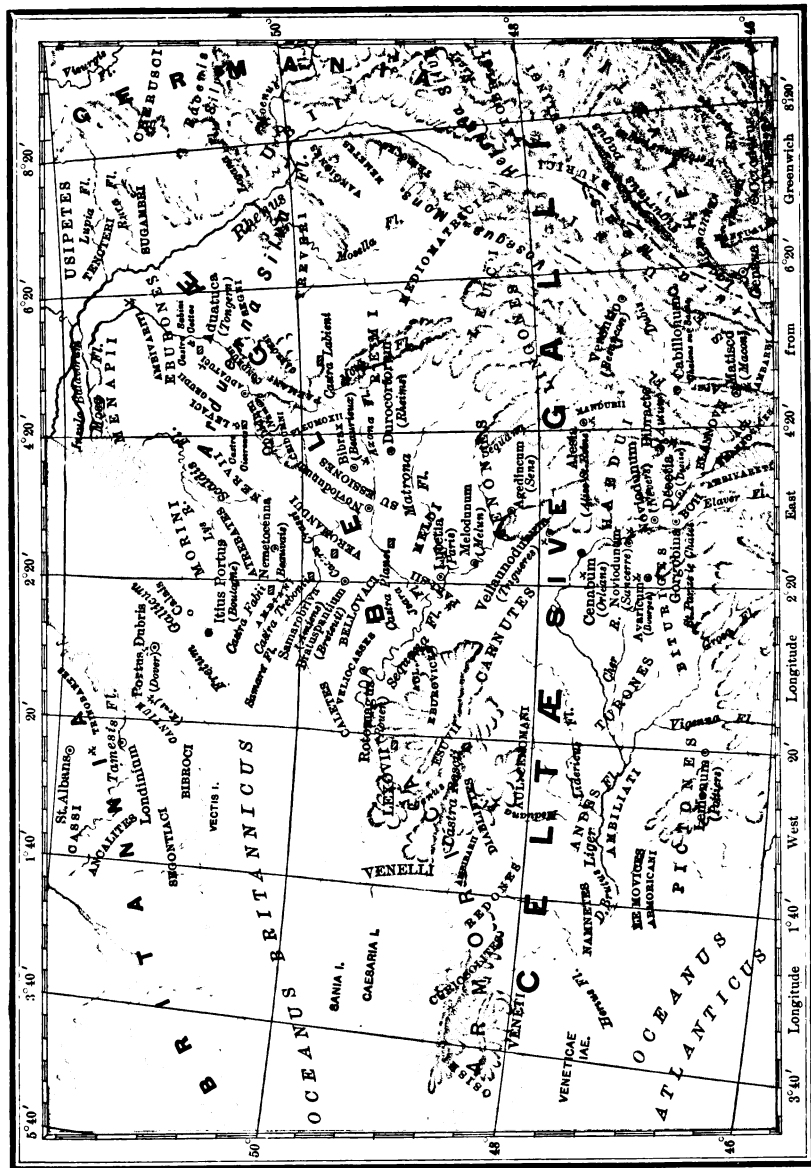
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 078 638







THE
ELEMENTS OF LATIN

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, PH.D., D.D., LL.D.

PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

ISAAC B. BURGESS, A.M.

THE ACADEMY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

FORMERLY OF THE BOSTON LATIN SCHOOL



NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

~~T 113.4838~~

Educ T 919.00.448

**Harvard University,
Dept. of Education Library**

TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

June 12, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1900, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

ELEMENTS OF LATIN.

W. P. I

PREFACE

THE nearly nine years which have elapsed since the "Inductive Latin Primer" appeared have been years of ceaseless discussion and marked progress among classical teachers. By our own use of the book and by the criticisms of many teachers we have greatly profited. A better text-book can now be made than was possible in 1891. The most important differences between this book and the "Primer" are the following:—

1. Instead of beginning at once upon the text of Caesar, sixteen introductory Lessons are given to carefully selected forms and rules. These forms and rules are just the ones which will most directly lead to a reading knowledge of the author chosen.

2. When the text of Caesar is taken up, it is so simplified that no large number of new forms or syntactical rules will meet the pupil in any one lesson.

3. The text is chosen especially for its simplicity and interest. It covers the first and second invasions of Britain and the career of the Haeduan chieftain Dumnorix. In amount it is greater than either the second, the third, or the fourth book of the Gallic War. In this we have followed the recent report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association, which recommends that between twenty and thirty pages of connected text be covered during the first year.

4. Greater attention has been given to the Vocabulary. New words are compared with words previously learned, and a constant review of old words is kept up by means of abundant, easy exercises. Thus, Lesson XLII contains a

review of all first declension nouns used up to this point, and Lesson XLIII a review of all conjunctions. In addition, every one of the five review Lessons contains exercises employing all the new words used in the Lessons under review. The sixty-eight Lessons contain about eight hundred words.

5. The number of topics treated has been reduced, and every topic when introduced is treated with such fullness that the pupil's knowledge will not seem fragmentary. All the larger topics are emphatic and easy to find. A brief summary of the most important forms is given after the Lessons.

It is hoped that this book, like its predecessors, may help the student, however immature, to become a veritable investigator in the language itself, a discoverer of facts, and a self-reliant thinker in the use of these facts. Such a first-hand acquaintance with the language gives interest and zest to its study, and is worth infinite pains on the part of both teacher and student.

It remains to thank the many fellow-workers who have aided us by sympathy and counsel. Special thanks are due to the following who have read the proofs: Assistant Professors F. J. Miller and F. M. Bronson, Mr. A. R. Wightman and Dr. H. E. Jones, of the University of Chicago, and Miss Elizabeth Faulkner of the Harvard School, Chicago. Miss Rosemary Jones of the University of Chicago has assisted in preparing the Vocabulary. The editors of the American Book Company have added not a little to the accuracy and attractiveness of the volume.

WILLIAM R. HARPER.

ISAAC B. BURGESS.

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO,
April, 1900.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	3
TABLE OF CONTENTS	5
SUMMARY OF SYNTAX	9
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	11
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS	12

LESSON

I. Pronunciation of Vowels and Diphthongs. Accent. Nominatives and Accusatives of First Declension. First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active, Third Person. Est and Sunt . . .	13
II. Pronunciation of Consonants. First Declension: Genitives and Datives: Masculine Nouns. First Conjugation: Passive Voice, Present Indicative. Dative with Verbs of <i>Giving</i> and <i>Saying</i>	16
III. First Declension: Ablatives. Ablative and Accusative with Prepositions. First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative, Active and Passive	19
IV. Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension. Ablatives of Means and of Agent	22
V. Masculine Nouns in -us of Second Declension. Predicate Noun and Appositive	25
VI. Nominative, Genitive, and Accusative of Third Declension Nouns in -is . Agreement of Adjectives	28
VII. Dative and Ablative of Third Declension Nouns in -is . Third Declension Adjectives in -is and -e . Agreement of Adjectives continued	31
VIII. First Conjugation: Perfect Tense, Active and Passive . . .	34
IX. First Conjugation: Past Perfect (Pluperfect), Active and Passive. Perfect Passive Participle. Ablative Absolute	37
X. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative. Dative with Adjectives	40

LESSON	PAGE
XI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. Third Declension Nouns in -ō	43
XII. Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect. Third Declension Nouns in -tās, -tūs, -es, -ns, -rs	46
XIII. Third Conjugation: Perfect and Pluperfect. Third Declension Nouns in -x and -ps . Mute Stems	50
XIV. Forms and Simple Uses of Is and Qui	53
XV. The Verb Posse . The Infinitive of All Conjugations. Infinitive as Subject and the Complementary Infinitive	57
XVI. Complete Review of Lessons I.-XV.	61
XVII. Deponent Verbs	67
XVIII. Fourth Declension	71
XIX. Third Declension Nouns in -or	73
XX. Interrogative Words. Ablative with Ūti	76
XXI. Declension of Hic and Ipsē . The Present Subjunctive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations. The Subjunctive of Purpose	79
XXII. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Time	82
XXIII. The Form and Use of the Reflexive Pronoun Sui	85
XXIV. The Present Subjunctive of All Conjugations. The Subjunctive of Will, or Volitive Subjunctive, in Independent and Substantive Clauses	88
XXV. The Future Indicative of All Conjugations. Neuter Nouns in -us, -oris	91
XXVI. The Perfect Infinitive of All Conjugations. The Infinitive after Verbs of Saying and Thinking	95
XXVII. Declension of Idem and Duo	98
XXVIII. Gerund and Gerundive	102
XXIX. Additional Forms of Esse and Posse (cf. XV.). Fifth Declension. Subjunctive of Result	105
XXX. The Imperfect Subjunctive of All Conjugations. The Accusative of Extent of Space	109
XXXI. Review of Lessons XVII.-XXX. Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 20-23	112
XXXII. Neuters in -us, -oris . Ablative of Separation	121
XXXIII. Dative of Apparent Agent. Ablative of Manner and Review of the Ablative. Declension of Ille	124
XXXIV. Two Datives—To Whom and For Which. Review of the Dative	127

TABLE OF CONTENTS

7

LESSON	PAGE
XXXV. The Present Active Participle. The Ending -ō in the First Person Singular	130
XXXVI. The Pluperfect Subjunctive. Use of Cum , <i>when, after, while</i>	133
XXXVII. Verbs in -ō of the Third Conjugation	136
XXXVIII. Nouns and Adjectives in -er . Comparison of Adverbs	140
XXXIX. Future Active Participle and Infinitive. Gerundive Construction. Review of Participles and Infinitives	143
XL. Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse. Review of the Reflexive — Substantive and Adjective	146
XLI. Dative with Compound Verbs	150
XLII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs	154
XLIII. Nine Adjectives with Genitive in -ius . Impersonal Verbs. Review of Gerund and Gerundive	156
XLIV. Review of Lessons XXXII.—XLIII. Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 24–29	159
XLV. Ablative of Cause	164
XLVI. The Formation of Adverbs	167
XLVII. Partitive Genitive. Supine in -um . Review of Expression of Purpose	170
XLVIII. Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference	174
XLIX. Review of Pronouns	176
L. The Future Perfect Indicative and the Perfect Subjunctive	179
LI. Accusative of Duration of Time. Subjunctive in Indirect Question	182
LII. Sequence of Tenses	185
LIII. Review of Gender, All Declensions	189
LIV. Review of Lessons XLV.—LIII. Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 30–36	193
LV. Two Accusatives after Verbs of Asking and Teaching. Nouns in -men	196
LVI. Mode and Tense used after Ubi , Postquam , Simul atque . Review of Time Constructions. Causal and Concessive Use of Cum	199
LVII. Complete Inflection of the Present Indicative Active in All Conjugations. Declension of Ego and Tū	202
LVIII. Use of Quin . Inflection of the Perfect Indicative Active, All Conjugations. Review of Indirect Discourse	204
LIX. First Conjugation, Active Voice, Complete	208
LX. Ablative of Quality. Second Conjugation, Active Voice, Complete. Participles of Deponent Verbs	210

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
LXI. Conjugation of Esse and Posse , Complete	214
LXII. Third and Fourth Conjugations, Active Voice, Complete . .	216
LXIII. The Irregular Verb Fīō (Fieri)	219
LXIV. The Verb Ire (Eō). Subjunctive of Wish (Optative). Construction with Verbs of Fearing. Construction with Antequam and Priusquam , and Dum , <i>until</i>	223
LXV. Conjugation of Velle , Nōlle , Mālle . Negative Purpose . .	227
LXVI. Review of Indirect Discourse. The Indirectly Quoted Imperative. Present Indicative Passive, All Conjugations . . .	229
LXVII. The Passive Voice, Complete, All Conjugations	233
LXVIII. Review of Lessons LV.-LXVII. Caesar's Gallic War, Book I., Chapters 16-20	236
THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. Caesar's Gallic War, Book V., Chapters 1-23 (with omissions)	242
SUMMARY OF LATIN FORMS	262
VOCABULARY	291

SUMMARY OF LATIN SYNTAX

Arranged in the usual order of the Grammars with references to the paragraphs of this book in which the topics are treated. There is a Summary of Latin Forms in 413-441.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE. RULES OF AGREEMENT

Case of the Subject, 4.	Agreement of Appositive, 23, c.
Agreement of Verb, 4.	Agreement of Adjectives, 27, d, e, 32.
Agreement of Predicate, 23, b, c.	Agreement of Pronouns, 71, a.

VOCATIVE

Use, 202, 7.

ACCUSATIVE

Of Direct Object, 4.	With Verbs of <i>Asking</i> and <i>Teaching</i> , 311, 1.
With Prepositions, 12, 16.	As Subject of Infinitive, 145, a.
With Verbs of <i>Making</i> , <i>Calling</i> , etc., 23, c, d.	Of Extent, 173, 6, b, 288, 7.

DATIVE

Case of the Indirect Object, 8, a.	Of Apparent Agent, 192, 1, b.
With Verbs of <i>Giving</i> , <i>Saying</i> , etc., 8, a.	With Adjectives, 48.
To Whom and For Which, 197, 6.	With Special Verbs, 350, 5, 396, 5, 408, 7.
With Compounds, 235, 5.	

GENITIVE

Of Possession, 8, b.	Partitive, 266.
Wider Use, 278, 5.	With Adjectives, 395, 7.
Of Quality, 395, 3.	

ABLATIVE

Of Separation, 187, 5.	With <i>ut</i> , 107, 7, b.
Of Agent, 18.	Of Measure of Difference, 273, 1.
Of Quality, 339, 2.	Of Respect (Specification), 394, 2.
Of Manner, 192, 7.	Of Time, 119, 3.
Of Cause, 257, 4.	Absolute, 42, 392, 1.
Of Means, 18.	With Prepositions, 12, 16.

LOCATIVE

Form and Use, 375, 4.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Study of Examples, 294.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

Of Will, 131, 2.

Of Wish, 361.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

To express Purpose, Positive and Negative, 113, 2, 119, 5, 370, 8.

To express Result, 167, 9.

In Substantive Clauses: Of Will, 133, 4; of Wish, after Verbs of

Fearing, 361; of Result, 240, 1.

After *quā*, 328, 14.After Causal and Concessive *cum*, 316, 9, c.After *cum* temporal, 208, 5.After *dum*, *until*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, 362.

In Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse, 230, 3.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Principal, Declarative Clauses, 145.

Subordinate Clauses, 230, 3.

Interrogative Clauses, 288, 9.

Imperative Clauses, 376.

Review and Practice, 327, 328, 374, 375.

VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Participle in Ablative Absolute Construction, 42.

Complementary Infinitive, 77.

Infinitive as Subject, 77.

Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, 145.

The Present Active Participle, 203.

Gerund and Gerundive, 160.

Gerundive Construction, 224, 8.

Future Active Participle and Infinitive, 224, 3.

Supine in *-um*, 268, 2.

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives in Dependent Verbs, 339, 7.

Historical Infinitive, 395, 9.

MISCELLANEOUS

Use of the Reflexive, 124, 230, 1, 8.

Dependent Verbs, 87, 339, 7.

Interrogative Words, 107, 4, 108.

Impersonal Verbs, 246.

Different Ways of expressing Purpose, 268, 2.

Pronouns, 278, 11, 395, 6, 407, 7.

Construction after *ubi*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, 316, 3.Construction after *dum*, *antequam*, and *priusquam*, 288, 5, 362.*Ut* with the Indicative, 392, 2.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

MAP			<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE		PAGE
Lead Sling Shot	15	Roman Foot-soldier	123
<i>Aquila</i>	18	<i>Tormentum</i>	129
<i>Signa</i>	24	Eagle Bearer	133
Roman Coin with Figure of		<i>Signum</i>	137
Britannia	27	<i>Telum</i>	142
<i>Nāvis Longa</i>	30	<i>Arcus et Sagitta</i>	149
<i>Rēmī</i>	36	<i>Castra</i>	153
<i>Ancorae</i>	39	Ancient Carpenters	169
<i>Mīles Rōmānus</i>	49	<i>Iugum</i>	181
<i>Scapha</i>	60	Remains of Roman Camp	182
Caesar	68	Roman Ship	191
Roman Sword	87	Gallic Horsemen	213
Minerva superintending the		A Roman War Ship	241
Building of a Ship	94	<i>Testūdō</i>	249
<i>Nāvis Onerāria</i>	101	Remains of Stonehenge	252
The Cliffs of Dover	105	Stonehenge Restored	253
Roman Ships carrying Troops	115	Roman Writing Materials	261

2. **cau'-sae,¹ reasons.** **proe'-li-um, a battle.**

The two words above contain the common Latin diphthongs, **au**, **ae**, and **oe**.

au is pronounced like *ow* in *how*.

ae " " " *i* " *kite*.

oe " " " *oi* " *oil*.

3. I. { **in-sti-tū'-tum.** 2. { **proe'-li-um.**
 { **ex-spec'-tat, he awaits.** { **in'-su-la, an island.**

On which syllable does the accent rest in the two-syllable Latin words in this lesson? See above, **plāna**, **causae**, etc.

The four words under 3 above illustrate the rules for accent in words of more than two syllables. Note that the next to the last syllable (the penult) is accented if it contains a long vowel (cf. **institūtum**) or if its short vowel is followed immediately by two consonants (cf. **expectat**); otherwise the word is accented on the syllable before the penult (the antepenult).

4. 1. **Īnsula est plāna.**
 The island is flat.
 2. **Īnsulae sunt plānae.**
 The islands are flat.
 3. **Īnsulam explōrat.**
 He, she, or it examines or is examining the island.
 4. **Īnsulās explōrant.**
 They examine or are examining the islands.

Compare the above Latin sentences with their English translations. What is the word for *island* in Latin when it is the subject of a verb? What, when it is the object? What is the word for *islands* when it is the subject of a verb? What, when

¹ The **s** in this word is pronounced with its true hissing sound; not like **s**, as in the English *cause*.

it is the object? What four endings¹ of *insula* have you now learned? Note that *insula* may mean *island*, *an island*, or *the island*; cf. nouns in Vocabulary, below.

Compare *explōrat* and *explōrant*, *est* and *sunt*. What is evidently the meaning of the ending *-t*? the ending *-nt*?

5.

EXERCISE

1. *Explōrat institūtum*. 2. *Causās ferē explōrat*. 3. *Causam explōrant*. 4. *Causa est plāna*. 5. *Causae sunt plānae*. 6. *Aqua est ferē plāna*. 7. *Homō proelium administrat*. 8. *Proelium expectat*. 9. *Proelium expectant*. 10. *Proelium parat*. 11. *Proelium administrant*. 12. *Homō aquam expectat*. 13. *Aquae sunt ferē plānae*. 14. *Īnsulās explōrat*. 15. *Īnsulam explōrant*.

6.

VOCABULARY.

aqua, water.

causa, cause, reason, case (in court).

insula, an island.

plāna, adj., flat, level; clear, obvious.

institūtum, mode of life, habit, custom.

proelium, a battle.

homō, a human being, man.

ferē, adv., usually, almost.

est, he, she, it is; *sunt*, they are.

administrant,² they manage, control, superintend, or they are managing, etc.

explōrant, they search out, examine, ascertain, or they are examining, etc.

expectant, they wait for, await, or they are waiting for, etc.

parant, they make ready, prepare, or they are making ready, etc.



This is a lead sling shot once used in Caesar's army. The Latin word upon it and addressed to it is *ferī*, strike.

¹ The difference of ending will be seen by comparing *insula* and *insulae*.

² What is the singular of each of these verbs, and what three meanings may the personal ending have in the singular?

LESSON II

PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS. FIRST DECLENSION: GENITIVES AND DATIVES: MASCULINE NOUNS. FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE. DATIVE WITH VERBS OF *Giving* AND *Saying*.

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 7. | causa. | sagitta, <i>an arrow.</i> |
| | silva, <i>a forest.</i> | iūdicat, <i>he judges.</i> |
| | incitat, <i>he stirs up.</i> | sententia, <i>an opinion.</i> |
| | scapha, <i>a skiff.</i> | |

1. In **causa**, as always, **s** has its proper hissing sound, not the sound of **z** as in English *cause*.

2. The consonant **v** has the sound of *w*; cf. **silva**.

3. In Latin **c** and **g** are always hard, like *c* in *cat* and *g* in *go*; cf. **incitat**, **sagitta**.

4. In **sententia** do not pronounce **t** before **ia** like *sh* as *t* is pronounced in *nation*. In Latin **t** is always pronounced as *t* in *tin*.

5. The letter **i** before another vowel in the same syllable, as in **iūdicat**, is a consonant, and has the sound of *y* in *yet*.

6. The combination **ph**, as in **scapha**, has practically the sound of *p*.

7. The Romans pronounced every consonant distinctly. When consonants were doubled they did not drop one of them in pronouncing, as we are so apt to do in English. The effect of this pronunciation was to prolong a syllable the vowel of which stood before two consonants; cf. **sa-git-ta** above.

- | | |
|----|--|
| 8. | 1. Proelium aurigae nūntiat.
<i>He reports the battle to the charioteer.</i> |
| | 2. Aquilam aurigae mandat.
<i>He intrusts the eagle to the charioteer.</i> |

3. **Aquilam aurīgīs mandat.***He intrusts the eagle to the charioteers.*4. **Aquilam aurīgāe incitat.***He rouses up the eagle of the charioteer,
or the charioteer's eagle.*5. **Aquilam aurīgārum incitat.***He rouses up the eagle of the charioteers,
or the charioteers' eagle.*6. **Aquila incitātur.***The eagle is roused up.*7. **Aquillae incitantur.***The eagles are roused up.*

a. What is evidently the meaning of the case endings **-ae** and **-is** in sentences 1, 2, 3? The case used in **aurigae** and **aurīgīs** is the case of the indirect object or the DATIVE case. Its commonest use is with verbs of *giving* and *saying*, like **nūntiat** and **mandat**, to name the person to whom something is given or said. In the English sentence, "I gave him the book," the direct object is *book*, the indirect object, or the dative, is *him*. Note that in this English sentence no preposition *to* is expressed, and compare **aurigae**, in which the idea of the preposition *to* is expressed by the ending **-ae**.

b. In sentences 4 and 5, what are the translations of **aurigae** and **aurīgārum**? What are the endings of these two words? They are in the GENITIVE case, corresponding to the English possessive, or objective with *of*. It denotes possession.

c. Make a complete list of the endings of the 1st declension so far as you have learned them. What three uses has the ending **-ae**?

d. Study 6 and 7. In the sentence, "The eagle is roused up," is the subject represented as acting or as acted upon? Such a form as **incitātur**, meaning *he, she, or it is roused up*, is said to be in the PASSIVE VOICE; **incitat**, *he, she, or it rouses up*, is in the ACTIVE VOICE. What is the personal ending of the passive voice meaning *he, she, or it*? What, the ending meaning *they*?

EXERCISES

9. 1. Proelium Cottae nūntiat. 2. Aquilās aurīgae mandat.
 3. Aquilās aurīgīs mandat. 4. Scaphās Cottae ferē parat.
 5. Aquilās aurīgae incitat. 6. Aquilās aurīgārūm incitant.
 7. Aquila dēmōnstrātur. 8. Aquilae dēmōnstrantur. 9. Cottae
 silvam dēmōnstrant. 10. Sententiam aurīgārūm nūntiant.
 11. Iūdicātur. 12. Sagittās exspectat. 13. Iūdicat. 14. Iūdi-
 cantur. 15. Causam iūdicat. 16. Īnstitūtum īnsulae explōrant.
 17. Īnsula ferē plāna Cottae mandātur. 18. Īnsulae sunt plānae.

10. 1. They manage the forest. 2. He manages the forests.
 3. The skiff is large. 4. They are judged. 5. He declares
 the views of Cotta. 6. He stirs up the charioteer. 7. The
 charioteer is stirred up. 8. The opinion of the charioteer is not
 being made known. 9. A large skiff is being made ready.
 10. The eagles are usually intrusted to a charioteer. 11. The
 reason is made known. 12. The man points out the water to
 the charioteers. 13. They are preparing Cotta's arrows.



AQUILA

II.

VOCABULARY

aquila , <i>an eagle</i> ; a metal eagle was the standard of the Roman legion.	aurīga , masc., ¹ <i>a charioteer</i> . Cotta , masc., a Roman name. sagitta , ¹ <i>an arrow</i> .
---	---

¹ In Latin many names of things are masculine or feminine, gender being largely determined by the word ending. But names of males are always masculine; and names of females, feminine. In the 1st declension all nouns, except names of males, are feminine.

scapha, a skiff, boat; see p. 60.
sententia, an opinion, view, judgment, belief.
silva, a forest.
magna, big, large, great.
demonstrant, they point out, show, explain.

incitant, they stir up, arouse.
iudicant, they judge, believe.
mandant, they put into the hand, intrust, commit, command.
nuntiant, they make known, report, announce.
non, adv., not.

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION: ABLATIVES. ABLATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

12.

1. **Cottam in silvam vocant.**

They call Cotta into the forest.

2. **Cottam ex** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{silvā} \\ \text{silvīs} \end{array} \right\}$ **vocant.**

They call Cotta out of $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the forest.} \\ \text{the forests.} \end{array} \right.$

3. **Cotta est in** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{silvā.} \\ \text{silvīs.} \end{array} \right.$

Cotta is in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the forest.} \\ \text{the forests.} \end{array} \right.$

a. What case is used after the preposition **in** in 1?

b. In 2 and 3 the forms **silvā** and **silvīs** are in a case not previously used. It is called the ABLATIVE, and, like the objective, or, as it is also called, the accusative, is used after prepositions. It has many other uses, which will be learned gradually.

c. How does **silvā** differ from the nominative singular **silva**? The plural **silvīs** has the ending of what other case? The 1st declension is now complete, *i.e.* all the cases have been used in both singular and plural. Review the complete declension from 413.

ACTIVE

13.	para-t	{ <i>he prepares.</i> <i>he is preparing.</i>
	para-nt	{ <i>they prepare.</i> <i>they are preparing.</i>
	parā-ba-t	{ <i>he was preparing.</i> <i>he prepared.</i>
	parā-ba-nt	{ <i>they were preparing.</i> <i>they prepared.</i>

PASSIVE

	parā-tur	{ <i>he is prepared.</i> <i>he is being prepared.</i>
	para-ntur	{ <i>they are prepared.</i> <i>they are being prepared.</i>
	parā-bā-tur	{ <i>he was being prepared.</i> <i>he was prepared.</i>
	parā-ba-ntur	{ <i>they were being prepared.</i> <i>they were prepared.</i>

Compare the forms of a new tense, just above, with the forms of the present tense. What two letters inserted between the stem **parā-** and the personal endings are the SIGN of this new tense, *i.e.* distinguish it from the present and other tenses? This is the past imperfect tense, so called because it represents the action as imperfect (or going on) in the past. It is often called simply the IMPERFECT.

EXERCISES

14. 1. Māgnam silvam explōrat. 2. Causam explōrant. 3. Īnstitūtum explōrātur. 4. Aquam explōrābat. 5. Silvae explōrābantur. 6. Explōrantur. 7. Causās explōrābant. 8. Īnsula explōrābātur. 9. Sine causā incitantur. 10. Aurīgās ad proelium

incitant. 11. Aqua plāna prō silvā est. 12. Ob proelium incitābantur. 13. Ob Cottae sententiam nōn incitātur. 14. Aurīgās ad Cottam vocābant. 15. Ex insulis aquilās incitābant. 16. Scaphae in insulā parābantur. 17. Ob plānam causam aquam expectābant. 18. Aurīgīs causam dēmōnstrābat. 19. Proelium aurīgārū administrat. 20. Per aquam ad insulās cum aurīgīs nāvigābant.

15. 1. They carry off the eagle from the forest. 2. They were intrusting the island to Cotta. 3. They bring back eagles from the forests. 4. He was explaining his view to Cotta. 5. He was being summoned on account of (his)¹ opinions. 6. They point out the skiffs in the water near the forests. 7. They are calling the charioteers from the water into the forest. 8. The skiffs were pointed out to the charioteers. 9. They are searching out the forests with the charioteer. 10. He usually gets ready Cotta's arrows.

16.

VOCABULARY

PREPOSITIONS

ā, ab, prep. with abl. (**ā** is used before consonants, **ab** before vowels and **h**; cf. Eng. *a* and *an*), *from, by*.
ad, prep. with accus., *to, toward, near, for*.
ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*. Sometimes written **ē** before consonants.
in,² prep. with accus. and abl.: with accus., *into*; with abl., *in, on, among, at*; cf. 12, 1 and 3.
dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, concerning*.

cum, prep. with abl., *with, in company with*.
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to*.
per, prep. with accus., *through, over*.
ob, prep. with accus., *on account of*.
sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

VERBS

vocant, *they call, summon*.
nāvigant, intransitive, *they sail*.
reportant, *they carry back, carry off* (in case of a victory).

¹ No Latin word is necessary.

² **In** and **sub**, *under*, are used with both the accusative and ablative.

Ā { **proeliō**
proeliis } **nūntiātur.**

It is reported or Word is brought from { *the battle.*
the battles.

1. What is the ending of the nominative singular? Nouns and adjectives with this ending in the nominative singular are neuter.

2. Judging from these sentences, does the form of the accusative, singular or plural, differ from that of the nominative? This is true of neuter nouns of all declensions.

3. Note the new use of the ending -a. How has this ending been used before?

4. Find the complete declension in 414.

18. Proeliō incitantur.

They are stirred up by the battle.

Ab aurīgā incitantur.

They are stirred up by the charioteer.

One of the ablatives used in these sentences is an ablative of MEANS or INSTRUMENT, the other is an ablative of AGENT. Pick out each, remembering that an agent is a person, an instrument is a thing. Which is used with a Latin preposition? Which without? Give other Latin cases translated by a preposition.

EXERCISES

19. 1. Turmīs sagittās mandābant. 2. Sagittae turmae mandantur. 3. Homō¹ ā Cottā probātur. 4. Cōnsilium ā Cottā probābātur. 5. Signō incitābantur. 6. Ad ōram īnsulae cum Cottā nāvigābant. 7. Vincula ob bellum ab aurīgīs parābantur. 8. Cum turmā frūmentum reportat. 9. Signō ad proelium vocantur. 10. Per portās frūmentum in scapham reportābātur. 11. Bellum aurīgae nūntiātur. 12. Perīcula turmārum nūntiantur. 13. Ex silvis aquilās reportābant. 14. Ob periculum aurīgās vocat. 15. Prō Cottā aurīgae vocantur. 16. Studium turmārum in (among) aurīgīs nūntiātur. 17. Sententiae Cottae nūntiantur.

¹ Note that not all nominatives singular end in -a or -um.

20. 1. On account of Cotta's plan war is being prepared. 2. The plans of Cotta were explained to the charioteer. 3. The opinion of Cotta is clear. 4. They are sailing through the water to the coast of the island. 5. Chains are being made ready by Cotta. 6. He intrusts the grain to the squadron. 7. The desire of the charioteers is reported on the island. 8. The desires of Cotta are made known by the signal. 9. The coast is conquered by the zeal of the charioteers. 10. They are overcome by perils. 11. They were calling the squadron down-from the gate. 12. Without danger the customs of the coast of the island were searched out.

21.

VOCABULARY

ōra, a coast.

porta, a gate.

turma, a troop, company, squadron
(of cavalry).

probant, they approve.

superant, they overcome.

bellum, war ; cf. **proellum**.

cōnsilium, a plan, shrewdness,
prudence.

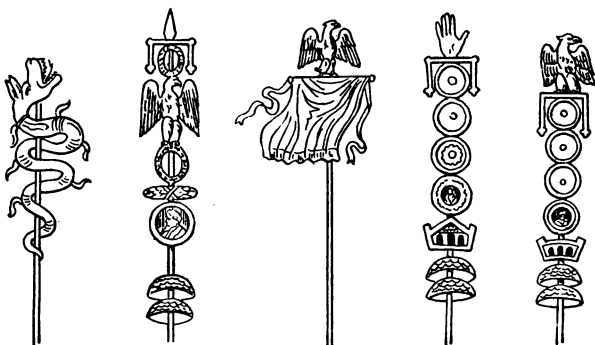
frūmentum, grain.

periculum, that which tests, trial,
peril, danger.

signum, a sign, signal, standard.

studium, desire, zeal, pursuit.

vinculum, that which binds, bond, chain.



SIGNA

LESSON V

MASCULINE NOUNS IN **-us** OF SECOND DECLENSION. PREDICATE
NOUN AND APPOSITIVE.

22. **Lēgātus cōsillum dēmōnstrat.**

The lieutenant explains his plan.

Lēgātī cōsillum dēmōnstrant.

The lieutenants explain their plan.

Lēgātī } **cōsillum dēmōnstrātur.**
Lēgātōrum }

*The plan { of the lieutenant
 of the lieutenants } is explained.*

Lēgātō } **cōsillum dēmōnstrātur.**
Lēgātīs }

*The plan is explained to { the lieutenant.
 the lieutenants.*

Lēgātum } **vocant.**
Lēgātōs }

*They summon { the lieutenant.
 the lieutenants.*

Ā { **lēgātō** } **vocantur.**
 lēgātīs }

*They are called { by the lieutenant.
 by the lieutenants.*

1. What cases of **lēgātus** are like the same cases of **proe-
lium**?

2. What are two uses of the ending **-ī**? Of the ending **-ō**?
Of the ending **-is**?

23. 1. **Cotta est lēgātus.**

2. **Cotta appellātur lēgātus.**

3. **Cottam lēgātum appellat.**

4. **Cotta lēgātus vocātur.***Cotta the lieutenant is invited.*5. **Cottam lēgātum vocat.***a.* Translate each of the above.*b.* Note that in 1 **lēgātus** is a predicate noun, as is the word *lieutenant* in the translation. What is its case? What, that of its subject, **Cotta**, which refers to the same person?*c.* Note from 2 that the copulative verb is not always the verb *to be*, but may be any verb expressing *existence*, or any verb of *making, calling, regarding*, etc.*d.* Note that in 3, where a verb of *calling* in the active voice is used, the two nouns designating the same person still remain in the same case.*e.* Note that in 4 and 5 **lēgātus** and **lēgātum** explain or describe the nouns **Cotta** and **Cottam** without the interposition of the verb **est** or any similar verb. Note that **Cotta** and **lēgātus** refer to the same person. Such a noun is called an **APPOSITIVE**. Compare its case with that of the noun which it describes.*f.* What seems to be the difference in meaning between **vocat** and **appellat**, which may both be translated *call*?

EXERCISES

24. 1. Ad lēgātum praedam turmae reportābant. 2. Praeda lēgātorum per insulam ad portam reportābatur. 3. Britannī in Britannia superantur. 4. Britannia est magna insula. 5. Britannia insula ad bellum ob cōsilia Gāii parābatur. 6. Essedārius Britannorum est aurīga. 7. Gāius in Britannis iudicātur magnus. 8. Gāium magnum iudicant. 9. Gāius est nūntius populi. 10. Gāius et Commius sunt ā bellō nūntiī. 11. Cōsiliū et Gāio et Commio nūntiis nūntiātur. 12. Cōsilia Gāii et Commi Britannis nūntiābantur. 13. Populus essedās essedāriis nōn sine causā mandat. 14. Ob periculum aurigae cōsiliis lēgātorum nōn incitantur. 15. Vincula sunt prō portā. 16. Dē cōsiliis Britannorum nūntiātur (*word is brought*).

25. 1. The people are roused up by the plan of the legates.
 2. The coast is flat. 3. The Britons are summoned by a signal.
 4. The messengers explore Britain, the island of the Britons.
 5. The plunder is brought back by the charioteers. 6. Cotta and Caius are ambassadors. 7. They explain the customs to Commius the messenger. 8. They approve the grain of Britain.
 9. The zeal of Commius is approved by the lieutenant and the people. 10. They were awaiting battle with the Britons.

26.

VOCABULARY

Britanni, nom. plur., *the Britons, people of Britain.*

Britannia, *Britain*, the land of the Britons, now Great Britain.

essedā (or **essedum**), *a war chariot* peculiar to Gaul and Britain.

essedārius, *a driver of an esseda, a charioteer* in Gaul or Britain.

praeda, *plunder, booty.*

Commius, a Gaul sent by Caesar to explore Britain.

Gaius, a Roman first name; in English, *Caius.*

lĕgātus, *a deputy, legate, lieutenant, ambassador.*

nūntius, *a messenger, or a message, news.*

populus, *a people, the people, the citizens.*

et, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

appellant, *they call by name.*



ROMAN COIN

Dated about 138 A.D., showing figure of Britannia

LESSON VI

NOMINATIVE, GENITIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE OF THIRD DECLENSION
NOUNS IN **-is**. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

27. 1. **Magna nāvis expectābātur.**
A large ship was being awaited or was awaited.
2. **Magnae nāvēs expectābantur.**
Large ships were being awaited or were awaited.
3. { **Magnae nāvis**
 Magnarum nāvium } **scaphās expectābant.**
They were awaiting the boats { *of the large ship.*
 of the large ships.
4. { **Magnam nāvem**
 Magnās nāvis¹ } **expectābant.**
They were awaiting { *the large ship.*
 the large ships.

a. **Nāvis** is of the 3d declension and feminine gender. From the study of the above sentences make a list of its endings in the nominative, genitive, and accusative singular and plural.

b. Compare the nominative singular with the genitive singular; the nominative plural with the accusative plural; the genitive singular with the accusative plural.

c. In what respect is the nominative singular like the nominative singular of **lēgātus**? The accusative singular like the accusative singular of **lēgātus** and **causa**? The accusative plural like the accusative plural of **lēgātus** and **causa**?

d. Compare the adjective in each of the sentences with the noun which it limits. What is true of the gender, number, and case of the adjective as compared with the gender, number, and case of the noun which it limits?

e. We say **nāvis magna**, but **auriga magnus** and **proelium magnum**. Note that every adjective ending in **-a** in the feminine

¹ **Nāvēs** is also found in the accusative plural

has a masculine form in **-us**, and a neuter form in **-um**. Note further that the forms in **-a**, **-us**, and **-um** are declined like nouns in **-a**, **-us**, and **-um**.

f. The neuter **mare, sea**, is declined much like **nāvis**. Thus the genitives are **maris** and **marium**. The nominative plural is **maria**. What would the accusative singular and plural be? Cf. 17, 2.

EXERCISES

28. 1. Lēgātō Rōmānō Gallicam Commī classem mandant. 2. Gallica classis in Galliam Gallōs reportābat. 3. Classis Gāii ā nūntiō altō¹ administrābātur. 4. Gallī māgnā nūnti scaphā reportābantur. 5. Britannōrum nūntius collem altum dēmōnstrat. 6. Īnstitūta Britannōrum ab aurīgā dēmōnstrābantur. 7. Fūnēs nāvis sunt longī. 8. Hostīs proeliō māgnō superant. 9. Hostēs studiō praedae² incitantur. 10. Lēgātī hostium maria alta explōrant. 11. Īnsulam essedāriōrum Britanniam appellābant. 12. Ob hostis turma ex silvā frūmentum reportat. 13. Dē (*concerning*) sentiētiā hostium lēgātō nūntiātur.

29. 1. Cotta the legate is not roused up without reason. 2. The deep sea is smooth. 3. They are sailing on the deep water to Gaul. 4. They were sailing with the Gauls and the Britons. 5. On account of the danger they were summoning a large fleet. 6. In behalf of the people they were carrying back both the grain and the standards. 7. They were preparing large chariots and long chains. 8. They are sailing through the deep sea. 9. The wars are called Gallic. 10. (There)³ are long arrows in the skiff. 11. The ropes of the ships were being made ready. 12. The man is tall.

¹ In connection with the name of a man, would this word better be translated *high* or *tall*? The translations given in the vocabularies should be modified to suit the particular sentence.

² Would this genitive with **studiō** better be translated *of* or *for*?

³ As here used, this word has no Latin equivalent; give Latin for "long arrows are."

30.

VOCABULARY

Gallia, *Gaul*, the country.

Gallus, *a Gaul*, an inhabitant of the country.

Gallicus, adj., *Gallic*, belonging to Gaul or its people.

Rōmānus, adj. and noun, *Roman* or *a Roman*.

longus, *long*; **nāvis longa**, *a war ship*.

altus, *high or deep*.

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

nāvis, fem., *ship, boat*.

classis, fem., *a fleet*.

hostis, masc. by meaning, *an enemy*; **hostēs**, *the enemy*, as in English.

collis, masc., *a hill*.

fūnis, masc., *a rope*.

mare, neut., *sea*.



NĀVIS LONGA

LESSON VII

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS IN **-is**.
THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN **-is** AND **-e**. AGREEMENT OF
ADJECTIVES CONTINUED.

31. **Hostī** } **proelium nūntiātur.**
 Hostibus }
 To an enemy } *the battle is reported.*
 To the enemy }

 Ab { **hoste** } **Gallī superantur.**
 hostibus }
 By { *an enemy* } *the Gauls are overcome.*
 the enemy }

1. Compare the ending of the dative and that of the ablative plural. Compare with these same cases in the 1st and 2d declensions. What is true as to these cases in the three declensions? This is true in all declensions.

2. What other uses of the ending **-ī** have we had besides that in the dative singular of the 3d declension? What, of the ending **-e** besides that in the ablative singular of the 3d declension?

3. The regular ending of nouns in **-is** in the ablative is **-e**, but some occasionally have **-ī**; e.g. **nāvis**, **collis**, and **classis**. Neuter nouns in **-e**, like **mare**, always have **-ī** in the ablative.

4. In addition to nouns in **-is** there are also adjectives of the 3d declension with that ending in the masculine and feminine.

32. Study carefully the following paradigms : —

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	fūnis māgnus	nāvis māgna	mare māgnum
<i>Gen.</i>	fūnis māgnī	nāvis māgnae	maris māgnī
<i>Dat.</i>	fūnī māgnō	nāvī māgnae	marī māgnō
<i>Acc.</i>	fūnem māgnum	nāvem (nāvim) māgnam	mare māgnum
<i>Abl.</i>	fūne māgnō	nāve (nāvī) māgnā	marī māgnō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	fūnēs māgnī	nāvēs māгнаe	maria māгна
<i>Gen.</i>	fūnium māgnōrum	nāvium māgnārum	marium māgnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fūnibus māgnīs	nāvibus māgnīs	maribus māgnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	fūnis (fūnēs) māgnōs	nāvis (nāvēs) māgnās	maria māгна
<i>Abl.</i>	fūnibus māgnīs	nāvibus māgnīs	maribus māgnīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	Gallus brevis	insula brevis	bellum breve
<i>Gen.</i>	Gallī brevis	insulae brevis	belli brevis
<i>Dat.</i>	Gallō brevī	insulae brevī	bellō brevī
<i>Acc.</i>	Gallum brevem	insulam brevem	bellum breve
<i>Abl.</i>	Gallō brevī	insulā brevī	bellō brevī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	Gallī brevēs	insulae brevēs	bella brevīa
<i>Gen.</i>	Gallōrum brevium	insulārum brevium	bellōrum brevium
<i>Dat.</i>	Gallis brevibus	insulis brevibus	bellis brevibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Gallōs brevīs (brevēs)	insulās brevīs (brevēs)	bella brevīa
<i>Abl.</i>	Gallis brevibus	insulis brevibus	bellis brevibus

a. Pick out a feminine noun of the 3d declension qualified by an adjective of the 1st declension; a masculine noun of the 3d declension qualified by an adjective of the 2d declension; a neuter noun of the 3d declension qualified by an adjective of the 2d declension; a masculine noun of the 2d declension qualified by an adjective of the 3d; a feminine noun of the 1st declension qualified by an adjective of the 3d; a neuter noun of the 2d declension qualified by an adjective of the 3d.

b. Is there any difference between the masculine and feminine forms in 3d declension adjectives in *-is*? In what cases are all genders of 3d declension adjectives alike? Compare the declension of the neuter adjective **brevē** and that of the noun **mare**.

c. What is the ending of the ablative singular in all genders of the 3d declension adjective?

d. Using these paradigms as a basis, write out the declension of **māgnus** and **brevīs** in all genders. Compare with 420, 423. Decline **auriga primus, collis altus, omnis Gallia, omne frūmentum**.

EXERCISES

33. 1. *Primae nāvēs ā lēgātō fidēli parantur.* 2. *Lēgātī militāri signō vocābantur.* 3. *Britannī proeliō brevī superantur.* 4. *Sine frūmentō Rōmānī ad Britanniam nōn nāvigābant.* 5. *Essedārius erat altus homō.* 6. *Ob gravem sententiam¹ lēgātī primī per mare altum nāvigābant.* 7. *Et fūnis et omnia vincula reportant.* 8. *Orae insulae erant plānae.* 9. *Lēgātus sententiam nūnti fidēlis Commī probat, quod studium et cōsiliū Commī bellō longō dēmōnstrābantur.* 10. *Gravis porta erat longa et alta.* 11. *Galli erant incolumēs, quod Britannī in silvā finitimā superābantur.* 12. *Omnēs ferē Rōmānī pūgnant.* 13. *Omnēs ferē classēs Gal-liae bellō Gallicō superābantur.* 14. *Prō colle populus essedāriōs hostium exspectat.*

34. 1. They are conquered in^a a severe battle. 2. The fight with the Britons was short, because the Romans were faithful. 3. The grain was not safe. 4. All the ambassadors were called Gauls. 5. The eagle of the squadron is heavy. 6. He intrusted the heavy eagle to the short charioteer. 7. Cotta is managing the whole war because he is judged a trusty man. 8. The danger was made known to the Romans by a signal. 9. The Roman messenger is reporting the military customs of all the Britons.

35.

VOCABULARY

brevis, *short.*

fidēlis, *faithful.*

gravis, *heavy, severe, weighty, influential.*

incolumis, *safe, in safety, uninjured.*

militāris, *pertaining to soldiers, military.*

omnis, *all.*

finitimus, *bordering upon, neighboring, near; as noun, a neighbor.*

primus, *first, first of.*

pūgna, *fighting, a battle.*

pūgnant, *they fight.*

erant, *impf. tense, they were.*

quod, *conjunction, because. What*
• *is the prep. meaning because of?*

¹ Would *opinion* or *judgment* be the better translation here?

² The Romans would use an ablative of means to express the meaning of this word.

LESSON VIII

FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

36.

Fūnem }
Classēm } **parāv-it.**
Sīgnum }

He has prepared { *a rope.*
 or { *a fleet.*
He prepared { *a standard.*

Fūnīs }
Classīs } **parāv-ērunt.**
Sīgna }

They have prepared { *ropes*
 or { *fleets.*
They prepared { *standards.*

Fūnis parāt-us est.
Classis parāt-a est.
Sīgnum parāt-um est.

A rope has been or was prepared.
A fleet has been or was prepared.
A standard has been or was prepared.

Fūnēs parāt-ī sunt.
Classēs parāt-ae sunt.
Sīgna parāt-a sunt.

Ropes have been or were prepared.
Fleets have been or were prepared.
Standards have been or were prepared.

1. Note that the perfect active is formed on the stem **parāv-**, which may be formed by adding **v** to the present stem **parā-**, as seen in **parā-ba-t**. (The **a** of the stem is shortened before **-nt** and final **-t**, as in **parat**, **parant**.)

2. The perfect passive is a compound form (just as it is in English), made up of the perfect passive participle and the present tense of the verb *to be*. **Parātus** means *having been prepared* or *prepared*. The compound means strictly *he (or it) is having-been-prepared*, more freely, *he has been prepared*.

3. Note that in both the active and passive the tense, though strictly a present perfect, may be used as a simple past or past indefinite, as it is sometimes called; thus **parāvit** may mean *he has prepared* or *he prepared*.

4. The three stems of the 1st conjugation on which all the forms of this conjugation are based have now been shown. They are as follows: —

Present stem	parā-
Perfect stem	parāv-
Participial or supine stem . . .	parāt-

In learning verb forms note carefully just what stem of the verb each form is based upon.

5. Note that the participle is an adjective in Latin as in English, and that in the passive forms the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case; thus, **fūnis parātus est** but **classis parāta est**.

6. Note carefully the difference in Latin between the past imperfect, which describes an act as in progress or as customary in the past, and the perfect indefinite or historical perfect, as it is called, which simply states that something happened in the past. The historical perfect is the tense of narration, the imperfect that of description. In practice it is often necessary to translate a Latin imperfect by an English past indefinite.

37.

EXERCISES

1. Collēs altī ab hostibus occupātī sunt. 2. Omnēs nāvēs vinculis dēligātae sunt. 3. Bella gravia ā Britannis incitāta sunt. 4. Nāvēs rēmīs gravibus incitābantur. 5. Māgnus numerus hostium ex silvā ad mare finitimum remigrāvit. 6. Maritimae ōrae erant incolumēs. 7. Sī in marī altō nāvigat, incolumis est. 8. Rōmānī perturbātī sunt, quod mare nōn plānum erat. 9. Novus homō cōsiliō lēgātī servātus est. 10. Scaphās longās fūnibus dēligāvērunt. 11. Hostī māgnū nāvium numerum dēmōnstrāvērunt. 12. Fidēlēs Gallōs ob studium servāvērunt.

38.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The ship was bound by heavy chains. 2. The seacoast of the island was smooth. 3. They did not fight without reason. 4. The eagles were disturbed by the long arrows. 5. They examined the military customs. 6. The heavy standard was first. 7. The Gallic

war was judged severe. 8. The Britons were overcome by Caius. 9. They are summoning the faithful charioteers from the battle. 10. The Gaul was called Commius. 11. The battles are short. 12. Word-was-brought (it-was-reported) about the fight in-behalf-of the messenger.

39.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The long oars were intrusted to the faithful Caius. 2. Caius carried back the short arrows from the large forest to the high gate. 3. The enemy, through the Gaul, seized a large number of skiffs and a new rope. 4. The plunder of the Gauls was seized by the Romans. 5. The Roman legate was managing the large fleet of Cotta. 6. If he reported the fight, he was approved by Caius. 7. They are moving back with the lieutenants to the sea, because they are waiting for the fleet of the Romans.

40.

VOCABULARY

numerus, a number.

rēm̄us, an oar.

maritimus (mare), adj., pertaining to the sea, marine, sea.

novus, new, strange, novel.

dēligant, they bind down, they bind fast.

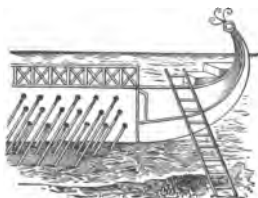
occupant, they seize, take possession of.

perturbant, they throw into confusion, disturb, alarm.

remigrant, they move back, return.

servant, they save, save the life of, preserve.

sī, conjunction, if.



RĒMĪ

LESSON IX

FIRST CONJUGATION: PAST PERFECT (PLUPERFECT), ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

41. Fūnem	} parāv-era-t.	Fūnis parāt-us erat.
Classem		Classis parāt-a erat.
Signum		Signum parāt-um erat.
<i>He had prepared</i>	<i>{ a rope.</i>	<i>A rope had been prepared.</i>
	<i>{ a fleet.</i>	<i>A fleet had been prepared.</i>
	<i>{ a standard.</i>	<i>A standard had been prepared.</i>

1. Study again the sentences at the head of Lesson VIII. From the help thus given, write out the plural of the noun and verb forms in the above sentences.

2. Why should the tense be called the past perfect or pluperfect? Judging from the translations given above, what English word is the sign of the pluperfect tense? What three letters in Latin are the sign of this tense in the active?

3. In what respects is the pluperfect active like the perfect active? In what respects unlike it? (Note especially the quantity and accent in **parāv-ēru-nt** and **parāv-era-nt**, and cf. 3.) Answer the same questions in regard to the passive.

42. 1. Gallus superātus ad Galliam remigrāvit.

2. Gallī superātī ad Galliam remigrāvērunt.

The Gaul, having been overcome, returned to Gaul.

The Gauls, having been overcome, returned to Gaul.

3. Lēgātus Gallīs superātīs silvam occupāvit.

The lieutenant, the Gauls having been conquered, seized the forest; or better, the lieutenant, having conquered the Gauls (after conquering the Gauls), seized the forest; or, the lieutenant, when the Gauls were conquered, seized the forest; or, the lieutenant, because he had conquered the Gauls, seized the forest.

a. Note that in 1 and 2 the perfect passive participle agrees with the subject of the sentence in gender, number, and case, and that this participle is not a part of a compound passive tense.

b. In English we sometimes use a noun limited by a participle without any grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, thus: The lieutenant, they being overcome, seized the forest. The pronoun "they" shows that in English the absolute case is the nominative — nominative independent it is sometimes called. In Latin the absolute case is the ablative, as is illustrated by 3.

c. Note that the literal translation of such a construction is not the best. It may often be translated by a clause expressing time, cause, or other relations. So, too, with the nominative of the participle. Illustrate by 1.

d. In deciding whether to use a perfect passive participle in agreement with the subject or an ablative absolute, consider whether the act expressed by the participial construction was performed upon the subject of the sentence (nominative of participle), or upon some other person or thing (ablative absolute). Illustrate by 1 and 3.

43.

EXERCISES

1. Gallī fundīs et sagittīs armātī portam occupāverant.
 2. Galli proeliō nūntiātō perturbātī erant. 3. Nāvēs ad ancorās, quod idōneum ventum expectābant, dēligātae erant. 4. Itaque nūntiī vocātī ad bellum in marī altō nōn nāvigābant. 5. Scaphae fuērunt neque brevēs neque longae. 6. Neque idōneam classem parāverant neque populum armāverant. 7. Sī nāvēs fūnibus armātae ad ancorās gravīs dēligātae sunt, incolumēs sunt. 8. Omnēs ferē aurigae Rōmāni colle occupātō servātī sunt. 9. Britannī māgnō numerō essedāriōrum superātō essedis novīs servantur. 10. Nūntius ā lēgātō vocātus servātus est.

44.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He was short. 2. They were tall. 3. They had been near.
 4. If he fought, he conquered the enemy of the people. 5. They

had moved back to the seacoast. 6. After conquering the Gauls, he had been summoned by Caius. 7. When the chains had been carried back, the ropes were made ready. 8. The Britons had been disturbed by the zeal of Commius. 9. When the grain had been intrusted to the messenger, Caius acted-as-judge. 10. The customs of the ambassadors were called¹ strange. 11. When the dangers were made known, they armed the messengers. 12. The standards had been brought back by the Romans.

45.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The military standard had not been seized, because Caius and Cotta were faithful. 2. The plan was suitable. 3. Therefore he was summoned to the fleet and approved by the Roman legate. 4. Because the coast of Britain had not been examined,² the Roman summoned faithful messengers. 5. The legate Cotta, being approved by the people, fought with the Gauls and seized the standards of the troops-of-cavalry. 6. Neither the oar nor the arrow had been intrusted³ to the messengers.

46.

VOCABULARY

ancora, *an anchor*.

funda, *a sling*; for sling shot, see 6.

ventus, *the wind*.

idōneus, *fit, suitable*.

armant, *they arm, equip, fit out*.

neque, nec, and not; neque . . .

neque, neither . . . nor.

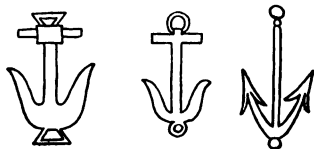
itaque, therefore, accordingly.

fuērunť, *they have been or they were; fuerant, they had been.*

¹ Should **appellant** or **vocant** be used? Cf. 23, f.

² Express the clause ending with this word in two ways.

³ See footnote, p. 78.



ANCORAE

LESSON X

SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND
PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

47. ACTIVE

Present

PASSIVE

habe-t , <i>he¹ has, he is holding.</i>	habē tur , <i>it is held, it is being held.</i>
habe-nt , <i>they have, they are holding.</i>	habe-ntur , <i>they are held, they are being held.</i>

Imperfect

habē-ba-t , ² <i>he was holding, he held.</i>	habē-bā-tur , <i>he was being held, he was held.</i>
habē-ba-nt , <i>they were holding, they held.</i>	habē-ba-ntur , <i>they were being held, they were held.</i>

Perfect

habu-it , <i>he has had, he had.</i>	habit-us est , <i>he has been held, he was held.</i>
habu-ērunt , <i>they have had, they had.</i>	habit-ī sunt , <i>they have been held, they were held.</i>

Pluperfect

habu-era-t , <i>he had had.</i>	habit-us erat , <i>he had been held.</i>
habu-era-nt , <i>they had had.</i>	habit-ī erant , <i>they had been held.</i>

1. Note that there are different conjugations of verbs, as there are different declensions of nouns and adjectives. Study this

¹ Or **habet** may mean *she has* or *it has*. So always in the singular when the meaning of the verb will admit the feminine and neuter.

² On the force of the imperfect (really the past imperfect), see 13, and 36, 6.

group of forms by comparing each form carefully with the 1st conjugation forms introduced in Lessons III., VIII., and IX. See also summary, comparative grouping in Lesson XVI.

2. What is the present stem of **habent**, and in what letter does it end? What is the perfect stem? What, the participial?

3. What tenses are based on the present stem? What, on the perfect? What, on the participial?

4. What is the sign of the imperfect? What, of the pluperfect? What are the endings of the perfect active? Do these signs and endings differ from those of the 1st conjugation? What, then, is the only difference between the 1st conjugation and the 2d?

48. **Nūntius est fidēlis Cottae.**

The messenger is faithful to Cotta.

Note that the dative **Cottae** completes the meaning of the adjective **fidēlis**. The dative is frequently so used with adjectives meaning *near, like, fit, friendly*, etc. This relation is usually expressed by the English prepositions *to* or *for*, but not infrequently without the preposition; thus *near him, like them*.

49. EXERCISES

1. Arma aurīgīs idōnea fuērunt. 2. Britannī erant marī finitimī.
3. Nuntii et Gallī sunt essedāriīs propinquī. 4. Gallī lēgātīs vocātīs Rōmānōs ā pūgnā prohibuērunt, quod ōra nōn erat opportūna. 5. Omnia ferē armāmenta classis fuērunt inūtīlia Britannīs. 6. Aquila silvā occupātā sagittīs perterrita est. 7. Lēgātī Rōmānōrum ā Gaiō vocāti dē essedis Britannōrum moniti erant. 8. Ōra Britanniae ignōta Rōmānīs iudicābātur. 9. Si dē periculō propinquō moniti sunt, ā finitimīs silvis turmam prohibent. 10. Arma fuerant inūtīlia Rōmānīs, quod ab insulā ventō nōn opportunō prohibēbantur. 11. Ōrās Cottae et Gaiō lēgātīs ignōtās explorāverant. 12. Nūntiīs Commius Gallus essedās novās dēmōnstrāvit.

50.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The ships, having been made ready, have ropes and anchors. 2. The Britons had slings and arrows. 3. Cotta was not frightened. 4. They move back without danger through the forest. 5. The man armed both the Romans and the Gauls. 6. Therefore, neither the Romans nor the Gauls were frightened. 7. They were kept from the island by the deep water. 8. He carried back the plunder out of the ship into the skiff. 9. On the long hill was a high gate. 10. The opinion of the enemy was unknown to the first messenger. 11. The Gallic fleet, (though) disturbed by the wind, was saved. 12. The grain had been uninjured. 13. He is with the Gaul before the smooth sea. 14. The reason is clear. 15. Gaul was conquered by Caius, after the Gauls were frightened.

51.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The Romans, by seizing the coast (ablative absolute), were keeping the Britons away from the war. 2. They, being approved by the Romans, owned arms and equipment suitable for the ships. 3. The eagle had not been frightened by the Gaul. 4. On account of the great danger after the enemy was stirred up, all were warned. 5. The war-ships are near the seacoast of Britain. 6. The Britons are frightening the eagles with their slings. 7. The arms and tackle, after the Gauls were thrown into confusion, were brought back uninjured to the ships and the deep sea.

52.

VOCABULARY

arma, only in plur., *arms*; especially defensive arms and armor.
armāmenta, only in plur. (**armant**), *equipment, tools*; if of a ship, *rigging, tackle*.
ignōtus, *unknown*.
inūtilis, *useless*.
opportūnus, *fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune*.

propinquus, *near, related by blood*; as noun in plur., *relatives*.
habent, *they have, hold, own*.
prohibent (**prō** and **habent**), *they hold before, hold off, keep off, prevent*.
monent, *they remind, advise, warn*.
perterrēt, *they frighten through and through, terrify*.

LESSON XI

FOURTH CONJUGATION: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND
PLUPERFECT. THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS IN -ō.

53. ACTIVE

Present

PASSIVE

audi-t , <i>he hears, he is hearing.</i>	audī-tur , <i>he is heard, he is being heard.</i>
audi-u-nt , <i>they hear, they are hearing.</i>	audi-u-ntur , <i>they are heard, they are being heard.</i>

Imperfect

audi-ē-ba-t , <i>he was hearing, he heard.</i>	audi-ē-bā-tur , <i>he was being heard, he was heard.</i>
audi-ē-ba-nt , <i>they were hearing, they heard.</i>	audi-ē-ba-ntur , <i>they were being heard, they were heard.</i>

Perfect

audīv-it , <i>he has heard, he heard.</i>	audīt-us est , <i>he has been heard, he was heard.</i>
audīv-ēru-nt , <i>they have heard, they heard.</i>	audīt-ī sunt , <i>they have been heard, they were heard.</i>

Past Perfect or Pluperfect

audīv-era-t , <i>he had heard.</i>	audīt-us erat , <i>he had been heard.</i>
audīv-era-nt , <i>they had heard.</i>	audīt-ī erant , <i>they had been heard.</i>

1. Compare the forms of the 4th conjugation above with those of the 1st and 2d in 82. Compare the personal endings and tense signs with those of the 1st and 2d conjugations. What is the difference, if any?

2. Note that the present stem ends in *i*.

3. Note that **u** is inserted between the present stem and the personal ending in the plural of the present tense. Note, too, the inserted **e** in the imperfect, **audi-ē-ba-t**, NOT **audi-ba-t**.

4. Compare the perfect and pluperfect both active and passive with the corresponding forms of the 1st conjugation. Can you point out any difference except the difference of stems? How may the perfect stem be formed from the present in both these conjugations? How, the participial stem?

	54. SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	legiōnum	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	legiōnibus	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
<i>Accus.</i>	legiōnem	legiōnēs	multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	legiōnibus	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

1. Compare the endings of the above nouns with those of nouns in **-is** and **-e**, VI. and VII. Note differences in the ablative singular, genitive and accusative plural. Compare the number of syllables in the other cases, with the number of syllables in the nominative singular. Is there any difference between **legiō** and **nāvis** in this respect? Such nouns as **legiō** are said to increase in the genitive; those like **nāvis** do not increase in the genitive.

2. Like **legiō** are declined all nouns in **-iō**, and some others; like **multitūdō**, are declined all in **-dō** and **-gō**; also **homō**, **nēmō**, and a few others. In what letter does the stem end in both **legiō** and **multitūdō**? What are the last two letters of the stem in **legiō**? What, in **multitūdō**?

3. Nouns in **-iō** and **-dō** are usually feminine.

55.

EXERCISES

1. Turmae Gallōrum ab ignōtīs hominibus impeditae sunt.
 2. Ōrdinēs legiōnis fidēlis fundīs perturbātī sunt. 3. Altitudīne maris multitūdō Rōmānōrum impedita est. 4. Ad septentrionem classis nāvigābat. 5. Gallica nātiō est finitima ignōtīs regiōni-

bus. 6. Ab omnibus occupātiōnibus lēgātus hominem expedit. 7. Quod māgnam in silvā perturbātiōnem audiēbat, perterritus est. 8. Māgnitūdō classis Rōmānae Britannōs perterret. 9. Sī nēmō perīculum nūntiāvit, neque ad arma hominēs vocant neque māgnūm essedārum numerum parant. 10. Causā perturbātiōnis explōrātā primōs dē proeliō nūntiōs audiverant. 11. Multitūdō hominum ā Rōmānīs superāta ā marī ad silvam remigrāvit.

56.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The arms were useless after the Gauls were overcome. 2. The equipment of the ship was serviceable. 3. They have relatives in the legion. 4. The legion is near the sea. 5. Being made ready for war, they kept off a great nation. 6. When the Gauls were armed, the Romans were warned concerning the danger. 7. He is bringing out the oars. 8. The arrows were brought out. 9. The legions had been hindered. 10. Commius was called messenger. 11. He had heard Cotta's plans. 12. The plans had been heard. 13. The plans were heard. 14. Nobody is in the unknown district.

57.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He held the faithful legions before the high gates. 2. Neither the forests nor the coasts of Britain had been explored. 3. Therefore the island was unknown to the Romans. 4. A trusty legate, approved by Caius, controls the Roman fleets. 5. Almost all the people (*hominēs*), after the reason for (of) the battle was made known, were listening to the messenger. 6. The chariots impeded the long lines of the Romans. 7. The long lines are impeded by the chariots.

58.

VOCABULARY

<i>legiō</i> , a legion; the Roman legion was a body of soldiers, numbering in the army of Caesar about 3600 men.	<i>regiō</i> , a direction, a part of the country, a region. <i>nātiō</i> , a birth, a race of people, nation.
---	---

occupātiō (occupant), *a seizure, engrossment in any employment, occupation.*

perturbātiō (perturbant), *disorder, confusion.*

septentriō, masc., *the seven stars in the Great Bear, the northern sky, the north.*

altitūdō (altus), *height or depth.*

māgnitūdō (māgnus), *greatness, size, magnitude.*

multitūdō (multus, much), *a great number, multitude.*

ōrdō, masc., *a row, rank, order, class.*

nēmō (nē and homō), gen. wanting, dat. **nēmīnī**, *no man, no one.*

audiunt, *they hear, they listen to.*

expediunt (ex and pēs, pedis, foot), *to extricate, disentangle, set free, bring forward, be useful; expeditus, unencumbered, without baggage.*

impediunt (in and pēs, pedis, foot), *they entangle, hinder, impede.*

The learning of the vocabularies may be made easier and more interesting by comparing the words required with those already learned and with each other. Thus **occupātiō**, **perturbātiō**, **altitūdō**, **māgnitūdō**, **nēmō** are related to Latin words already learned, and all but two of the fourteen words in the vocabulary have familiar English derivatives. **Legiō** and **regiō** differ but by a single letter in form, and **expediunt** and **impediunt** are contrasted compounds of the same simple verb. The first group consists of six words inflected in exactly the same way; so too with the next group of five words and the last group of three.

LESSON XII

THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT. THIRD DECLENSION
NOUNS IN **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-es**, **-ns**, and **-rs**.

59.

ACTIVE

Present

PASSIVE

dūci-t, *he leads, he is leading.*

dūcu-nt, *they lead, they are leading.*

dūci-tur, *he is led, he is being led.*

dūcu-ntur, *they are led, they are being led.*

ACTIVE	<i>Imperfect</i>	PASSIVE
dūcē-ba-t , <i>he was leading, he led.</i>		dūcē-bā-tur , <i>he was being led, he was led.</i>
dūcē-ba-nt , <i>they were leading, they led.</i>		dūcē-ba-ntur , <i>they were being led, they were led.</i>

1. What conjugation is the 3d most like in the present tense? Exactly what are the differences between this conjugation and the 3d in the present indicative? What conjugation is it most like in the imperfect indicative? Are there any differences?

2. The present stem of the 3d conjugation ends in short **e** (thus **dūcē-**), but the **e** is modified or lost in many forms.

60.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cīvitās	cohors	mīles
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvitātis	cohortis	militis
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvitātī	cohortī	militī
<i>Accus.</i>	cīvitātem	cohortem	mīlitem
<i>Abl.</i>	cīvitāte	cohortē	mīlite

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cīvitātēs	cohortēs	militēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvitātum (-ium)	cohortium (-um)	mīlitum
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvitātibus	cohortibus	mīlitibus
<i>Accus.</i>	cīvitātēs	cohortēs	militēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cīvitātibus	cohortibus	mīlitibus

1. Note that in the three nouns above, the stem ends in **-t**, and that the nominative is formed by adding **-s**. Before the **-s** of the nominative, **t** is dropped; thus **cīvitāt-s** = **cīvitās**.

2. Stems in the other dental mute **d** also form the nominative by adding **-s** and dropping the mute **d** before **s**; thus **pēs**, **pedis**, *foot*, **obses**, **obsidis**, *hostage* (cf. **mīles**, **mīlitis**).

3. Like **cīvitās** are declined most nouns in **-tūs**, as **virtūs**, **virtūtis**, *manliness*.

4. Like **cohors** are declined nouns and adjectives in **-ns** and **-rs**.

5. Note that the final vowel of the nominative remains unchanged in all cases in **cīvitās** and **cohors**. How is it in **mīles**?

6. Note the form of the genitive plural in each noun ; forms in parenthesis are not common.

Nouns in **-tās** and **-tūs**, and most in **-s** preceded by a consonant, are feminine ; those in **-es**, increasing in the genitive, are masculine.

61.

EXERCISES

1. Legiōnis primae cohortēs ā monte ad maritimās cīvitātēs dēdūcuntur. 2. Proeliō nūntiātō lēgātus partem obsidum cum cohorte redūcit. 3. Lēgātī ā nūntiīs monitī omnēs cohortēs legiōnis prōdūcēbant. 4. Pedēs militum vinculis dēligāverant. 5. Gāius obses iūdicātus est fidēlis. 6. Virtūs partis Gallōrum fuit māgna. 7. Militāria sīgna militibus nōn inūtilia fuerant. 8. Legiōnēs expeditae ad septentrionem addūcēbantur. 9. Armāmenta et arma militēs cohortium impediunt. 10. Sententiās nūntiōrum audiēbant. 11. Ancorae et sīgna et fundae et sagittae et scaphae expediēbantur. 12. Dē institūtis Britannōrum nūntius audivit. 13. Quod ventus mare perturbābat, nāvis subdūcēbat.

62.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The soldiers' feet were long. 2. No one of the multitude was safe. 3. The ships have rows of oars. 4. The legate approved the virtue of Commius. 5. The hostage is led back to the nation. 6. He was launching the war-ships. 7. The Romans were saved. 8. They saved the Romans. 9. The legate, after the Romans were saved, kept out no one. 10. No one was kept out by the legate. 11. If he was called, he heard the messenger. 12. The armed soldier, when called, was not frightened.

63.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The people were frightened by the confusion of a multitude of soldiers. 2. The employments of the people of the maritime states were strange. 3. The district is favorable to the nation because of the height of the mountains and the size of the forests. 4. The mountains were seized by the enemy, because the Gauls

were fighting with their neighbors. 5. They carried back to Gaul the plunder and a part of the equipment. 6. The enemy, when conquered, intrusted to the Romans a multitude of hostages. 7. If the sea was smooth, the Romans sailed to Britain.

64.

VOCABULARY

cīvitās (**cīvis**, *citizen*), *citizenship, a state, the body politic.*

virtūs (**vir**, *man*), *manliness, virtue, bravery.*

cohors, *a cohort, a tenth of a legion.*

pars, *a part, direction, side, respect.*

mōns, masc. by exception, *a mountain.*

mīles, **-itis**, *a soldier*; see below.

obses, **-idis**, *a hostage*; hostages were human beings given by a person or nation to guarantee the fulfillment of an agreement; if the agreement was broken, the hostage might be killed.

pēs, **pedis**, *a foot of man or beast, and also the measure of length.*

dūcunt, *they lead, draw, draw out, prolong; draw an inference, consider.*

addūcunt, *they lead to or on, draw in, influence.*

dēdūcunt, *they lead down or off, draw down, launch.*

subdūcunt, *they lead away, withdraw, draw from below, haul up, beach.*

prōdūcunt, *they lead forth, draw out, prolong.*

redūcunt, *they lead back, draw back, restore.*



MILES RŌMĀNUS

With the prepositions as used in the compound verbs above, compare the prepositions in III., and note that in general they have the same force in composition as when used separately.

LESSON XIII

THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT. THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS IN **-x** AND **-ps**. MUTE STEMS.

65. ACTIVE	<i>Perfect</i>	PASSIVE
dūx-it , <i>he has led, he led.</i>		duct-us est , <i>he has been led, he was led.</i>
dūx-ēru-nt , <i>they have led, they led.</i>		duct-ī sunt , <i>they have been led, they were led.</i>
<i>Past Perfect or Pluperfect</i>		
dūx-era-t , <i>he had led.</i>		duct-us erat , <i>he had been led.</i>
dūx-era-nt , <i>they had led.</i>		duct-ī erant , <i>they had been led.</i>

1. Compare the tenses above with the perfect and pluperfect of the 1st conjugation, VIII., IX. ; of the 2d, X., and of the 4th, XI. Note that while the **ā**, **ē**, and **ī**, stem endings of those conjugations, appear in the perfect and participial stems,¹ in the 3d the **e** of the present stem does not appear, and the basis of the perfect stem is a base ending in a consonant ; for this reason the 3d conjugation is often called the consonant conjugation.

2. The stems of the 3d conjugation are so variously formed that those of each verb must be separately learned, just like those of the English strong (or irregular) verbs ; it is helpful to remember,

¹ The **u** of the perfect of the 2d conjugation is another form of **ēv**.

however, that some verbs with a base ending in the gutturals¹ **c** or **g**, form the perfect stem by adding **s** to the verb base, and the participial, by adding **t** to the same base.

	66.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>		rēx	rēgēs	pāx	pācēs	prīnceps	prīncipēs
<i>Gen.</i>		rēgis	rēgum	pācis	pācum	prīncipis	prīncipum
<i>Dat.</i>		rēgī	rēgibus	pācī	pācibus	prīncipī	prīncipibus
<i>Accus.</i>		rēgem	rēgēs	pācem	pācēs	prīncipem	prīncipēs
<i>Abl.</i>		rēge	rēgibus	pāce	pācibus	prīncipe	prīncipibus

1. Note that in all three of these nouns the nominative is formed by adding **s** to the stem, just as in **cīvītās** XII., but that in stems in **c** and **g**, the **s** unites with **c** or **g** to form **x**; compare 3d conjugation, Note 2, above.

2. In **prīnceps** note the change from **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative, and compare **mīles**, **mīlītis** XII. Note further that **p** of the stem remains unchanged before **s**; so, too, with the other labial¹ mute **b** as a stem ending.

3. SUMMARY: All masculines and feminines of mute¹ stems have **s** in the nominative. Before **s**, **p** or **b** is retained, **c** or **g** unites with it to form **x**, **t** or **d** is dropped.

4. Mute stems with nominative in **s** are feminine. Of course, names of males like **rēx** and **prīnceps** are masculine.

67.

EXERCISES

1. Ventus nāvīs longās adffixit et aqua scaphās brevis complēvit. 2. Rēx et prīncipēs multitūdinem hominum nōn sine causā dēdūxerant. 3. Sī mīlītēs vōcem prīncipis audiverant, nōn adffigēbantur. 4. Rēx barbarōs probāvit et in proelium prōdūxit,

¹ The mutes are as follows, divided according to the vocal organs chiefly employed in their production:

Labial (lip) mutes **b, p.**
 Dental (teeth) mutes **d, t.**
 Guttural (throat) mutes . . . **g, c, k, q.**

quod virtutem dēmōnstrāverant et cum finitimīs nātiōnibus pūgnāverant. 5. Mōrini erant mari altō propinquī et militēs ad aquam dūcēbant. 6. Locus classī Rōmānae idōneus dēmōnstrātus est. 7. Rūfus Rōmānus appellātus erat princeps. 8. Loca Morinīs finitima explōrāverunt. 9. Bella ā principe Rōmānō administrāta sunt. 10. Hominēs armātī obsidēs Gallicōs exspectābant. 11. Ad ōrās Morinōrum nāvēs Rōmānae dēductae ad ancorās dēligātae sunt. 12. Britannī multitudinem nāvium longārum nōn habēbant et armāmentis Rōmānis perterrēbantur. 13. Itaque Britanni ab ōris Britanniae Rōmānōs nōn prohibuerunt et ā Rōmānis adficti sunt.

68.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. They are leading forth the Gauls. 2. The Gauls were led forth. 3. The leader was leading back the squadron (of cavalry). 4. The ships were drawn up. 5. The skiffs had been drawn down. 6. He had drawn back the chariot. 7. Rufus and Caius were Roman soldiers. 8. The charioteers are being warned by the messengers. 9. The eagle was struck down by an arrow. 10. They moved back to the mountain. 11. Being roused up, they carried back all the standards. 12. By peace all the state is preserved. 13. They are being called to battle. 14. They were not overcome by the number of the chariots. 15. Near the coast they had seized the arms.

69.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The light-armed legion, after the ranks were thrown into confusion, was hindered by the arrows of the barbarians. 2. They drew up the skiffs out of the sea to a smooth and suitable place near the forest. 3. They were acting as judges (were judging) among (in) almost all the Gauls. 4. They, after leading away the barbarians (ablative absolute), intrusted the hostages to a part of the new cohort. 5. They are sailing from the north. 6. Word-is-brought concerning the size of the nations near the sea. 7. The

state had been prepared, and was not thrown into confusion by the zeal of the enemy. 8. The hostages, after the high places of the district had been seized, were brought to the feet of the king.

70.

VOCABULARY

locus, masc. (but in plur., **loca**, neuter), *a place*.

Morini, *the Morinians*, a tribe of northern Gaul on the English Channel at its narrowest point.

Rufus (probably meaning *red*), a Roman first name; cf. **Gaius**.

barbarus, adj., *talking jargon, foreign, uncivilized, not Greek or Roman*; as noun, *an uncivilized man, barbarian*.

pax, **pācis**, fem., *peace*.

rēx, **rēgis**, masc. by meaning, *a king*.

vōx, **vōcis**, fem., *voice, utterance, saying*.

prīnceps, **prīncipis**, adj. or noun, *first, chief, leader*.

addīgunt, *they strike upon, overthrow, shatter*; perf. **addīxērunt**, participle **addīctus**.

complent, *they fill, fill up, fill full*; perf. **complēvērunt**, participle **complētus**.

LESSON XIV

FORMS AND SIMPLE USES OF **Is** AND **Qui**.71. 1. **Eās regiōnēs quae sunt ad Galliam explōrant.**

They are exploring those districts that are near Gaul.

2. **Cōnsiliō eius nūntiātō, ad eum obsidēs addūxērunt. Quibus adductīs Commius prīncipēs vocāvit.**

When his plan was made known, they brought hostages to him. After these were brought in, Commius summoned the chiefs.

3. **Id quod nūntiābant audīverat.**

He had heard that which they were telling.

4. **Lēgātī vocātī sunt. Ad eōs Commium, cūius virtutem probābat, addūxit.**

The ambassadors were summoned. To these he brought Commius, whose valor he approved.

	5. MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	6. MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	cui	cui	cui
<i>Accus.</i>	eum	eam	id	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	quō	quā	quō

	PLURAL				PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī (ī)	eae	ea	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	quibus	quibus	quibus	
<i>Accus.</i>	eōs	eās	ea	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	quibus	quibus	quibus	

a. The forms of **quae** 1 and **eōs** 4 are perfectly regular. Compare them with their antecedents **regiōnēs** and **lēgātī**. What is true as to agreement in gender and number? What, as to agreement in case? What is true of the pronoun in English as to its agreement?

b. Note that **ēius** and **eum** 2 and **eōs** 4 are forms of the personal pronoun of the third person; that the form **id** 3 is a demonstrative pronoun, and that **eās** 1 is a demonstrative adjective, agreeing in gender, number, and case with **regiōnēs**. What three uses, then, may **is**, **ea**, **id** have?

c. Note that **quibus** 2 is a relative pronoun used to introduce a principal clause, where in English we should be more likely to use a demonstrative or a demonstrative preceded by a connective.

d. Compare the declensions of **is** and **quī** with that of **māgnus**, **māgna**, **māgnum**. What forms of these pronouns are perfectly regular? What are irregular only in belonging to the 3d declension? What are otherwise irregular? Note especially the use of

irregular forms in 2, 3, and 4. What cases of **is** have irregularities similar to those of **qui**?

c. The **i** between two vowels in **ēius** and **ōiūs** is pronounced like initial **i** in **iūdicant** 7, 5.

72.

EXERCISES

1. Equitēs equis¹ quōs ad bellum parāverant perequitābant.
 2. Pedes, quī Commiō nōtus erat, ignōtus Rōmānis erat. 3. Rōmānī quī ad proelium missi sunt novitāte institūtōrum Britannōrum perturbāti sunt, quod essedārii et equitēs² et peditēs² pūgnābant.
 4. Id mare quod est Britanniae propinquum ventō incitātur.
 5. Lēgātus quem Rōmānī misērunt barbarōs cōfirmāvit. 6. Ea loca altis montibus continentur. 7. Quibus occupātis, ei quī finitimam ōram plānam tenēbant māgnō in periculō erant. 8. Is rēmus quem Rūfus expēdivit nōn idōneus est. 9. Gāius quōcum³ Morinī pūgnābant māgnū hostium numerum sustinuerat. 10. Gallōrum arma et eōrum impedimenta ā populō Rōmānō occupāta sunt. 11. Longa vincula quae ad portās parāta erant in aquā erant. 12. Populus Rōmānus signis reportātis virtūtem militum probāvit.

73.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. No one was saved. 2. Rufus had led the soldiers. 3. The Morinians are leading the infantry. 4. These places are hemmed in by the sea. 5. The legion which had great zeal was the first. 6. Caius after filling the ships sailed to that nation. 7. The place which was before the sea was suitable. 8. They move back through this part of the district without arms. 9. They are riding through the sea on horseback (with horses). 10. The horseman withstood a multitude of footmen. 11. His bravery was reported to the leader. 12. The leader sent the cohort which

¹ Ablative of means, but translated by a preposition denoting place, viz. *on*.

² Appositives: *as horsemen, as footmen*.

³ Two words; note the peculiar position of the preposition *cum*.

he approved. 13. It¹ was approved because of (its) zeal. 14. This cohort, being sent, withstood those who were fighting with the faithful horseman. 15. He was saved by them.

74.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Their plans were reported to Caius, after the seacoast had been examined. 2. Almost all the new equipment of the ships, after being shattered by the wind, was saved. 3. The ships which they had filled with grain sailed to Britain in-safety (adjective). 4. With these ships were large war-ships which the Roman people had sent. 5. Caius was not disturbed because that fleet about which word had been brought by a messenger was shattered. 6. On account of (his) exacting (**gravis**) employments, the leader was kept from useless pursuits (**studium**). 7. That peace had been established by the Gallic king whose people possessed the great forest. 8. The voice of the leader, whose nation is the first of Gaul, encourages the soldiers.

75.

VOCABULARY

peregritant , partic. wanting, <i>they ride through, ri le about.</i>	nōtus (nōscunt , <i>they know</i>), <i>known, well-known; cf. Ignōtus.</i>
equus , <i>a horse.</i>	cōfirmant (fīrmus , <i>strong</i>), <i>they strengthen, cheer up, encourage; affirm, assert.</i>
eques , -itis, <i>a horseman, a knight, a cavalry soldier.</i>	tenent , pf. tenuērunt , partic. wanting, <i>they hold, keep, control, possess; keep back, restrain.</i>
pedes , -itis (pēs), <i>a footman, a foot-soldier, one of the infantry.</i>	continent , pf. continuērunt , partic. contentus , <i>they hold together, bound, hem in, hold fast; contentus</i> sometimes means <i>satisfied, content.</i>
impedimentum (impediunt), <i>that which hinders, a hindrance; in plur., the heavy baggage of an army, the baggage train, including the beasts of burden.</i>	
novitās (novus), <i>newness, strangeness, novelty.</i>	

¹ Find antecedent in 12; what is the gender of this antecedent?

sustinent, pf. **sustinuērunt**, partic. **sustentus**, *they hold from beneath, hold up, sustain, withstand.*

mittunt, pf. **missuērunt**, partic. **missus**, *they let go, send.*

is, ea, id, demons. and pers. pron. and demons. adj., *he, she, it, that, this.*

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that.*

LESSON XV

THE VERB **Posse**. THE INFINITIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

76.

Present

est, *he, she, it, is.*

sunt, *they are.*

potest, *he, she, it, is able, can.*

possunt, *they are able, can.*

Imperfect

erat, *he, she, it, was.*

erant, *they were.*

poterat, *he, she, it, was able, could.*

poterant, *they were able, could.*

Perfect

fuit, *he, she, it, has been, was.*

fuerunt, *they have been, were.*

potuit, *he, she, it, has been able, was able, could.*

potuerunt, *they have been able, were able, could.*

Pluperfect

fuerat, *he, she, it, had been*

fuerant, *they had been.*

potuerat, *he, she, it, had been able.*

potuerant, *they had been able.*

Infinitives

esse, *to be.*

posse, *to be able.*

Note that **potest** is a compound of **potis**, *able*, and **est**, *he is*, but that in composition the final **-is** is dropped and the preceding **t** assimilated to **s** before **s**. The form **posse** is abbreviated from **potesse**.

77. 1. **Inūtile est pūgnāre.**

To fight is useless, or It is useless to fight.

2. Potest	{	parā-re.	<i>He can</i>	{	<i>prepare.</i>
		habē-re.			<i>have.</i>
		dūce-re.			<i>lead.</i>
		audī-re.			<i>hear.</i>
3. Potest	{	parā-rī.	<i>He can</i>	{	<i>be prepared.</i>
		habē-rī.			<i>be held.</i>
		dūc-ī.			<i>be led.</i>
		audī-rī.			<i>be heard.</i>

4. **Iubet milītēs in silvās dūcī.**

He orders the soldiers to be led into the forests.

a. The above sentences show infinitives of all conjugations in both voices, and illustrate two common uses of the infinitive.

b. Distinguish the active and passive by means of the translations. What is the ending of the present active infinitive in all conjugations? What of the present passive in the 1st, 2d, and 4th? What, in the 3d, and to what is this ending added — the verb base or the present stem?

c. Note that the present stem may always be found by dropping the **-re** of the present infinitive active.

d. What is the part of speech and case of *to fight*, in *to fight is useless*? The same is true of **pūgnāre** in the corresponding Latin. Judging from the ending of **inūtile**, what is the gender of **pūgnāre**?

e. Note that in 2 and 3 the object of the verb **potest** is an infinitive which is expected with **potest**, in order to complete its meaning. For other verbs which require another action of their

subjects in order to complete their meanings, see the Vocabulary. Such an infinitive is sometimes called COMPLEMENTARY (*filling out*).

f. In 4, the verb *iubet* has two objects, *militēs* and *dūci*.

78.

EXERCISES

1. Si hominēs ei nōtī fuērunt, nōn perterritus est. 2. Scaphās ad ancorās dēligāre contendēbat. 3. Per aquam quae silvam circumdedit turmae perequitābant. 4. Eōrum sententiam multitudinī dēmōnstrāre coepit. 5. Etsī equitēs pūgnāre iussit, tamen pācem cōfirmāre parābat. 6. Is peditēs quōs prōdūcēbat vōce incitāre cōnsueverat. 7. Primae legiōnis aquilam, quam hostēs tenuerant, rēx cum praedā reportāre potuit. 8. Gāius Rōmānus impedimenta quae ā prīncipe servāta sunt ad ōram misit. 9. Novitās essedārū ordinēs perturbāvit. 10. Ā Rōmānis superārī est grave.¹ 11. Equus nōtus quem auriga dēdūcit māgnōs pedēs habet. 12. Ea insula dē quā Gāius audīvit altō mari continētur. 13. Miles Rōmānus in colle aquilam sustinēbat et eam² incolumem dēmōnstrābat. 14. Dē pūgnā quā omnēs ferē cohortēs adflictae erant Cotta ex obsidibus audiēbat.³

79.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The island Britain is unknown to the Romans. 2. Britain and Gaul are regions near-by. 3. The greatness of the danger was unknown to the soldiers. 4. This employment of the leader was short. 5. He hastened to surround the hill. 6. The hill which he surrounded was near. 7. They rode through the forest with⁴ the baggage train. 8. Their⁵ views are known to the enemy.

¹ Cf. the use of *inūtile* in 77, 1.

² What is its antecedent? Why, though feminine, must it be translated *it*?

³ Follow the Latin order in getting the sense. When this word is reached, what is clearly the better meaning of *dē*, the first word in the sentence, *from* or *about*?

⁴ Does this mean *in company with* or *by means of*?

⁵ Cf. the Latin word for *his* in 71, 2.

9. The horse that the barbarian owns is suitable. 10. Though he was suitable, yet he could not be brought back. 11. They had heard about the strangeness of the battle. 12. They began to bring in (**addūcere**) the hostages. 13. They order him to fill the skiff with arms. 14. That man whose voice he had heard was leader. 15. They can keep off the fleet which has been shattered. 16. They had been able to surround these places. 17. The knight was satisfied (**contentus**) with-the-horse which Rufus gave him.

80.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The ships, being filled¹ with water, cannot sail to the states from which they were sent. 2. When the reason was made known to the king, the infantry began to keep the people from the gate with slings and arrows. 3. He did not judge the fleet useless if (there) were ropes and heavy chains in it. 4. It is strange to hear the confusion among (**in**) the throng of barbarians. 5. After the height of the mountain was ascertained, no one hindered the faithful legion. 6. The nations that² hold this part of the Gallic district were wont to sail toward the north, and to be approved by (their) neighbors because of (their) bravery. 7. He ordered the foot-soldier to hold up the military ensign before the legion, because soldiers are wont to be encouraged by it.

¹ Should the participle be nominative or ablative? Cf. 42, *d*.

² Is this pronoun demonstrative or relative?



SCAPHIA

81.

VOCABULARY

contendere, -tendit, -tentus, to stretch tight, strive, contend, hasten.	iubēre, iussit, iussus, to order, command; note that this verb is partly of the second and partly of the third conjugation.
coepit, pf. (pres. wanting), partic. coeptus, he has begun, he began.	dare, dedit, datus, to give; note that the a is short by exception and the perfect irregular.
cōnsuēscere, -suēvit, -suētus, to become accustomed; usually has in the perfect the force of the present, he has become accustomed, he is wont.	circumdare, -dedit, -datus, to put around, to surround.
posse, potuit, to be able; potest, he can.	etsī, conj., although.
	tamen, nevertheless, yet; often used as a correlative to etsī.

LESSON XVI

COMPLETE REVIEW OF LESSONS I.-XV.

82.

GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. PRONUNCIATION, I. and II.

2. FORMS

First or a declension, 413.	Third declension nouns in -x and -ps, 66 and 415.
Second or o declension, 414.	Pronouns is and quī, 71.
First and second declension adjectives, 27, e, 32, and 420.	First conjugation, 4, 8, 6, 7, 13, 36, 41, 82.
Third declension nouns and adjectives in -is, -e, 32, 416, 423.	Second conjugation, 47, 82.
Third declension nouns in -ō, 54 and 415.	Third conjugation, 59, 65, 82.
Third declension nouns in -tās, -tūs, -es, -ns, -rs, 60, 415, 416.	Fourth conjugation, 53, 82.
	Infinitives of all conjugations, 77.
	Irregular verbs esse, posse, 76.

Review the verb forms by using the diagram on the next page. Compare the conjugations and the tenses.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS SO FAR AS LEARNED

FIRST CONJUGATION			SECOND CONJUGATION			THIRD CONJUGATION			FOURTH CONJUGATION		
Active		Passive	Active		Passive	Active		Passive	Active		Passive
<i>Indicative</i>											
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>voca-t, he, she, it calls or is called.¹</i>	<i>vocāt-tur, he, she, it is called or is being called.</i>	<i>monē-t, he, she, it advises or is advising.</i>	<i>monēt-tur, he, she, it is advised or is being advised.</i>	<i>dūc-t, he, she, it leads or is leading.</i>	<i>dūc-tur, he, she, it is led or is being led.</i>	<i>audī-t, he, she, it hears or is hearing.</i>	<i>audīt-tur, he, she, it is heard or is being heard.</i>			
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>vocā-ba-t,² he, she, it was calling.</i>	<i>vocā-ba-tur, he, she, it was being called.</i>	<i>monē-ba-t, he, she, it was advising.</i>	<i>monē-ba-tur, he, she, it was being advised.</i>	<i>dūc-ba-t, he, she, it was leading.</i>	<i>dūc-ba-tur, he, she, it was being led.</i>	<i>audī-ba-t, he, she, it was hearing.</i>	<i>audī-ba-tur, he, she, it was being heard.</i>			
<i>Pf.</i>	<i>vocāv-it, he, she, it has called or called.</i>	<i>vocāt-us, -a, -um, est, he, she, it has been called or was called.</i>	<i>monu-it, he, she, it has advised or advised.</i>	<i>monit-us, -a, -um, est, he, she, it has been advised or was advised.</i>	<i>dūx-it, he, she, it has led or led.</i>	<i>duct-us, -a, -um, est, he, she, it has been led or was led.</i>	<i>audī-v-it, he, she, it has heard or heard.</i>	<i>audīt-us, -a, -um, est, he, she, it has been heard or heard.</i>			
<i>Plpf.</i>	<i>vocāv-erā-t, he, she, it had called.</i>	<i>vocāt-us, -a, -um, erat, he, she, it had been called.</i>	<i>monu-erā-t, he, she, it had advised.</i>	<i>monit-us, -a, -um, erat, he, she, it had been advised.</i>	<i>dūx-erā-t, he, she, it had led.</i>	<i>duct-us, -a, -um, erat, he, she, it had been led.</i>	<i>audī-erā-t, he, she, it had heard.</i>	<i>audīt-us, -a, -um, erat, he, she, it had been heard.</i>			
<i>Infinitive</i>											
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vocā-re, to call.</i>	<i>vocār-ī, to be called.</i>	<i>monē-re, to advise.</i>	<i>monēr-ī, to be advised.</i>	<i>dūc-re, to lead.</i>	<i>dūc-ī, to be led.</i>	<i>audī-re, to hear.</i>	<i>audī-ī, to be heard.</i>			
<i>Participle</i>											
<i>Pf.</i>		<i>vocāt-us, -a, -um, having been called, called.</i>		<i>monit-us, -a, -um, having been advised, advised.</i>		<i>duct-us, -a, -um, having been led, led.</i>		<i>audīt-us, -a, -um, having been heard, heard.</i>			

¹ The present, imperfect, and perfect may also be translated with *do* and *did*; thus, *he does call*, or with a negative, *he does not call*. The auxiliary *do* often requires no separate word in Latin.

² The imperfect must often be turned into English by the simple past, *he called*, or by an expression denoting customary action, *was wont or used to call*.

3. SYNTAX

It should be observed that most of the following rules apply alike to Latin and to English. What case, however, have we in Latin, which has no corresponding case in English? Which of the following rules apply to that case?

USE OF THE CASES

The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative, I.

The object of an active, transitive verb is in the Accusative, I.

The Genitive qualifies another noun by denoting possession, 8, *b*.

The Dative is the case of the indirect object. It is used with verbs of giving and saying, to designate the person to whom something is given or said, 8, *a*.

The Dative is used to complete the meaning of many adjectives meaning *near, like, fit, friendly*, etc., 48.

Instrument or means is expressed by the Ablative, 18.

Agency is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab*, 18.

The Absolute or Independent Case in Latin is the Ablative.

The Absolute Construction often consists of a noun and a perfect passive participle, 42.

The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions, III.

In Latin, as in English, the Infinitive may be the subject or the object of a verb, 77.

RULES OF AGREEMENT

A predicate noun or an appositive agrees with the noun which it explains in Case, 23, *b, c*.

An adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies in Gender, Number, and Case, 27, *d, e, 32*.

A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, 71, *a*.

A finite verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person, I.

83.

WORD REVIEW

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

ancora 9 ¹	causa 1	insula 1	sagitta 2
aqua 1	Cotta 2	ōra 4	scapha 2
aquila 2	essedā 5	porta 4	sententia 2
aurīga 2	funda 9	praeda 5	silva 2
Britannia 5	Gallia 6	pūgna 7	turma 4

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

arma 10	essedārius 5	locus 13	rēmus 8
armāmenta 10	frūmentum 4	Morinī 15	Rūfus 13
bellum 4	Gāius 5	numerus 8	sīgnum 4
Britannī 5	Gallus 6	nūntius 5	studium 4
Commīus 5	impedīmentum 14	perīculum 4	ventus 9
cōnsilium 4	īnstitūtum 1	populus 5	vīnculum 4
equis 14	lēgātus 5	proelium 1	

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

altus 6	idōneus 9	maritimus 8	plānus 1
barbarus 13	īgnōtus 10	nōtus 14	prīmus 7
finitimus 7	longus 6	novus 8	propinquus 10
Gallicus 6	māgnus 2	opportūnus 10	Rōmānus 6

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

altitūdō 11	legiō 11	novitās 14	prīnceps 13
cīvitās 12	māgnitūdō 11	obses 12	regiō 11
classis 6	mare 6	occupātiō 11	rēx 13
cohors 12	mīles 12	ōrdō 11	septentriō 11
collis 6	mōns 12	pars 12	virtūs 12
eques 14	multitūdō 11	pāx 13	vōx 13
fūnis 6	nātiō 11	pedes 14	
homō 1	nāvis 6	perturbātiō 11	
hostis 6	nēmō 11	pēs 12	

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

brevis 7	gravis 7	inūtilis 10	omnis 7
fīdēlis 7	incolumis 7	mīlitāris 7	

¹ The numbers at the right indicate the Lesson in which the word is first used.

PRONOUNS

is, ea, id 14 quī, quae, quod 14

VERBS

First Conjugation

administrāre 1	dēmōnstrāre 2	nūntiāre 2	remigrāre 8
appellāre 5	explōrāre 1	occupāre 8	reportāre 3
armāre 9	exspectāre 1	parāre 1	servāre 8
circumdare 15	incitāre 2	perequitāre 14	superāre 4
cōfirmāre 14	iūdicāre 2	perturbāre 8	vocāre 3
dare 15	mandāre 2	probāre 4	
dēligāre 8	nāvigāre 3	pūgnāre 7	

Second Conjugation

complēre 13	iubēre 15	perterrēre 10	sustinēre 14
continēre 14	monēre 10	prohibēre 10	tenēre 14
habēre 10			

Third Conjugation

addūcere 12	cōnsuēscere 15	dūcere 12	redūcere 12
adflīgere 13	contendere 15	mittere 14	subdūcere 12
coepit 15	dēdūcere 12	prōdūcere 12	

Fourth Conjugation

audīre 11	expedire 11	impedire 11
-----------	-------------	-------------

Irregular

esse 1	posse 15
--------	----------

CONJUNCTIONS

et 5	etsi 15	neque 9	si 8
	itaque 9	quod 7	

PREPOSITIONS

ā, ab 3	cum 3	in 3	prō 3
ad 3	dē 3	ob 3	sine 3
	ē, ex 3	per 3	

ADVERBS

ferē 1	nōn 2	tamen 15
--------	-------	----------

84.

EXERCISES

Containing all the 175 words thus far used, and illustrating all the rules of syntax thus far learned

1. Nāvibus ad ancorās dēligātīs Rōmānī cum Britannīs pūgnāre contendērunt. 2. Scaphae ventō et aquā adflictae ex marī ā militibus subductae sunt. 3. Aquila quam in silvā propinquā audiunt sagittā perturbāta est. 4. Cotta lēgātus in perīcula māgna peditēs prōdūcere cōsuēvit. 5. Etsī omnēs cohortēs per civitatēs barbarōrum quī cum Rōmānīs pūgnāverant ductae sunt, tamen nēmō perterritus est. 6. Fidēlis aurīga praedā esse-dam complēbat. 7. Britanni aurīgās quōs in insulā Britannīā habent ēssedāriōs appellant. 8. Quod classis Rōmāna ob nōtam causam ā Galliā nāvīgāverat, ex omnibus partibus ōrae hominēs armātōs vocāvērunt et eam prohibēre coepērunt. 9. Rēmōs quibus longae nāvēs incitārī poterant expediēbat. 10. Expedītī ōrdinēs neque impedimentis neque gravibus armīs impediuntur. 11. Rūfus portā circumdatā nūntium mīsīt et perīculum legiōnis nūntiāvit. 12. Turmae prō signīs perequitant. 13. Cōnsilia quae Commiō dēmōnstrāta erant ā Gaiō probāta sunt. 14. Pūgnae ā Gallicō rēge administrātae sunt. 15. Ad pedēs rēgis pāce cōfirmātā obsidēs dēdūxit.

85.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The reason for (of) the confusion was not clear. 2. The height of the hill was known. 3. They are influenced by the novelty of his opinions. 4. That place is adapted to cavalry. 5. The customs of their neighbors were unknown to that people. 6. Therefore they judged the strange equipment of the fleet useless. 7. The arms have been prepared for (ad) the war. 8. He had intrusted the grain and a short chain to the hostage. 9. The size of the rope which holds up the anchor is known. 10. He led back the footman from the sea toward the north. 11. They are holding the mountains and waiting for the word (vōx) of the leader.

86.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The sling which the leader ordered the Gaul to carry back was heavy. 2. Being overcome in (by) battle, the unencumbered enemy moved back to the high mountains which hem in the seacoast. 3. A large number of horses was given to those that had seized that district of the Morinians. 4. After encouraging the multitude, he warned the leaders as to (*dē*) their desire for plunder. 5. (It) is a fortunate (thing) to be saved by the valor of the-foremost-men (*primus*). 6. Almost all the military leaders who explored that nation are safe. 7. If on account of this employment he is kept from the king, (it) is a grievous (thing) (*gravis*).



LESSON XVII

DEPONENT VERBS.

87. 1. **In Britanniam proficīscī contendit.**

He hastens to set out into Britain.

2. **In Britanniam proficīscitur.**

He is setting out into Britain.

3. **In Britanniam profectus eam legiōnem in Galliā morārī iussit.**

After setting out (having set out) into Britain, he ordered that legion to remain in Gaul.

4. **Legiō in his locīs morāta est.**

The legion delayed in these places.

Compare the grammatical forms of the verbs **proficīscī** and **morārī** in each of the above sentences with the translations given to these forms; thus, of what voice is the form **proficīscī**? Of what voice is its translation *to set out*? Answer the same ques-

tions with reference to **proficiſcitur**, **profectus**, **morāri**, **morāta est**. Verbs which have passive inflections with the meaning of active inflections are called **DEPONENT**. Such verbs have no active inflections, except some participles and infinitives that will be learned later.

88. The text which follows in successive lessons is taken from Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 20-36, modified to suit the students' stage of advancement in the language.

Exiguā parte aetātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiſcī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta sunt auxilia.

89. 1. **reliquā**: forms the ablative absolute construction with the preceding **parte**; **reliquā** is a participle in sense though not in form.

After reading the rest of the sentence, decide whether the ablative absolute is best translated *when*, *since*, or *although*.

2. **hīs**: from nominative singular masculine **hic**, an irregular pronoun referring to what is near the speaker in time, place, or thought; it is regular in the plural with the exception of the nominative and accusative neuter.

3. **locis**: for peculiar declension of this word, see 70.

4. **bellis**: this ablative may be translated *in*; this use of the case will be more fully explained later.



CAESAR

5. **subministrāta sunt**: a verb of giving, and the preceding **hostibus** is a dative¹; see 8, *a*.

6. **auxilla**: the subject of the clause; note its position. What is the meaning of the word in the singular? what in the plural?

7. Study the text of this Lesson so thoroughly that it can be rapidly and correctly recalled by the aid of the "Word-for-word Parallel" in 179. The text should be repeatedly reviewed.

90.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, *aid, help*; in plur., *auxiliary forces*.

Caesar, Caesaris, full name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, a great Roman, — writer, general, statesman.

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, fem., *winter*.

aestas, fem., *summer*; for declension, see 60.

exiguus, *contracted, narrow, small*.

mātūrus, *ripe, mature, early*.

nostrī, nostrae, nostra, nom. plur., adj. (declined like **māgnus** except in nom. sing. masc.), *our*.

re-li-quus (pronounced in three syllables), *remaining, left, the rest of*; thus, **reliqua Gallia**, *the rest of Gaul*.

subministrāre, *to give as aid, provide, furnish*; cf. **administrāre**.²

vergere, no pf. nor partic., *to slope, be situated*.

morārī, morātus est, deponent, trans. or intrans., *to delay, remain*.

proficiscī, profectus est, deponent, *to set out, depart*.

hī, pron. or pronominal adj., *these*.

inde, adv., *from that place, thence*.

91.

EXERCISES

1. Britannī ad Gallōs auxilium mittēbant. 2. Itaque Caesar in Britanniam profectus est. 3. Quod hiems erat mātūra, nōn morā-

¹ Note that, in getting the sense of the Latin, the order of the Latin should be followed. Here the form of **hostibus** would permit it to be an ablative and its case is not determined until **subministrāta sunt** is reached. The Notes presuppose that the pupil will follow the order of the Latin in getting the sense. See Professor W. G. Hale's "Art of Reading Latin."

² Do not forget that there is a General Vocabulary at the end of the book. If you have forgotten this word, look it up there.

tus est. 4. Mare nostrōs militēs nōn impedivit et Caesar nāvis dēdūxit. 5. Exiguās civitatēs partem peditum subministrāre iussit. 6. Aestās fuit brevis. 7. Reliqua legiō ā lēgātō ducta est. 8. Morātus in hīs montibus cum equis omnibus inde contendere coepit. 9. Caesar hīs nātiōnibus adflictīs Morinōs superāre potuit. 10. Classis quam finitimī miserant frūmentō complēta est. 11. Caesar fidēlēs cohortēs prōducere et multitudinem hostium adfligere cōsuēvit.

92.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The coast slopes toward the north. 2. He had dragged up the skiffs. 3. The skiffs had been dragged up by the barbarians. 4. The ropes are being drawn in. 5. After drawing in the ropes, they sailed to the island. 6. She was frightened by the confusion. 7. The small hill was held by the leader. 8. They held-in-check (**sustinēre**) the frightened horses. 9. The troops of cavalry were kept away (**prohibēre**) by the valor of the Romans. 10. The signal which Caesar had given was heard by the soldiers.

93.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. If Caesar gives the signal, no one delays. 2. They were starting for the hill which Caesar had ordered the lieutenant to hold. 3. They had striven to fetch out (**expedire**) all the arrows which the leaders had made ready. 4. The baggage train was surrounded after the leader was struck down.¹ 5. The cavalry were roused up by the voice of the leader by whom they had been led into battle. 6. Caesar, the Roman leader, after setting out into Gaul, delayed in that district which had been seized by the king. 7. The Gaul whose neighbors had sent auxiliary soldiers to the Romans was not faithful to Caesar. 8. The rest of the hostages were tarrying in the forest out of which our enemies had been led.

¹ Use the perfect passive participle of **adfligere**; cf. 42.

LESSON XVIII

FOURTH DECLENSION.

94. Sī bellum **gerere** nōn potest, quod **tempus** **dēficit**, tamen māgnō eī **ūsui** **plērumque** fuit, sī **modo** regiōnem ignōtam **adiit**, **genus** hominum **perspēxit**, loca, **portūs**, **aditūs** cōgnōvit.¹

95. 1. **tempus** : NOT a masculine noun of the 2d declension, but a neuter of the 3d. See Vocabulary. What is its accusative singular? Its complete declension will be given later.

2. **eī**, *to him* : dative singular of the pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id**.

3. **ūsui** : (a) dative singular of a new declension, the FOURTH. (b) Compare the final letter with the final letter of the dative singular of the 3d declension ; note, however, the vowel before the final letter. (c) The nominative singular is **ūsus**. Give some other words which form the nominative singular by adding **-s** to the stem. (d) How is this Note emphasized? Why is it emphasized?

4. **fuit** : the clause ending with this word is translated, very literally, *yet it has usually been for great use to him* ; better, *of great use to him*.

5. **genus** : a neuter accusative singular of the 3d declension. What is the nominative? Cf. **tempus** N. 1, above.

6. **aditūs** : (a) this word, like **portūs** just before it, is an accusative plural of the 4th declension ; cf. **ūsui** N. 3, above. What letter seems to be the stem ending of the 4th declension? (b) For complete inflection of the masculine and feminine nouns of this declension, see 418. What case ends in **-us**? What cases in **-ūs**? (c) Compare each case with the corresponding case of **hostis** (416).

¹ Do not forget to use the Word-for-word Parallel (179) in vocabulary drill on this Lesson.

96.

VOCABULARY

genus, 3d decl. neut., *kind, class*.

tempus, 3d decl. neut., *time*.

aditus (**adire**), 4th decl. masc.,
approach, entrance.

portus, 4th decl. masc., *harbor*.

usus, 4th decl. masc., *use, practice, experience*.

modo, adv., *only, just now, lately*.

plērumque, *for the most part, usually*.

adire, -**it**, -**itus**, irreg., *to go to, approach*; takes direct object.

cōgnōscere, **cōgnōvit**, **cōgnitus**.

to become acquainted with, learn;

pf. *he has learned, he knows*;

for meaning in pf., cf. **cōnsuēscere**.

dēficere (**dē** and **facere**, *to make*),

-**fēcit**, -**fectus**, *to withdraw, revolt, fail, be wanting*.

gerere, **gessit**, **gestus**, *to carry,*

carry on, do, wage.

perspicere, -**spēxit**, -**spectus**, *to*

look through, perceive, ascertain.

97.

EXERCISES

1. Portūs quōs adierant eis ignōti fuērunt. 2. Caesar bellō gravī gestō ad hominēs dē quibus cōgnōverat profectus est. 3. Ā Rōmānis dēfēcērunt, quod Caesar morātus est et milītēs in eōrum regiōnēs prōducere nōn contendit. 4. Caesar omnibus ferē aditibus perspectis lēgātōs primum collem tenēre iussit. 5. Ā prīncipe cūius auxilium hostibus datum erat dē brevī aestāte moniti sunt. 6. Hominum genus quō ōra maritima complēta est prohibuit. 7. Hōrum locōrum novitāte reliquī peditēs perturbāti et perterriti sunt. 8. Mātūrum frūmentum quod expeditum erat māgnō ūsuī Caesarī fuit. 9. Sī modo institūta barbarōrum audīverat, plērumque nōn inūtile erat. 10. Tempus dēfēcit, quod hiems in hīs locis fuit mātūra.

98.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The summers were short. 2. The coast sloped to the sea. 3. Our harbors are hemmed in by forests. 4. The Britons had a great number of soldiers. 5. Arms were supplied to the Gauls from that place (thence). 6. They could stand-against a cohort of the Morinians. 7. He ordered the cavalry to hinder the infantry of the Gauls. 8. The short leader was faithful to the

king. 9. The military ensigns are safe. 10. All the chariots are heavy. 11. The chain was fastened by the hostage. 12. They bound the horse with a rope. 13. They did not have a great number of harbors. 14. They are sailing in the harbor. 15. They had sailed into the harbor. 16. A small part of the harbor is left.

99.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Caesar hastened to conquer the Britons because of the aid which they had furnished the Gauls. 2. After examining the harbor, he waged war with those who had removed to the coast. 3. They are near the approach which Caesar had perceived from the skiff. 4. Although Caesar had not fought with the Britons, yet they had learned about the Roman legions. 5. The coast which is near these districts is not suitable for a harbor. 6. He could not go to the entrance of the harbor, because his ships were kept away by the arrows which the barbarians shot (sent).



LESSON XIX

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS IN -or.

100. Quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant **incōgnita**. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt **contrā** Galliās nōtum est.

101. 1. **quae omnia**:¹ (a) the relative **quae** refers here to **genus, loca, portūs, aditūs**, of our last lesson. What is the gender of **quae omnia**? (b) For translation of **quae**, cf. 71, c. The neuter is here, as often, translated *things, all these things*.

¹ The learner should not forget that much help to translation is given by the Vocabulary and by the Word-for-word Parallel, 179.

2. **mercātōrēs** : nominative singular **mercātor** ; note that in other cases than the nominative the **o** before **r** is long. Nouns in **-or** are masculine, and have the regular endings of the 3d declension ; cf. 415.

3. **adit** : present tense ; cf. the perfect **adit** 94.

4. **ipsis** : (a) intensive pronoun, meaning *himself, herself, itself* ; it limits **eis**. (b) What is the only preceding noun in this sentence masculine and plural like **eis** ? What then must be the antecedent of **eis** ?

5. **regiōnēs** : follows what preposition ?

6. **Galliās** : *the Gauls*, meaning the different divisions into which the country was divided.

7. **nōtum est** :¹ (a) observe that the cases of the preceding **eis** and **quicquam** are not determined until these last words are reached. What do you now find these cases to be ? Cf. 48 and **Gallis** above. (b) Determine exactly what two statements the correlatives **neque . . . neque**, correlate. It is a help in getting the sense to make sure of the principal subjects and predicates, thus : **Neque adit quisquam, neque quicquam nōtum est**.

102.

VOCABULARY

imperātor, -ōris (**imperāre**, *to command*), *commander, general, commander-in-chief*.

mercātor, -ōris, *a trader, merchant*.

terror, -ōris, masc. (cf. **perterrere**), *fright*.

incōgnitus (cf. **cōgnōscere**), *not examined, untried, unknown*.

quisquam, masc. and fem., **quicquam** or **quidquam**, neut. ; gen.

cūiusquam ; dat. **cuiquam** ; accus. **quemquam**, masc., **quidquam**, or **quicquam**, neut. ; abl. **quōquam** : indefinite pronoun, used only in negative sentences, *any, anybody, anything*.

ipsī, ipsae, ipsa, nom. plur., intensive pronoun, regular in plural. *selves, themselves, in person, the very, the mere*.

¹ The teacher should observe that in getting the sense of the Latin, the pupil must be taught to follow the Latin order, waiting patiently until the cases of the earlier words are determined by the words which follow.

illō , adv., <i>to that place, thither</i> ; cf. inde .	praeter , prep. with accus., <i>along by, contrary to, except, but, in addition to, besides</i> .
temerē , adv., <i>blindly, recklessly, without cause</i> .	atque (ac), <i>and also, and</i> ; gives prominence to what follows it.
contrā , adv., or prep. with accus., <i>opposite, opposite to, against, on the contrary, in answer</i> .	enim , conj., <i>for</i> ; follows the first word of the clause.

103.

EXERCISES

1. Portūs atque aditūs Britanniae Gallis quī contrā ea loca erant incōgniti erant. 2. Nēmō praeter mercatōrēs eam partem insulae quae ad septentrionem vergit adire cōsuēvit. 3. Britannī cum Rōmānīs, ā quibus māgnae nātiōnēs superātae erant, temerē pūgnābant. 4. Neque enim multitudinem fidēlium militum neque māgnam nāvium longārum classem habēbant. 5. Itaque legiōnibus Rōmānīs perspectis perturbātiō atque terror in barbarōrum ordinibus fuērunt. 6. Nēmō ā marī quod ex regiōnibus hostium peditēs prohibuit quicquam reportāvit. 7. Imperātor novitāte eōrum institūtōrum adductus neque incōgnitō principī cohortēs mandāvit neque in hīs locīs morātus est. 8. Equitēs altitudine montis nūntiātā cum rēge ipsō illō proficiscuntur.

104.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. They sailed thence to the well-known state. 2. The summer was short. 3. The rope was carried back to the hill. 4. To this man this kind of skiff is useless. 5. The winters are severe in Britain. 6. The very (use intensive pronoun) voices of the cavalry frighten the trader. 7. The employment of the commander is known to the hostages. 8. The horses disturbed the water with their feet. 9. When peace had been established, the valor of the cohorts was approved. 10. Because the time was short, he did not delay. 11. If the hostages were safe, the leader was judged faithful. 12. All the military equipment was seized.

105.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. If only those places were examined by the messengers, the commander approved their valor. 2. Because anchors were wanting, the large ships, which had not been drawn up, were shattered by the wind. 3. All these things were usually superintended by Caius, whom the Roman people had sent. 4. Only a small part of this war was waged by those who had had experience in battle. 5. When the rest of the war had been waged, the legions set out to our messengers, who had been surrounded by the enemy. 6. They are waiting for the auxiliaries which all the neighbors supplied to the Morinians.



LESSON XX

INTERROGATIVE WORDS. ABLATIVE WITH ūti.

106. Itaque vocātis ad **sē** **undique** mercātōribus, **petēbat**: "**Quanta** est insulae māgnitūdō, et **quae** **aut** quantae nātiōnēs **incolunt**, et quem ūsum bellī habent aut quibus institūtis ūtuntur, et quī sunt ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs?" Quae **reperīre** nōn poterat.

107. 1. **sē**: (a) *himself*, referring to the subject of the following verb **petēbat**. (b) The form **sē** is sometimes a plural meaning *themselves*.

2. **petēbat**: note the expressiveness of the imperfect tense here; *he kept seeking, earnestly and repeatedly*.

3. **quanta** . . . **māgnitūdō**: note the agreement; *how great is the size?*

4. **quae** . . . **nātiōnēs**: note agreement; *what-sort-of nations, what nations?* Study **quae** as an adjective pronoun in Vocabulary, and compare it with **quis**, **quid**.

5. **incolunt** : the object **insulam** or **eam** is understood.

6. **ūsum belli** : *experience or skill in war*.

7. **ūtuntur** : (a) a deponent verb ; cf. 87. (b) Note that it takes the ablative **institūtis** where we might expect the accusative ; the ablative is really one of means ; *by what customs do they profit ?*

8. **māiōrem** : a comparative, *greater, unusually large* ; cf. the positive **māgnus**, *great*.

9. **idōnei** : note that the adjective is here used with **ad** and the accusative where the dative might have been used ; cf. 48.

10. **portūs** : limited by **quī** and **idōnei** ; *what harbors are suitable ?*

11. **Quae** : neuter plural, *which things, these things* ; cf. **quae omnia** 101.

108.

VOCABULARY

quantus, -a, -um, inter. or rel. adj., *how great, as great, as* ; cf. Eng. *quantity*.

quī, quae, quod, inter. adj., *of what sort, what* ; declined like rel. pron., 71.

quis, masc. and fem., **quid**, neut. nom. and accus. ; in other cases like relative ; cf. **quisquam** 102 ; inter. substantive pron., *who, what*.

unde, inter. and rel., *from which place, from what place, whence* ; cf. **inde**, *from that place, thence*.

ubi, inter. and rel. conj. and adv., *where, in which place, in what place, when*.

quam, inter. and rel. adv. and conj., *as, how, than*.¹

aut, conj., *or* ; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

sed, conj., *but*.

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

sē, pron., accus. sing. or plur., *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

incolere, incoluit, partic. wanting, *to dwell, inhabit*.

petere, petiuit or **petiit, petitus**, *to aim at, seek, ask* ; cf. meaning of **reperire**.

reperire, repperit, repertus, *to find out*.

ūtī, ūsus est, *to enjoy, take advantage of, use, profit* ; governs the ablative.

¹ Study with special care the interrogative words in this Vocabulary. Compare them as to use and meaning. Note that most of them may be used either as interrogatives or as relatives.

109.

EXERCISES

1. Quae institūta in Britannīa Caesar repperit? 2. Multitūdinem novōrum institūtōrum, quae Rōmānis incōgnita fuērunt, repperit. 3. Unde mercatōrēs quī eās regiōnēs explōrāvērunt plērumque nāvīgāvērunt? 4. Ā Galliā profecti sunt, sed modo adire propinquam Britanniae ōram potuērunt. 5. Quem praeter (*besides*) mercatōrēs Rōmāni illō mīsērunt? 6. Commium, quī ā Caesare probātus est atque Rōmānis fidēlis iūdicātus est, nōn temerē mīsērunt. 7. Quantōs portūs, ubi Commium mīsērunt, in Britannīa petēbant? 8. Petēbant portūs in quibus māior nāvium multitūdō ad ancorās incolumis dēligārī potuit; māgna enim classis parāta erat.

110.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He called the merchants to himself from every side. 2. Either a rope or a chain was given.¹ 3. Both the foot soldier and the horseman were saved. 4. They used neither the oar nor the arrow. 5. After setting out to the harbor, he delayed. 6. After delaying, he set out to the mountain. 7. What war did he manage? 8. Who was called the commander? 9. What nation inhabited that place? 10. They had armed themselves (cf. 107, 1, *δ*) with slings. 11. The gate was surrounded by the enemy themselves.

111.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The Britons themselves did not show anything to the messengers whom they had overcome. 2. The commander did not wait for the infantry, but, after rousing up the Gauls, intrusted the hostages to the lieutenant. 3. When the fright of the multitude was reported to the leader, he furnished soldiers and encouraged (*oōnfirmāre*) the people. 4. Where are the horsemen who were riding about near the forest which had been seized by the Romans? 5. They are fighting with the Gauls who have moved from the mountains to the sea-coast. 6. How long are the ships which Caesar has ordered to be filled with horses and arms?

¹ The verb in such sentences agrees with the nearest subject.

LESSON XXI

DECLENSION OF **Hic** and **Ipse**. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

112. Haec ut cōgnōscat, priusquam periculum faciat, C. Volusēnum idōneum arbitrātus, eum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus.¹

113. 1. **haec**: this form may be nominative singular feminine, or nominative and accusative plural neuter of the pronoun meaning *this*; it is here neuter plural accusative, *these things*; for the dative and ablative plural, cf. **his** 89, 2.

2. **cōgnōscat**: (a) a present subjunctive of the 3d conjugation; note exactly how it differs from the present indicative. (b) The uses of the Latin subjunctive are much more various than those of the English subjunctive; they must be learned gradually; the subjunctive here follows the conjunction **ut**, and expresses PURPOSE, *that he may learn these things, to learn these things*.

3. **faciat**: a present subjunctive form of the 4th conjugation.² How does it differ from the present indicative? It may here be translated like the present indicative. Its use in this sentence will be more fully explained later.

4. **C.**: in proper names always stands for some case of **Gāius**.

5. **praemittit**: the preceding clause **ut . . . cōgnōscat** states the purpose of the action expressed by this verb.

¹ The pupil should give special attention to the new words of the text. They are in **full-faced** type.

² This form is of the 4th conjugation, though the present infinitive is of the 3d. Some verbs have forms of two different conjugations; cf. **iubēre** 81.

6. **hic** : (a) a dative singular of the pronoun described in N. 1, above. (b) Note that if the final **c** is removed the ending is the same as in the dative singular **cui** ; study the declension of the whole pronoun in 428, and note that if the final **c** is removed several forms are regular, e.g. the ablative singular. (c) Note the similarity of several forms to those of **is**, **ea**, **id**.

7. **rēbus** : an ablative plural of the 5th declension, which will be taken up fully later. How does it differ from the ablative plural of the 3d declension?

8. **sē** : cf. 107, 1.

9. **quam primum** : cf. Vocabulary and Word-for-word Parallel.

10. **revertātur** : a present subjunctive of a deponent verb of the 3d conjugation after **mandat ut** ; *he orders that he return, he orders him to return.*

11. **ipse** : nominative singular masculine of the intensive pronoun. Cf. **ipsis** 101, 4, and the complete declension in 428. What pronoun does it resemble? What irregularities has it?

12. **brevissimus**, *shortest* : superlative degree of **brevis**, *short*.

114.

VOCABULARY

cōpia, *plenty, a supply* ; in plur., *troops, forces, riches*.

rēbus, abl. or dat. plur., *things*.

trāiectus, -ūs, *a crossing over, passage*.

Volusēnus, *Volusenus*, a Roman officer.

arbitrārī, **arbitrātus**, *to believe, think*.

facere, **fēcit**, **factus**, *to make, do*.

praemittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send ahead, let go ahead*.

dīmittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send different ways, dismiss, give up*.

intermittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to leave off, leave unoccupied, interrupt*.

submittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to let down, send secretly, send as aid*.

revertī, **reversus**, deponent, but usually the act. form **revertit** is used in the perfect, *to turn back, return*.

primum, adv., *at first, first* ; cf. adj., **prīmus** ; **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*.

priusquam, conj., *sooner than, before*.

ut or **utī**, conj., *how, as, when ; that, in order that, so that*.

115.

EXERCISES

1. Hae cōpiae proficiscuntur ut cum Britannīs bellum gerant.
 2. Inde revertērunt atque ea quae petierant in impedimentis ipsīs repperērunt. 3. Hunc lēgātum fidēlem arbitrātus ad trāiectum quō¹ in Britanniam nāvigāre Galli cōnsuēvērunt māgnās nāvis prae-misit. 4. Rēmīs quī priusquam Caesar in Galliam revertit nōn temerē factī sunt hīc populus ūsus est. 5. Ipsī Volusēnō, cūius studium ā Gaiō cōgnitum erat, nāvis mandāta est. 6. Nūntiōs hūius, ut frūmentum reperiant, in omnia loca dīmittit. 7. Petit ut quam primum haec omnia perspiciant et equōs redūcant.² 8. Hōc proelium quod in Morinīs nūntiātum est brevissimum erat.

116.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. This place was-left-unoccupied. 2. Who sent-as-aid the charioteers? 3. Rufus sent a great number of charioteers. 4. How much aid was given? 5. Arms were sought on all sides. 6. What sort of equipment did the fleet have? 7. It had long chains and new ropes. 8. After all things were explained, he approved the plans. 9. It is their custom to hasten into danger. 10. From what place are they bringing back the standards? 11. Where did³ he live? 12. How high were the mountains?

117.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Either the lieutenant or the commander in chief is sent in order to lead the foot soldiers to these places. 2. Great was the fright of the messengers; for they were surrounded by the enemy. 3. Although the Gauls had built (made) a large fleet, yet oars were lacking. 4. Therefore they send men into the forest to find oars. 5. Neither the harbors nor the passages were known to any one; but Commius had begun to examine the entrances of the harbors. 6. He returned safe, because he used the aid which

¹ Ablative of means.

² For construction and translation of this sentence, cf. 113, 10.

³ Is a Latin word necessary to translate *did*?

Caesar sent. 7. If he advises them to depart (that they depart), they are not wont to delay. 8. They are moving to the mountains in order that they may dwell in-safety (adjective).

LESSON XXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

118. **Hūc** nāvis undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus, et quam **superiōre** aestāte ad **Venetium** bellum fēcerat classem, iubet **convenire**. **Interim** cōsiliō eiūs cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs **perlātō** ad Britannōs, ā **complūribus** insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī **veniunt** quī **polliceantur** obsidēs dare atque **imperio** populi Rōmānī **obtemperāre**.

119. 1. **nāvis**: accusative plural. What is the nominative and genitive singular?

2. **superiōre**: (a) comparative degree of the adjective **super-us**, -a, -um; the nominative singular is **super-ior**. (b) Cf. the superlative **brev-issimus** 113, 12. (c) Study the following, noting that the comparative and superlative endings are not added to the positive, but take the place of the positive ending:—

<i>Masc.</i>	alt-us	alt-ior	alt-issimus
<i>Fem.</i>	alt-a	alt-ior	alt-issima
<i>Neut.</i>	alt-um	alt-ius	alt-issimum
<i>Masc.</i>	brev-is	brev-ior	brev-issimus
<i>Fem.</i>	brev-is	brev-ior	brev-issima
<i>Neut.</i>	brev-e	brev-ius	brev-issimum

(d) The neuter **altius** differs from the masculine and feminine **altior** only in the nominative and accusative singular and plural; cf. complete inflection of comparative in 423. (e) The comparative is sometimes translated *too* instead of *more*, and the superlative *very* instead of *most*.

3. **aestāte**: the ablative case without a preposition here denotes the time in or at which; cf. the same use in **bellis** 89, 4.

4. **classem**: limited by **quam** at the beginning of the clause, *what fleet*; in English we should be more likely to say the *fleet which*.

5. **quī polliceantur**, *who may promise, to promise*; note that the subjunctive here expresses purpose, the **quī** introducing it being equal to **ut ei**, or **ut ii**.

6. **obtemperāre**: follows **polliceantur** and governs the dative **imperio**, *to submit to the power*.

120.

VOCABULARY

imperium, *command, supreme power, government*.

superus, adj., *what is above* (cf. **superāre**), *upper*; comp. **superior**, of place, *higher*, of time, *former*.

complūrēs (gen., **complūrium**), adj. or noun, found only in the plur., *many*.

Veneticus, adj., *of (or with) the Veneti or Venetians, Venetian*.

ferre (for **ferere**), **tulit**, **lātus**, *to bear, carry, endure*.

perferre, **-tulit**, **-lātus**, *to bear through or home, bring news, spread abroad; endure to the end*.

venīre, **vēnit**, **ventum**,¹ *to come*.

convenīre, **-vēnit**, **-ventum**, *to come together*.

pervenīre, **-vēnit**, **-ventum**, *to come through; ad civitatem pervenīre, to arrive at or in the state*.

obtemperāre, *to submit, be obedient*.

pollicērī, **pollicitus**, *to promise*.

hūc, *to this place, hither*; cf. **hīc**, *this*, and **illō**, *to that place*.

inter, prep. with accus., *between, among*.

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.

121.

EXERCISES

1. **Hūc nāvēs quae eā aestāte factae erant convēnērunt**. 2. **Superiōre hieme complūribus rēbus parātis ad incōgnitam ōram plānam cōpiae novae vēnerant**. 3. **Īgnōtae civitātēs, ut pācem**

¹ The participle is not found in the masculine and feminine.

petant, lēgātōs praemittunt. 4. Hōc bellō altissimus mōns quem imperātor idōneum arbitrātus est ā Rōmānīs occupātus est. 5. Hiems in Britannīā est mātūrior quam in Galliā. 6. Trāiectūs quibus nāvīgāre in Britanniam barbarī cōsuēvērunt breviorēs sunt quam hīc. 7. Bellum brevius intermissum est priusquam graviōra arma lāta sunt.

122.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He comes to seek peace. 2. After the message was brought, he promised many troops. 3. In the Gallic wars auxiliaries were sent. 4. He is first both in peace and in war. 5. Volusenus was overcome in that battle. 6. Who used the longer passage? 7. How large a part of the soldiers returned in safety? 8. He sends the charioteers hither and thither¹ to find the Roman. 9. When he came, he saw the king. 10. At first a message was sent secretly.² 11. He has found a favorable time and a smoother sea. 12. He had arrived meanwhile at the higher hill. 13. Many are assembling at the higher standard. 14. He ordered them to bring it to the-baggage-train (75).

123.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The supreme power which Caesar holds was given by the Roman people because they approved those things which he had done. 2. Many soldiers, after promising to obey (be obedient to) Caesar, arrived at the neighboring coast of the Venetians. 3. Meanwhile they were coming to the small gate which was between the well-known hill and the sea near-by. 4. The great zeal of our soldiers was very well known to the rest of the legion. 5. When the faithful messenger had been heard, all the newest military equipment was-brought-out (**expedire**). 6. He ordered all the charioteers to lead away the very useless horses to a smoother place.

¹ What compound of **mittere** means *to-send-hither-and-thither*? Cf. 114.

² What compound of **mittere** means *to send secretly*? Cf. 114.

LESSON XXIII

THE FORM AND USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN *Sui*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>124. 1. Rēx sē servat.
 <i>The king saves himself.</i></p> <p>2. Rēgēs sē servant.
 <i>The kings save themselves.</i></p> | <p>3. Rēgīna sē servat.
 <i>The queen saves herself.</i></p> <p>4. Cohors sē servat.
 <i>The cohort saves itself.</i></p> |
|--|---|

The above sentences show how the same pronominal form may mean *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves*. What determines the meaning of *sē* in the above sentences? What then seems to be the meaning of "reflexive" as applied to this pronoun? Look up the word in an English dictionary.

125. Quibus audītis **liberāliter** pollicitus **hortātusque** ut in eā sententiā **permaneant**, eōs **domum** remittit; et cum eis **unā** Commium quem ipse **Atrebātibus** superātis rēgem **ibi cōstituerat**, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem arbitrābātur cūiusque **auctōritās** in hīs regiōnibus māxima habēbātur, mittit.

126. 1. **quibus**: the antecedent is **lēgātī** in the preceding lesson.

2. **hortātus-que**: (a) two words, **hortātus** and **-que**, but **-que** is always thus appended to another word. Such an appended word is called an enclitic. (b) **hortātus** and the preceding **pollicitus** are participles of deponent verbs, and hence active in sense. Compare, too, **arbitrātus** 112.

3. **permaneant**: a present subjunctive of the 2d conjugation, distinguished from the 3d and 4th conjugations by the *e* before the **-ant**; cf. 112, **faciat**, **cōgnōscat**, **revertātur**.

4. **domum remittit**, *he sends back home*: note that in English we say *sends home*, not *to home*, and that the preposition is omitted in just the same way before the Latin accusative **domum**.

5. *ūnā* : an adverb, *together*, not used here as an ablative case ; to be united in translation with *cum eis*, *together with them*.

6. *ibi*, *there* : *i.e.* among the Atrebatians.

7. *cōnsilium* : here *planning power, wisdom, judgment*.

8. *sibi* : here dative singular ; the same form might be used as a dative plural ; the genitive singular and plural is *sui*. Study carefully the model sentences in 124, uses of the reflexive in 106 and 112, and the paradigm in 426.

9. *māxīma* : irregular superlative of *māgnus* ; cf. the irregular comparative *māior* 107, 8.

10. *habēbātur*, *was held* : in the sense *was considered, esteemed* ; Commius was thought to have great influence in Britain.

127.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, *authority, influence, advice*.

Atrebās, *-ātis*, *an Atrebatian* ; the Atrebatians lived in Northern Gaul and probably in Britain.

domus, *-ūs*, fem. by exception, *a house, home* ; it has some forms of the 2d declension.

permanēre, *-mānsit*, *-mānsum*, *to stay, continue*.

remanēre, *-mānsit*, partic. *wanting, to stay behind, remain*.

remittere, *-mīsit*, *-missus*, *to send back, let go back, relax, remit, give up*.

admittere, *-mīsit*, *-missus*, *to*

send to, let go to, permit, commit. Cf. also compounds of *mittere* in 114.

hortārī, *hortātus*, *to urge, encourage*.

cōstituere, *-stituit*, *-stitūtus*, *to place, establish, determine, appoint*.

ibi, adv., *in that place, there*.

eō, adv., *to that place, thither* ; cf. *inde*, *from that place, thence*.

liberālīter, adv., *like a freeman, generously, courteously*.

ūnā, adv., *together*.

-que, enclitic conj., *and* ; making a closer connection than *et*.

128.

EXERCISES

1. *Liberālīter hortātur ut essedam quam occupāvit hūc ad sē remittat*. 2. *Hāc hieme Atrebātem cūius nātiōnem superāverat rēgem cōstituit*. 3. *Interim nūntiū graviōra (more important) cōsilia*

quae in Galliā audiverant perferēbant. 4. Etsi complūrēs Rōmānī cum Caesare sunt, tamēn Commium Atrebātem in Britanniam, ut institūta insulae cōgnōscat, praemittit. 5. Caesar auctōritātem Cominī māiōrem quam Rūfi¹ arbitrātus est. 6. Sagittae fundaeque quibus Atrebātēs ūtēbantur superiōre hieme factae erant.

129.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Almost all the water remained. 2. The charioteers came together to that place. 3. Cotta knows the reason. 4. They have not arrived at the forest. 5. They were obeying (submitting to) Caesar. 6. Caesar himself holds the supreme power. 7. Whence did they come? 8. They came from all sides, but not recklessly. 9. They sailed between the skiff and the shore. 10. The gate is very high. 11. It is higher than the shorter standard. 12. The anchor is very heavy. 13. He judged himself safe.

130.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. If only the troops which were sent from that place were faithful, the enemy was overthrown. 2. Caesar, after carrying on the war with-the-Venetians, remains in Gaul so that he may hinder the barbarians who are wont to fight with their neighbors. 3. When the military booty was brought back, severe fighting was reported to Caesar. 4. The troops (of cavalry) were riding about near the forest, because usually the forest was filled with a multitude of the enemy. 5. He thinks the leaders, who have been called, faithful to himself. 6. They first prepare themselves to come (113, 2) to the king and to wage a more severe war with those states which slope to the sea.

¹ Depends on **auctōritātem** understood; we say in English, *than that of Rufus*.



ROMAN SWORD

LESSON XXIV

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF WILL OR VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT AND SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

131.	1ST CONJUG.	2D CONJUG.	3D CONJUG.	4TH CONJUG.
<i>Pres. Subjv. Act.</i>	vocet ¹ <i>let him call</i>	moneat <i>let him advise</i>	dūcat <i>let him lead</i>	audiat <i>let him hear</i>
<i>Pres. Subjv. Pass.</i>	vocētur <i>let him be called</i>	moneātur <i>let him be advised</i>	dūcātur <i>let him be led</i>	audiātur <i>let him be heard</i>

1. The above forms represent the present subjunctive of all conjugations; cf. **cōgnōscat** and **faciat**, 113, 2, 3, and **permaneant**, 126, 3. What vowel precedes the personal ending in the 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugations? Note that in the 3d or consonant conjugation this vowel is preceded by a consonant. What precedes it in the 2d or *e* conjugation? What, in the 4th or *i* conjugation? In the 1st conjugation how may the present indicative be changed to a present subjunctive? The plurals of all these forms differ only in having the personal endings **-nt** and **-ntur** in place of **-t** and **-tur**.

2. The subjunctive here used is called the Subjunctive of Will, because it represents the will of the speaker. Note that it is represented in English by combining the imperative *let*, the accusative *him*, and the infinitive, e.g. *call*. What other translation of the present subjunctive have we had? Cf. **cōgnōscat**, **revertātur**, 112.

132. Huic **imperat** quās possit adeat cīvitatēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī **fidem sequantur**. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus **quantum eī facultās** darī potuit quī

¹ The personal ending *may*, of course, be translated *her* or *it* as well as *him*.

ex nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēbat, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspēxit renūntiat.

133. 1. quās possit : (*a*) the antecedent of **quās** comes later in the sentence. (*b*) **possit** is the present subjunctive of **posse**, 76 ; the reason for its use here will be given later ; its translation does not differ from that of **potest** ; its meaning is to be completed by **adire** suggested by the following **adeat**. What is the object of this **adire** ?

2. adeat : present subjunctive with volitive meaning ; cf. model sentences at the beginning of this lesson ; here it is a substantive (*i.e.* used as a noun), the direct object of **imperat**.

3. hortētur : a present subjunctive of the 1st conjugation ; same use as **adeat**.

4. ut . . . fidem sequantur : (*a*) *that they seek the protection, to seek the protection.* (*b*) A substantive volitive clause, the object of **hortētur** ; cf. **ut . . . revertātur**, 112, **ut . . . permaneant**, 125, and **adeat**, just above ; note that such verbs are used as the objects of verbs of commanding, urging, and those of similar meaning. (*c*) The **ut** introducing such verbs is not necessary, and very often is not found ; cf. **adeat**.

5. quī : the antecedent is the **eī** in the relative clause beginning with **quantum**, *to that man who, to a man who*.

6. ac : another form for **atque**.

7. renūntiat : its object is **ea** understood, which is the antecedent of the preceding **quae**.

134.

VOCABULARY

facultās, *power, opportunity, means, a supply.*

diēs, 5th decl.,¹ masc. by exception, accus. **diem**, abl. **diē**, *day* ; often fem. in sing. when

it means length of time or a set day.

fidēs, 5th decl.,¹ fem., *faith, good faith, a promise, promise of protection, protection.*

¹ Cf. 113, 7.

quint-us, -a, -um, fifth; cf. **prī-mus, first**.

imperāre (cf. **imperium**), *to give orders, command, levy*; cf. **iubēre**.

renūntiāre, *to bring back word, report*.

audēre, ausus est, semi-deponent,¹ *to dare, venture*; cf. **audīre** and **adīre**.

committere, -mīsīt, -missus, *to let go together, join, intrust, commit*; **committere proelium**, *to join or begin battle*; cf. compounds of **mittere** in 114 and 127.

ēgredi, -gressus, transitive or in-

transitive, *to go out, to go out of, to disembark, land*.

prōgredi, -gressus, *to go forth, advance, proceed*.

sequi, secūtus, *to follow, take as guide, obey, seek, strive after*; for last meaning, cf. Heb. iv. 14, "follow peace with all men."

prōsequi, -secūtus, *to follow forth, attend, escort*; *to follow out, pursue, continue*.

subsequi, -secūtus, *to follow after, follow close*.

quantum, relative adv. (**quantus**), *as much as, so much as*.

135.

EXERCISES

1. Rōmānōs sequantur ac renūntient ea quae barbari facere cōsuēverunt. 2. Volusēnus, ubi virtūtem Britannōrum cōgnōverat, in eōrum portūs prōgredi nōn ausus est sed domum revertit. 3. Classis quae superiōre aestāte facta erat Caesarī māgnō ūsui fuit. 4. Huic mandat dē Morinōrum portibus omnia reperiat et cum eīs proelium committat. 5. Dē montibus veniant ut ūnā cum peditibus frūmentum ā Galliae principibus petant. 6. Moneat Atrebātēs ut prō rēge fidēli quem Rōmāni cōstituērunt sine terrōre pūgnent.

136.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The ships were sent back to this place. 2. They came from that place. 3. Let them sail to that place. 4. Whence did they set out? 5. They were there on the first day of the summer. 6. He urges them to make generous promises (promise generously). 7. They persisted in their former opinion. 8. They lived

¹ That is, deponent only in tenses of completed action.

between this house and the sea. 9. They considered his influence slight (**exiguus**) among the Morinians. 10. He had remained before the higher gate. 11. On account of the danger he remained near the entrance of the harbor. 12. All the leaders but¹ Caius were frightened. 13. The eagle committed herself to the wind. 14. Volusenus did not trust himself to the Britons.

137.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Those nations which had returned through Gaul were safe because of the protection of the Romans. 2. Let them fill the ships with arms so as to overthrow the enemy, who are hindering the most faithful ambassador. 3. So far as they could, these states furnished a supply of ropes. 4. He commands those whom he has conquered to hold the entrance to the passage by which he could return through the mountains. 5. Let them hasten to arrive at (120) the coast which is opposite this harbor. 6. After escorting the general to the forest, the leader dared to hold off many enemies.

LESSON XXV

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. NEUTER
NOUNS IN **-us**.

138. **Dum** in his locis Caesar ut nāvēs paret morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō **excūsent**. “Hominēs barbarī et Rōmānae cōnsuētūdinis **imperitī** bellum populō Rōmānō fēcērunt. Morinī ea quae Caesar imperābit faciēnt. Hōc ipsī pollicēbuntur.”

139. 1. **temporis**: the genitive of the neuter 3d declension noun **tempus** 95, 1; note the short **o** before **r**, and compare with the

¹ What part of speech is this word?

masculine in **-or** (e.g. **terror**, **-ōris**) and the neuter of the comparative, e.g. **altius**, 119, 2, *d*; the cases of **tempus** are perfectly regular. What is the accusative singular? Cf. full inflection in 415.

2. **cōnsiliō**: follows what preposition? This preposition here means *for* rather than *concerning*.

3. **quī . . . excūsent**: a relative purpose clause; cf. **veniunt quī polliceantur**, 119, 5.

4. **Rōmānae cōnsuetūdinis imperīti**, *ignorant of the Roman usage*: some adjectives (like **imperitus**) take the genitive in Latin rather than the dative, just as their English equivalents require the prepositions *of* or *in* rather than *to* or *for*.

5. **populō Rōmānō**, dative, *on the Roman people*.

6. **imperā-bi-t**, *he shall or will command*: a future indicative of the 1st conjugation. What is its tense sign?

7. **faci-e-nt**, *they will do*: a future of the 4th conjugation. What is its sign? The 3d conjugation has the same sign.

8. **pollicē-bu-ntur**, *they will promise*: a future of the 2d conjugation. Note that **-bi-**, the regular future sign in the 1st and 2d conjugations, is changed to **-bu-** in 3d person plural. Study carefully the diagram of the future in all conjugations, given just below.

FIRST CONJUGATION		THIRD CONJUGATION	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
Act.	vocā-bi-t <i>he will call</i>	vocā-bu-nt <i>they will call</i>	dūc-e-t <i>he will lead</i>
			dūc-e-nt <i>they will lead</i>
Pass.	vocā-bi-tur <i>he will be called</i>	vocā-bu-ntur <i>they will be called</i>	dūc-ē-tur <i>he will be led</i>
			dūc-e-ntur <i>they will be led</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
Act.	monē-bi-t <i>he will advise</i>	monē-bu-nt <i>they will advise</i>	audi-e-t <i>he will hear</i>
			audi-e-nt <i>they will hear</i>
Pass.	monē-bi-tur <i>he will be advised</i>	monē-bu-ntur <i>they will be advised</i>	audi-ē-tur <i>he will be heard</i>
			audi-e-ntur <i>they will be heard</i>

140.

VOCABULARY

praefectus (partic. of **praeficere**, *to set over*), an overseer, commander; in Caesar, a colonel of cavalry.

Sabīnus, a Roman name.

Titūrius, a Roman name; **Titūrius Sabīnus**, an officer in Caesar's army.

Sulpicius, a Roman name; **Sulpicius Rūfus**, an officer in Caesar's army.

cōnsuētūdō, *habit, usage, practice, familiarity*.

dēdecus, -oris, neut., *disgrace*.

lītus, -oris, neut., *seashore, beach*; cf. meaning of **ōra**.

quaestor, -ōris, a *quaestor, treasurer, paymaster*.

imperītus (**perītus**), *inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant*; cf. meaning of **periculum**.

excūsāre (**ex** and **causa**), *to excuse*.

trānsportāre, *to carry across transport*; cf. **reportāre**.

dum, conj., *while, until*.

141.

EXERCISES

1. Rōmānae legiōnēs convenient ut eis nātiōnibus quae ad mare incolunt bellum faciant. 2. Equitēs quī ā Caesare aestāte missi sunt haec cohors hieme sequētur. 3. Mercātōrēs explōrāre eās regiōnēs ex quibus multītūdō hostium vēnit nōn audēbunt. 4. Quīntō diē ā Morinis, quōrum virtūs nōn māxima est, obsidēs prīncipī nostrō dabuntur. 5. Sī ad litus, ubi (*where*) Rōmānī ōrdinēs perturbāti sunt, contendēt, hōc dēdecus prohibēbunt. 6. Quaestōri praefectisque mandat ad plānius Britanniae litus equitēs quam prīmum trānsportent.

142.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. This occupation is very useless. 2. With his voice he summoned the soldiers who were near him. 3. At that time peace was established. 4. Because of their fear they were excused. 5. The king will send the fleet toward the north. 6. He will report the height of the mountain. 7. By his influence he roused up the new soldiers. 8. Inexperienced men will not conquer these states. 9. He will explain this opportunity to nobody.

10. He will bind the eagle's feet. 11. His good faith was very well known. 12. Part of the soldiers know the size of this beach. 13. So far as he can, he trusts himself to this man.

143.**WRITTEN EXERCISE**

1. They will learn this usage of which the multitude are ignorant. 2. What kind of ropes do they have on that fleet from which the commander disembarked? 3. While he is following the Atrebatian to the high hill, the horsemen are frightened by the confusion. 4. They escorted to the gates those who were able to advance, and the rest of the cohorts will follow the commander. 5. They can bear the strangeness of this sea, for they are not unskilled in (of) war, and have very great courage. 6. Let Titurius Sabinus and Sulpicius Rufus lead up the cohorts that have been brought across from Gaul.



MINERVA SUPERINTENDING THE BUILDING OF A SHIP

LESSON XXVI

THE PERFECT INFINITIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. THE INFINITIVE
AFTER VERBS OF SAYING AND THINKING.

144. PERFECT INFINITIVE

*First Conjugation**Third Conjugation*

Act. **vocāv-isse**
to have called

dūx-isse
to have led

Pass. **vocāt-us, -a, -um, esse**
to have been called

duct-us, -a, -um, esse
to have been led

*Second Conjugation**Fourth Conjugation*

Act. **monu-isse**
to have advised

audīv-isse
to have heard

Pass. **monit-us, -a, -um, esse**
to have been advised

audīt-us, -a, -um, esse
to have been heard

Upon what stem is the perfect active infinitive based? What is the ending of this infinitive? What is the only difference in form between the perfect passive infinitive and the perfect passive indicative?

145. 1. **Signum audīvit.**

He heard the signal.

2. **Signum audīvisse nūntiātur.**

He is reported to have heard the signal.

3. **Signum eum audīvisse nūntiant.**

They report that he has heard (or heard) the signal.

4. **Rēx est.**

He is king.

5. **Cōnfīrmat sē esse rēgem.**

He declares himself to be king.

6. **Cohortēs ductae sunt.***The cohorts have been (or were) led.*7. **Cohortēs ductae esse dīcuntur.***The cohorts are said to have been led.*8. **Dīcit cohortēs ductās esse.***He says the cohorts were led.*

a. The above sentences show the changes that take place when a simple declarative sentence is used with and adapted to a verb of saying. Note that sentences 2, 5, and 7 conform closely to the English form of expression, but that in 3 and 8 the statement quoted after the verb of saying has its verb in the infinitive where the corresponding English has the indicative. In what case is the subject of the infinitive in both English and Latin? See **eum** in 3, and *himself* in the translation of 5. Has the word *that* in the translation of 3 any corresponding word in the Latin of 3?

b. Verbs of *thinking* have the same construction as verbs of *saying*. By verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are meant all verbs which either assert or imply an action of the mind or any expression of ideas; *e.g.* **iūdicāre**, *to judge*; **perspicere**, *to perceive*; **reperire**, *to find*; **audire**, *to hear*; **dēmōstrāre**, *to show*; **probāre**, *to prove*.

146. **Hōc** sibi Caesar **satis opportūnē** accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque **post tergum** hostem **relinquere volēbat** neque **propter annī** tempus bellum gerere poterat neque hās **tantulārum** rērum occupatiōnēs esse māiōrēs quam Britanniam iūdicābat, māgnū eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem **recipit**.

147. 1. **satis opportūnē**: **satis** is here an adverb limiting another adverb; *fortunately enough*.

2. **arbitrātus**: for the construction of the preceding **hōc accidisse**, cf. 145, above.

3. *hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs*, *this engrossment in such trivial matters*: note the English equivalent for the genitive.

4. *iūdicābat*: how does this verb explain the preceding *esse*?

5. *imperat*: here in sense of *levy*.

148.

VOCABULARY

annus, a year.

tergum, a back.

tantulus, so little, so small.

existimāre (*ex* and *aestimāre*),
to estimate, esteem, think.

accidere, -*cidit*, no partic. stem
(*ad* and *cadere*, to fall), to fall
upon, befall, happen.

dīcere, *dīxit*, *dictus*, to say.

ostendere, -*tendit*, -*tentus* (*tendere*, to stretch), to spread before, show.

recipere, -*cēpit*, -*ceptus* (*capere*), to take back, recover, receive; *sē recipit*, he betakes himself, withdraws.

relinquere, -*liquit*, -*lictus*, to leave behind, abandon.

volēbat, imper. ind. of irreg. verb of which pres. inf. is *velle* and pf. ind. *voluit*, to wish, be willing.

opportūnē, adv. (*opportūnus*), seasonably, opportunely.

satis, as adj. in nom. and accus., enough, sufficient; as noun, enough, a sufficiency; as adv., enough, sufficiently.

post, prep. with accus., after, behind.

propter, prep. with accus., on account of, because of.

149.

EXERCISES

1. Post hōc tempus, ubi omnēs lēgātī praefectique ad litus propinquius pervēnērunt, Caesar propter hanc causam Galliam relinquere cōstituit. 2. Commius Caesarī ostendet imperitōs hominēs in insulae silvis incolere. 3. Quaestor quem Caesar in Morinōs venīre iussit tantulis occupātiōnibus impeditus esse existimātur. 4. Tītūrius Sabinus nūntiō fidēli auditō reperiet nēminem peditum Rōmānōrum perterritum esse. 5. Legiōnēs quās superiōre annō Sulpicius dūcere voluit hāc nāve trānsportātae esse dicuntur.

150.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He brings back word that the enemy were frightened.
2. He has heard that the cavalry frightened the barbarians.

3. They are thought to have filled the skiff. 4. He affirms that the disgrace was (76 and 144) very great. 5. They show that the district is bounded by very high hills. 6. He proves that these leaders dared to hold the rest of the coast. 7. Let him advise them to withstand (133, 4) it. 8. They declared that they did not know the Roman custom. 9. He thinks they have approached the harbors. 10. Ignorant men can spread abroad these messages. 11. He is leaving Gaul behind his back to explore (113, 2) Britain. 12. He says he is leaving Gaul to explore Britain.

151.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. While they are bringing back word that the commander has been defeated, Caius himself approaches the house. 2. They will continue in that opinion if the Roman leader shall make known those things which have been determined upon. 3. The unencumbered foot soldiers assemble (come together) in order to keep out the enemy. 4. When he had returned in safety, the tall merchant reported that the troops of cavalry had assembled. 5. It happened fortunately enough, for he knew that the Britons had brought many soldiers to that place. 6. They betook themselves to higher places because they wished to-let-fly (*mittere*) arrows at the cavalry. 7. He thinks that these ships are enough, and will urge the prefects to sail as soon as possible.



LESSON XXVII

DECLENSION OF *Īdem* AND *Duo*.

152. *Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs (quot esse satis ad duās legiōnēs existimābat) nāvis longās quās praetereā habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant duodēvigintī onerāriae nāvēs, quae*

ex eō locō **mīlibus passuum octō** ventō tenēbantur et in **eundum** portum venīre nōn poterant; hās equitibus distribuit.

153. 1. **quot**: this indeclinable relative refers here to **nāvibus**.

2. **satis**: here an indeclinable adjective.

3. **duās**: regular here; but what are its irregularities in nominative and accusative masculine and neuter? In dative and ablative? See 422.

4. **existimābat**: how does this verb explain the use of the preceding **esse**? What is the subject of **esse**?

5. **hūc**, *to this place*, here *to these ships*.

6. **mīlibus**: study this word carefully in the Vocabulary; the reason for its use as an ablative here will be explained later; translated without an English preposition.

7. **passuum**: a genitive plural depending on **mīlibus**, which is a noun, not an adjective; *thousands of paces*, but in idiomatic English, *thousand paces*.

8. **eundem**: accusative singular masculine from **īdem**, **eadem**, **īdem**, a compound of the pronoun **is**, **ea**, **īd**, and the affix **-dem**. Note that here the **m** in **eum** is changed to **n** before **d**. Note exact spelling in nominative singular masculine and neuter. See paradigm in 428.

154.

VOCABULARY

mīlle, in sing. usually an indeclinable adj., *a thousand*; the plur., **mīlia** or **mīllia** is a noun declined like the plur. of **mare**.

passus, **-ūs**, *a pace*; a Roman measure about five feet long, a thousand of which made a Roman mile.

īdem (for **īsdem**), **eadem**, **īdem**, *the same*; for declension, see 428.

onerārius, adj. (**onus**, *a burden*), *of burden, for freight, transport*.

quot, indeclinable relative and interrogative adj., *how many, as many as*.

duo, **duae**, **duo**, *two*; for declension, see 422.

duodēvigintī, indecl., *two from twenty, eighteen*.

octō, indecl., *eight*.

octōgintā, indecl., *eighty*.

accēdere, -cessit, -cessum, to go
to, approach; used in act. with
 pass. sense, *to be added*.

cōgere, cōgēgit, cōactus (com
 for **cum** and **agere, to drive**),
to drive together, collect, compel.

distribuere, -tribuit, -tribūtus,
to distribute, assign.

circiter, adv., about, nearly, not
far from.

praetereā, adv., beyond this, be-
sides.

155.

EXERCISES

1. Ad altōs collis sē recipere contendēt ut equīs quōs fidēlis
 lēgātus cōgēgit ibi ūtantur. 2. Hīs Gallis ostenderat reliquōs
 peditēs octō passuum mīlia in eandem regiōnem prōgressōs esse.
 3. Īdem princeps diē cōstitutā nūntiōs dīmittat quī eāsdem nā-
 tiōnēs cōgnōscant.¹ 4. Dixerat Rōmānās nāvis esse breviorēs
 quam nostrās et Rōmānōs hās ex mari subducere cōsuēvisse.
 5. Quintō annō Morinīs adflictīs ac duābus legiōnibus ad mare
 distribūtīs, princeps petit ut ad ōram quae ad septentriōnēs vergit
 complūrēs cohortēs dēducant.

156.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Transports and war ships will come. 2. How-many thou-
 sand (accusative) paces did they advance? 3. Two ships are
 added to (ad) the fleet. 4. This happened in the winter. 5. With
 how large states did they wage war? 6. About eighty ships were
 sent to this harbor. 7. They had begun to disembark. 8. They
 will join battle with the enemy. 9. Besides, they wished to leave
 trifling pursuits behind their back. 10. He thinks that many
 opportunities have been abandoned. 11. On-account-of his
 zeal they will come seasonably enough. 12. What king will
 Caesar set up in this state?

157.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Where does he say that they lived after departing from these
 hills? 2. He urges them, when the battle has been interrupted, to

¹ What is the mode of this verb and what does this mode mean in this
 clause? Cf. 119, 5.

lead the soldiers away and to return to higher positions. 3. Grain gave-out¹ because a large part of it had been carried over to Britain by Caesar. 4. The battle was not relaxed (127) until Caesar had followed the enemy from the mountain to the sea. 5. Let them show the barbarians that the Roman infantry are very faithful and that the Britons rashly dared to fight with these horsemen. 6. They will seek to seize all the region which the enemy are using except this coast.

¹ Different words are purposely used in the Exercises to translate the same Latin word. Think of an English synonym for *gave out*, e.g. *failed*.



NĀVIS ONERĀRIA

LESSON XXVIII

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

158. Reliquum **exercitum** Titūrīō Sabīnō et **Auruncu-lēiō** Cottae lēgātīs in **Menapiōs** atque in eōs **pāgōs** Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum eō **praesidiō** quod satis esse arbitrābātur portū tenēre iussit.

Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus **naetus** idōneam ad nāvīgandum **tempestātem tertiā** ferē **vigiliā** solvit, equitēsque in **ulteriōrem** portū prōgredi et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit.

159. 1. **reliquum** : for meaning, see 90.

2. **quibus** : antecedent **pāgōs**, not **Morinōrum**.

3. **dūcendum** : a verbal adjective or participle from **dūcere** ; it is passive in sense and limits **exercitum**, *army to be led* ; see N. 6. Give another participle of **dūcere** and its meaning.

4. **dedit** : what is the direct object of this verb? What, its indirect objects?

5. **satis** : here an indeclinable adjective limiting **quod**.

6. **nāvīgandum** : a verbal NOUN, called the gerund, from **nāvigāre**, similar in meaning to our English verbal noun in *-ing*, here *sailing*. Compare the verbal ADJECTIVE **dūcendum**, N. 3.

7. **vigiliā** : for use of case, see 119, 3.

8. **ulteriōrem** : degree of comparison? Decline it in all genders. See 423.

160. GERUNDIVE—VERBAL
ADJECTIVE

vocandus, -a, -um, *to be called*.

monendus, -a, -um, *to be advised*.

dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led*.

audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard*.

GERUND—VERBAL
NOUN

vocandī, *of calling*.

monendī, *of advising*.

dūcendī, *of leading*.

audiendī, *of hearing*.

Facultās pūgnandī cohortibus danda est.*An opportunity of fighting is to be given to the cohorts.*Better, *A chance to fight must (or ought to) be given to the cohorts.*

a. What part of speech is the gerundive? What, the gerund? Like what adjective is the gerundive declined? On what stem are both gerund and gerundive based? What is the voice of the gerund? Of the gerundive?

b. The gerundive often expresses obligation or necessity. Other uses will be explained later.

c. The gerund is found in only four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, *e.g.* **vocandī, vocandō, vocandum, vocandō.** Even in these cases its use is much more limited than that of the English verbal noun in *-ing*.

161.

VOCABULARY

vigilia, *a watching, watch* of the night; one of the four equal parts into which the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise.

Aurunculēius,¹ *a Roman name.*

Menapiī,² *a Belgian tribe.*

pāgus, *a district, canton, region.*

praesidium, *a defense, garrison, fortification.*

tempestās (tempus), *a portion of time, season, weather, storm.*

exercitus, -ūs (exercēre, to train), *a trained body, an army.*

tertius, *third*; cf. **prīmus**, **quīntus**.

ulterior (424, 4), *farther, more remote.*

cōnscendere, -scendit, -scēnsus, *to ascend, climb, go on board (of ships).*

nancīscī, nactus or nactus, *to get, obtain, find.*

solvere, solvit, solūtus,³ *to loosen, set free, pay, fulfill*; often used of ships, when **nāvem** or **nāvīs** may be understood, *to set sail.*

¹ Syllables, **Au-run-cu-lē-ius**. For diphthong **au**, see 2; for **i** in **-ius**, see 7, 5.

² Syllables, **Me-na-pi-ī**, genitive **Me-na-pi-ō-rum**.

³ The pupil should take great pains with the parts of 3d conjugation verbs like those in this Vocabulary.

162.

EXERCISES

1. Sulpicius Rūfus praesidium quod esse satis arbitrābitur, ut portum teneat, ad ōram ulteriōrem dēducet. 2. Exercitus Titūri Sabīni in hunc pāgum, quem populus Rōmānus superāvit, cum impedimentis mittendus est. 3. Causa solvendī erat quod Caesar cum Britannīs proelium committere volēbat. 4. Signa et rēmi et vincula et omnia ferē armāmenta quae māgnō ūsuī classī sunt ad haec loca cōgenda sunt. 5. Nāvis quam praesidiō (dative, *as a defense*) portuī reliquit ad nāvigandum inūtilis est.

163.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The desire of the essedarii ought to be reported. 2. He thinks that eighty horses are to be collected. 3. He reports that the grain was left near the forest. 4. Almost all the messengers were safe. 5. They will be frightened by these many dangers. 6. He will wage a short war with the Gauls. 7. Let Aurunculeius lead the army among the Menapians. 8. On the third day he made known his plan. 9. He says these states have secured aid. 10. Commius was disturbed by the severe storm. 11. In that year Caius went on board ship. 12. Quote the last two sentences after *existimat*. 13. They appoint the day for (of) assembling at the transport.

164.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Because of the Roman customs the ambassador who was ordered to lead forward eight thousand soldiers holds the supreme power. 2. The grain has been furnished by those who have invited a larger number of faithful soldiers into Gaul. 3. He says that about eighteen transports (freight ships) have been added, and that two war ships besides were detained by the wind. 4. The prefects will urge the cavalry to leave the useless equipment behind their backs and to hasten in the first watch to the same garrison. 5. To the military tribunes about eighty cohorts suitable for fighting (162, 5) in that region ought to be assigned.

LESSON XXIX

ADDITIONAL FORMS OF **Esse** AND **Posse** (CF. 76). FIFTH
DECLENSION. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

165.

*Future***erit**, *he will be.***poterit**, *he will be able.***erunt**, *they will be.***poterunt**, *they will be able.**Present Subjunctive***sit.****possit.****sint.****possint.***Imperfect Subjunctive***esset.****posset.****essent.****possent.***Perfect Infinitive***fuisse**, *to have been.***potuisse**, *to have been able.*

THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

166. **Ā** quibus ubi **paulō tardius** est administrātum, ipse **hōrā** diēi circiter **quārtā** cum primis nāvibus Britanniam **attigit** atque ibi in omnibus collibus **expositās**

hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur uti ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.

167. 1. ā quibus ubi: (a) ā quibus belongs in the clause beginning with ubi; one or two words often thus precede a conjunction. (b) Antecedent of quibus? For translation, see 71, c.

2. tardius: adverb in the comparative, from tardē; it means *more slowly*, or, perhaps better, *too slowly*. Compare the meaning *very* for the superlative, 119, 2, c.

3. est administrātum: the same as administrātum est, *it was managed*; the matter was managed, referring of course to going aboard ship and setting sail.

4. diēi: (a) the genitive singular from the 5th declension noun diēs, which forms the nominative by adding s to the stem. Cf. civitās, rēx, princeps, 60 and 66. (b) For genitive plural, see rērum, 146, ablative singular diē, 132, dative and ablative plural rēbus, 112, accusative singular fidem, 132. (c) The dative singular is like the genitive as a rule; the nominative and accusative plural are the same as the nominative singular. (d) What is evidently the stem ending? (e) What points of likeness between the 5th and 3d declensions? (f) Write out the complete declension and compare it with the paradigm in 419. Note that in the genitive and dative singular when e in the ending -eī is preceded by a vowel it is long; otherwise short. Cf. diēi but rei.

5. quārtā: the Roman day, whatever the season, was divided into just twelve hours from sunrise to sunset; the hour, therefore, varied in length with the seasons.

6. continēbatur: the preceding adverb ita limits this verb, not the adverb angustē.

7. uti: another form for the conjunction ut. Distinguish it from the infinitive ūti.

8. **adigī**: for this infinitive of a 3d conjugation verb, cf. 77, *b*.
 9. **posset**: (*a*) what mode and tense? See paradigms at the head of this lesson. (*b*) Note that the clause introduced by **utī** does not here express the purpose, but the result of the action of the verb **continēbātur**, *i.e.* this place was so hemmed in by mountains that a weapon could be thrown from them to the beach. (*c*) Note that the subjunctive verb in a result clause is frequently translated by the English indicative; it is sometimes translated by the auxiliary *would*. (*d*) Study carefully the sentences in 169, below.

10. **ad ēgrediendum**: cf. **ad nāvigandum**, 159, 6.

11. **conveni-re-nt**: (*a*) an imperfect subjunctive. What seems to be the tense sign? What is the present subjunctive of this same verb? (*b*) The preceding **dum** means not *while* but *until, until the rest of the ships should come together, for the ships to come together*; **dum** has here much the force of **ut** in a purpose clause.

168.

VOCABULARY

hōra, an hour.

nātūra, nature, character.

tēlum, a dart, spear.

nōnus, ninth.

quārtus, fourth.

adigere, -**ēgit**, -**actus** (**agere**, to drive), to drive to, thrust home.

attingere, -**tigit**, -**tactus**, to touch upon, reach.

cōspicere, -**spēxit**, -**spectus**, to look at attentively, perceive; cf. **perspicere**.¹

expōnere, -**posuit**, -**positus**, to place or put out, land, expose, display; to set forth, explain.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely.

ita, adv., thus, so; limiting verbs.

nēquāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.

paulō, adv., by a little, a little, somewhat.

tardē, adv., slowly, tardily; comp. **tardius**.

169.

EXERCISES

1. Haec rēs est tantula ut Caesar cohortem, nōn legiōnem, mittat quae eum portum occupet. 2. Idem hunc exercitum ita expōnit ut turmae Gallōrum perterreantur. 3. Ita hanc civitā-

¹ Do not forget the Vocabulary at the end of the book.

tem incitāverat ut octō milia militum nōnō diē convenīrent. 4. Ita ipse omnia quae cōgnōscere volēbat hōc tempore explōrāvit ut omnēs ferē aditūs atque trāiectūs sint Rōmānis nōtissimī.

170.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Who is urging Caesar to intrust himself to this man? 2. What fact (thing) did he report? 3. He levies (147, 5) many hostages upon them. 4. No one except Caesar will control these matters. 5. He does not think that anything was known to the messenger. 6. They hurried so that they could reach home the third hour. 7. They themselves gave help to the farther garrison. 8. The character of this locality was not at all explained. 9. This ship is suitable for sailing. 10. In the fourth watch the troops must (160) be landed. 11. Darts ought not to be given to the Menapians. 12. This same canton is closely hemmed in by the character of the hills. 13. They called this man Aurunculeius. 14. What practice has he had in sailing?¹ 15. From what place were these standards brought back? 16. How many ships were saved? 17. Who landed these soldiers?

171.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. They think they can drive the horses to the beach and set sail after getting a little (paulō) larger (107, 8) freight ship. 2. They reached the farther shore, which Caesar had pointed out, tardily, and saw that a tempest had wrecked the small ships. 3. Let them go on board the ships as soon as possible and excuse themselves to Caesar because they were not obedient to his command. 4. After the garrison of the Romans has been surrounded, the leader encourages his men and tells them that Caesar has not delayed, but is advancing in order to save them. 5. Because Caesar judges that these men have kept (servāre) their promise, he orders them to fasten the skiffs and to wait two miles² from the harbor.

¹ Cf. *quem fūsum belli*, 106.² Cf. *mīlibus passuum*, 153, 6, 7.

LESSON XXX

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. THE
ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE.

172. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis, et ea quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōverat et ea quae fieri volēbat ostendit, monuitque ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Quam rem maritimae rēs postulant; nāvēs enim celerem atque instabilem mōtum habent. His lēgātis tribūnisque militāribus dimissis, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōstituit.

173. 1. **et** (after **convocātis**) : note its repetition in the next line. What is its meaning? See 26.

2. **administrā re-ntur** : (a) an imperfect subjunctive. Cf. **conveni-re-nt**, 167, 11. (b) For the use of the subjunctive here, cf. 133, 2 and 4. (c) The imperfect rather than present is used because it depends on the past tense **monuit**; in translating the imperfect subjunctive *might*, the past tense of *may*, should be used.

3. **quam rem** : literally *which thing*; we should say *a thing which*, referring, of course, to the prompt obedience spoken of in the last sentence.

4. **maritimae rēs**, *things connected with the sea, nautical matters, seamanship*; the word **rēs** in different connections acquires widely different meanings.

5. **secundum** : what two preceding words does it limit?

6. **prōgressus** : (a) study carefully the participles in this sentence. Which are of deponent verbs (87, 3)? Which are passive in sense? Try to translate them into natural, idiomatic English. (b) The preceding **mīlia** is NOT the object of **prōgressus**, but an adverbial accusative of extent of space limiting **prōgressus**; so in

the English translation *having proceeded seven miles*, the word *miles* is an adverbial accusative of extent of space.

7. **apertō ac plānō litore**, *the beach (being) open and level*; an ablative absolute in which an ordinary adjective supplies the place of the more usual verbal adjective (participle).

174. vocā-re-t monē-re-t dūce-re-t audī-re-t

Study the above imperfect subjunctives. On which stem of the verbs is each based? What is the tense sign? The plural and passive forms have the same personal endings as the imperfect indicative; form them. The imperfect subjunctive may always be found by adding the personal endings directly to the present infinitive active; this is so even in irregular verbs; cf. **esse, esset**.

175.

VOCABULARY

tribūnus, a military officer; also an officer, defender and representative of the common people at Rome; cf. the word *Tribune* as the name of a newspaper.

aestus, -ūs, *heaving heat* (cf. **ae-stās**), *heaving water, billows, tide*.

mōtus, -ūs (**movēre**, *to move*), *a moving, motion*.

nūtus, 4th decl. (**nuere**, *to nod*), found only in nom. sing., and accus. and abl. sing. and plur., *a nod, hint, command*.

apertus, adj., *open*.

secundus (**sequī**), *following, second, favorable* (probably from a wind *following* right astern).

ūnus, *one, alone*; the gen. and dat. sing. are like those of **ille** 428; otherwise it is regular.

celer, masc., **celeris**, fem., **celere**, neut.; the masc. is like the fem. except in the nom. sing., *swift, quick*.

instabilis, cf. **brevis** 32 (**stāre**, *to stand*), *not steadfast, unsteady*.

septem, indecl. adj., *seven*.

convocāre, *to call together*; for force of **con-** in composition. cf. **convenīre**, *to come together*.

postulāre, *to demand, require*.

fieri, **factus est**, *to be made or done, to happen*; this verb is peculiar in having, in the pres. system, act. forms with pass. meanings (cf. **accēdere**); thus, **fit**, *it is made*; **fiēbat**, *it was being made*, etc.

tollere, **sustulit**, **sublātus**, *to lift, raise; to take off, destroy, kill*.

176.

EXERCISES

1. *Etsi ā barbaris tribūnus militum postulāverat ut frūmentum subministrārent, tamen haec rēs tardē ab eis administrābātur.*
2. *Interim Volusēnus, nāvi parātā et complūribus armis undique coāctis, ad hunc portum profectus inde nāvigāvit et prōgressus circiter octōgintā milia passuum quārtō diē Britanniam attigit.*
3. *Aestum esse nēquāquam secundum arbitrātus, nōn ancorās sustulit sed septem scaphās ita cōstituit ut cōspiceret cōpiās quās ibi hostēs exposuerant.*

177.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Weapons were not hurled to the open shore.
2. The motion of the tide was quick.
3. One rank of the cohort is very unsteady.
4. They submitted to the command (nod) of one man.
5. He called together the soldiers to fight with the enemy.
6. A little larger house is building (is being made).
7. He first reported the character of the beach.
8. The ninth hour they slowly moved to the first mountain.
9. In the fifth year two houses were built.
10. The second and third legions overcame a multitude of Britons.
11. They closely surrounded this garrison.

178.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. This man was approved by Caesar because he usually did that which he had been commanded (*iubēre*) to do.
2. These horsemen were recklessly riding about near the legion, so that they might disturb the ranks.
3. When the tribunes of the third legion had been summoned to this place, Caesar said that almost all the troops had been carried across and that everything (all things) had happened rather (*satis*) fortunately.
4. If only they sailed to that place, Caesar generously gave them horses and promised them many things besides.
5. He demanded that, so far as they could, they bring the hostages which they had promised.
6. With a loud (great) voice he urged them to hurl their weapons and frighten the Gauls.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW OF LESSONS XVII.-XXX.

179.

REVIEW OF TEXT

The text studied in these lessons is a simplified version of Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 20-23. It begins the account of Caesar's First Invasion of Britain with the Roman Army — the starting point of English History. Review these four chapters with great care, reading the Latin aloud, translating it into good idiomatic English, and reproducing it from the Word-for-word Parallel which follows.

WORD-FOR-WORD PARALLEL¹

CAESAR, GALLIC WAR, Book IV., Chapters 20-23. First Invasion of Britain

20. (17) Small part of-the-summer (being) left Caesar, although in these places (because all Gaul toward the-north slopes) early are the-winters, yet into Britain to-depart hastens, because in-all almost Gallic wars to-enemies our thence have been furnished auxiliaries. (18) If war to-wage not he-can because time is-wanting, yet for-great to-him use usually it-has-been, if only a-district unknown he-has-gone-to, the-kind of-people he-has-seen, the-places, the-harbors, the-approaches he-has-learned; (19) which-things all almost to-the-Gauls were unknown. Neither for without-reason besides traders thither goes any-body, nor to-these themselves anything besides the-coast sea and (atque) those districts which are opposite the-Gallic-lands known is. (20) Therefore, having-been-called to himself from-all-sides the-traders, he-kept-asking: "How-great is of-the-island the-size, and what or how-large nations inhabit (it), and what experience as-to-war have-they or by-what

¹ This is not intended as a translation. It is to be used for rapid drill on vocabulary. This drill should be begun as soon as Lesson XVII. is reached.

habits-of-life do-they-profit and what are for a-greater of-ships number suitable harbors?" Which-things to-find-out not he could.

21. (21) These-things in-order-that he-may-learn, before the-attempt he-makes, Caius Volusenus suitable having-thought, him with a-ship long he-sends-ahead. To-this-man he-gives-orders that having-been-examined all things to himself as first (is possible) he-may-return. He-himself with all the-forces among the-Morinians sets-out, because thence was the-shortest into Britain passage. (22) Hither the-ships from-all-sides out-of the-neighboring districts, and what in-the-preceding summer for the-Venetic war he-had-made fleet, he-orders to-come-together. Meanwhile plan his having-been-learned and through traders carried-over to the-Britons, from many of-the-island states to him ambassadors come that-they may-promise hostages to-give and to-the-command of-the-people Roman to submit. (23) Who having-been-heard, generously having-promised and-having-urged that in this conclusion they-abide, them home he-sends-back ; and with them together Commius whom he-himself, the-Atrebatians having-been-conquered, king there had-appointed, whose both courage and judgment he-approved and whom to-himself faithful he-thought and-whose influence in these districts very-great was-considered, he-sends. (24) This-man he-orders what he-can that-he-go-to states, and-that-he-urge that of-the-people Roman the-protection they-seek. Volusenus, having-been-inspected the-districts, so-far-as to-that-man the opportunity be-given could who out-of the-ship to-go-forth and (ac) himself to-the-barbarians to-commit not dared, on-the-fifth day to Caesar returns, and-what there he-has-seen reports.

22. (25) While in these places Caesar that ships he-may-prepare is-delaying, out-of a-great part of-the-Morinians to him ambassadors come that-they themselves for of-the-former time the-plan may-excuse. "Men barbarous and of-the-Roman practice ignorant war upon-the-people Roman have-made. The-Morinians those-things which Caesar shall-command will-do. This they-

themselves will promise." (26) This for-himself Caesar enough fortunately to-have-happened having-thought, because neither behind (his) back an-enemy to-leave was-he-willing nor on-account-of (**propter**) of-the-year time war to-wage was-he-able nor these as-to-such-trifling things employments to-be greater than Britain was-he-judging, a-great upon-them number of-hostages he-levies. Which having-been-brought-in, them into protection he-receives. (27) Ships about eighty freight having-been-collected (as-many-as to-be enough for two legions he-was-reckoning), the-ships long which besides he had (imperfect) to-the-quaestor, to-the-lieutenants and-prefects he-assigned. To-this (there) were-added (imperfect) eighteen freight ships, which out-of that place thousands (ablative) of-paces eight by-the-wind were-being-kept and into the-same harbor to-come not were-able (imperfect) ; these to-the-horsemen he-assigned. (28) The-rest-of the-army to-Titurius Sabinus and to-Aurunculeius Cotta lieutenants among the-Menapians and (**atque**) into those cantons of-the-Morinians from which to him ambassadors not had-come to-be-led he-gave ; Sulpicius Rufus the-lieutenant with that garrison which sufficient to-be he-was-thinking the-harbor to-hold he-ordered.

23. These having-been-settled things, having-got suitable for sailing weather in-the-third about watch he-set-sail, and-the-horsemen into the-farther harbor to-proceed and the-ships to-board and himself to-follow he-ordered. (29) By whom when a-little too-slowly it-was-managed, he-himself at-the-hour of-the-day about fourth with the-first ships Britain reached and (**atque**) there on all the-hills displayed of-the-enemy the-forces armed he-saw. Of-which place this was the-character and (**atque**) so by-mountains closely the-sea was-skirted (imperfect) that out-of the-places higher to (**in**) the-beach a-dart be-thrown could. This for disembarking by-no-means a-suitable place having-thought, until the-rest-of the-ships thither should-come-together till the-hour ninth at anchor (plural) he-waited. (30) Meanwhile the-lieutenants and-the-tribunes of-the-soldiers having-been-called-together both those-things which from (**ex**) Volusenus he-had-learned and those-things

which to-be-done he-wished (imperfect) he-showed, and-he-advised (that) at command and on time all things by them be-attended-to. Which thing nautical matters require; ships for a-quick and (**atque**) unsteady motion have. These lieutenants and-tribunes military having-been-dismissed, both wind and tide at-one time having-secured favorable, having-been-given the-signal and having-been-weighed the-anchors, about thousands of-paces seven from that place having-proceeded, open and (**ac**) smooth (being) the-beach, the-ships he-stopped.

180.

GRAMMAR REVIEW

FORMS

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Third declension nouns in -or, 101, 2, and 415. 2. Third declension neuters in -us, -oris, 139, 1, and 415. 3. Fourth declension masculine nouns, 95, 3, 6, and 418. 4. Fifth declension, 167, 4, and 419. 5. Declension of hic and ipse, 113, 6, 11; sui, 124; idem, 153, 8, and 428. 6. Declension of duo, 153, 3, and 422. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Comparison of adjectives, 119, 2. 8. Questions and interrogative words, 106, 108. 9. Deponent verbs, 87. 10. Verb forms of all four conjugations: Future Indicative, 139, 8; Present Subjunctive, 131, 1; Imperfect Subjunctive, 174; Perfect Infinitive, 144; Gerund and Gerundive, 160; Additional forms of esse and posse, 165. |
|--|--|



ROMAN SHIPS CARRYING TROOPS

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS: FORMS ADDITIONAL TO THOSE IN LESSON XVI

	FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION		THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Indicative</i>								
<i>Future</i>	vocā-bi-t, he will call.	vocā-bi-tur, he will be called.	monē-bi-t, he will advise.	monē-bi-tur, he will be advised.	dūc-e-t, he will lead.	dūc-e-tur, he will be led.	audī-e-t, he will hear.	audī-e-tur, he will be heard.
<i>Subjunctive</i>								
<i>Present Imperfect</i>	voce-t, vocā-re-t.	voce-tur, vocā-re-tur.	monē-a-t, monē-re-t.	monē-ā-tur, monē-rē-tur.	dūc-a-t, dūc-re-t.	dūc-ā-tur, dūc-rē-tur.	audī-a-t, audī-re-t.	audī-ā-tur, audī-rē-tur.
<i>Infinitive</i>								
<i>Perfect</i>	vocā-isse, to have called.	vocāt-us, -a, -um, esse, to have been called.	monu-isse, to have advised.	monit-us, -a, -um, esse, to have been advised.	dūx-isse, to have led.	duct-us, -a, -um, esse, to have been led.	audī-isse, to have heard.	audīt-us, -a, -um, esse, to have been heard.
<i>Participle</i>								
<i>Gerundive.</i> (<i>Fut. Pass.</i>)		vocā-nd-us, -a, -um, to be called.		monē-nd-us, -a, -um, to be advised.		dūcē-nd-us, -a, -um, to be led.		audī-ē-nd-us, -a, -um, to be heard.
<i>Gerund</i>								
<i>Genitive.</i>	vocā-nd-i, of calling.		monē-nd-i, of advising.		dūcē-nd-i, of leading.		audī-ē-nd-i, of hearing.	

NOTE. — The personal ending, of course, may mean *she* or *it* as well as *he*. The plural is formed from the singular by substituting the plural personal ending, except that in the future the tense sign -bi- is changed to -bu- in the plural. In each verb there are four cases of the gerund: thus, genitive vocandī, dative vocando, accusative vocandum, ablative vocando.

181.

SYNTAX

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ablative of Time, 119, 3. | 6. Subjunctive of Will (Vollitive), independent and substantive, 131, 2. |
| 2. Ablative with <i>ut</i> , 107, 7, <i>b</i> . | |
| 3. Accusative of Extent of Space, 173, 6, <i>b</i> . | 7. Subjunctive of Result, 167, 9. |
| 4. Use of the Reflexive <i>su</i> , 124. | 8. The use of the Infinitive after Verbs of Saying and Thinking, 145. |
| 5. Subjunctive of Purpose, 113, 2, <i>b</i> . | |

182.

WORD REVIEW

The following 188 words occur for the first time in Lessons XVII-XXX. The number at the right of a word indicates the Lesson in which it is first used.

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

<i>cōpia</i> 21	<i>hōra</i> 29	<i>nātūra</i> 29	<i>vigilia</i> 28
-----------------	----------------	------------------	-------------------

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

<i>annus</i> 26	<i>Menapii</i> 28	<i>Sabinus</i> 25	<i>Titurius</i> 25
<i>Aurunculēius</i> 28	<i>pāgus</i> 28	<i>Sulpicius</i> 25	<i>tribūnus</i> 30
<i>auxilium</i> 17	<i>praefectus</i> 25	<i>tēlum</i> 29	<i>Volusēnus</i> 21
<i>imperium</i> 22	<i>praesidium</i> 28	<i>tergum</i> 26	

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

<i>apertus</i> 30	<i>mātūrus</i> 17	<i>quārtus</i> 29	<i>tantulus</i> 26
<i>duo</i> 27	<i>nōnus</i> 29	<i>quīntus</i> 24	<i>tertius</i> 28
<i>exiguus</i> 17	<i>noster</i> 17	<i>reliquus</i> 17	<i>ūnus</i> 30
<i>imperītus</i> 25	<i>onerārius</i> 27	<i>secundus</i> 30	<i>Veneticus</i> 22
<i>incōgnitus</i> 19	<i>quantus</i> 20	<i>superus</i> 22	

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

<i>aestās</i> 17	<i>dēdecus</i> 25	<i>imperātor</i> 19	<i>quaestor</i> 25
<i>Atrebās</i> 23	<i>facultās</i> 24	<i>lītus</i> 25	<i>tempestās</i> 28
<i>auctōritās</i> 23	<i>genus</i> 18	<i>mercātor</i> 19	<i>tempus</i> 18
<i>Caesar</i> 17	<i>hiems</i> 17	<i>mīlia</i> 27	<i>terror</i> 19
<i>cōnsuētūdō</i> 25			

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

celer 30 complūrēs 22 instabilis 30 ulterior 28

INDECLINABLE ADJECTIVES

duodēvīginti 27 octōgintā 27 quot 27 septem 30
octō 27

FOURTH DECLENSION NOUNS

aditus 18 domus 23 nūtus 30 trāiectus 21
aestus 30 exercitus 28 passus 27 ūsus 18
mōtus 30 portus 18

FIFTH DECLENSION NOUNS

diēs 24 fidēs 24 rēs 21

PRONOUNS

hīc 17 ipse 19 quis, inter., 20 suī, gen., 20
īdem 27 quī, inter. adj., 20 quisquam 19

VERBS

First Conjugation

arbitrārī 21 exīstimāre 26 morārī 17 renūntiāre 24
convocāre 30 hortārī 23 obtemperāre 22 subministrāre 17
excūsāre 25 imperāre 24 postulāre 30 trānsportāre 25

Second Conjugation

audēre 24 permanēre 23 pollicērī 22 remanēre 23

Third Conjugation

accēdere 27 cōnstituere 23 intemittere 21 relinquere 26
accidere 26 dēficere 18 nanciscī 28 remittere 23
adigere 29 dicere 26 ostendere 26 revertī 21
admittere 23 dīmittere 21 perspicere 18 sequī 24
attingere 29 distribuere 27 petere 20 solvere 28
cōgere 27 ēgredī 24 praemittere 21 submittere 21
cōgnōscere 18 expōnere 29 proficiscī 17 subsequī 24
committere 24 facere 21 (fierī 30) prōsequī 24 ūtī 20
cōnscendere 28 gerere 18 prōgredī 24 vergere 17
cōnspicere 29 incolere 20 recipere 26

Fourth Conjugation

convenīre 22	pervenīre 22	reperīre 20	venīre 22
--------------	--------------	-------------	-----------

Irregular

adīre 18	perferre 22	tollere 30	velle 26
ferre 22			

CONJUNCTIONS

atque 19	dum 25	quam 20	ubi 20
aut 20	enim 19	-que 23	ut (utī) 21
	priusquam 21	sed 20	

PREPOSITIONS

contrā 19	post 26	praeter 19	propter 26
inter 22			

ADVERBS

angustē 29	inde 17	opportūnē 26	satis 26
circiter 27	interim 22	paulō 29	tardē 29
eō 23	ita 29	plērumque 18	temerē 19
hūc 22	liberāliter 23	praetereā 27	ūnā 23
ibi 23	modo 18	prīmum 21	unde 20
illō 19	nēquāquam 29	quantum 24	undique 20

EXERCISES

The following sentences illustrate all the rules of Syntax thus far learned, and use the 188 words first introduced in Lessons XVII-XXX.

183. 1. Cōpiae quae hūc convocātae sunt ut cum Menapiīs bellum gererent quīntā hōrā ad praesidium pervenient. 2. Existimat secundā vigiliā praefectōs ēgressōs ex celerī nāve nātūram litoris perspēxisse. 3. Octōgintā et septem milia passuum noster exercitus hostēs secūtus est atque nōnā hōrā ad onerāriās nāvēs accessit. 4. Imperātōrī sē excūsābant quod eīs quī prōgredi contrā Rōmānōs ausi sunt arma tēlaque complūra subministrāverant. 5. Auctōritās reliquōrum Atrebātum erat tantula ut Caesar nōn arbitrārētur Commium rēgem posse impediri. 6. Superiōribus temporibus imperiō Rōmānōrum barbarī ita obtemperāvērunt ut obsidēs ex insulā quae

erat ulterior quam Gallia praemitterentur. 7. Quod instabilem nātūram hīc habēbat, Caesar eas res ei committendās esse nō arbitrātus est. 8. Nūtus nostrī imperātōris dandus est priusquam reliqua classis solvat. 9. Circiter duodēviginti cohortēs octō milia passuum ut māiorem portum attingerent tardē prōgressae sunt. 10. Aestū classī secundō renūtiātō Caesar ancorās tollet et imperābit ut tribūni militum sē subsequantur. 11. Dixit eōs in eā sententiā permānsisse sed omnis finitimōs ā Caesare dēfēcisse. 12. Ubi aestus nōn fuit idōneus ad ēgrediendum, plērumque scaphā eōs quī inde reverterant ad litus trānsportābant. 13. Sī modo omnēs equōs quōs opportūnē ibi nactus est sine eōrum terrōre in litore expōnet, ad portum unde profectus est primum revertētur et nāvis longās quot esse satis reperiet fieri iubēbit. 14. Rēx, bellō intermissō et nūntiis perlātis, eōs quī militibus auxilium subministrābant quantum poterat cōfirmāvit.

184.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. In the fourth year Aurunculeius sought the supreme power. 2. Aid will be sent back by Titurius. 3. He shows that Volusenus is living in this canton. 4. Let Sabinus and Sulpicius urge the tribune to delay. 5. They hurled weapons at his back. 6. The approach to the passages was open. 7. Two small houses were found. 8. He says the trader was ignorant and unknown. 9. Caesar promised this Atrebatian great authority. 10. He has learned that the summer is early. 11. The opportunity which he secured was reported. 12. How great disgrace was incurred (*admittere*)? 13. How many kinds of weapons were brought? 14. What tribune used the same troops? 15. Who will leave the harbor on the third day? 16. One quaestor went aboard ship, weighed anchor, set sail in the winter. 17. His fright was very great because of the storm. 18. They will by no means send anything hither. 19. This happened without confusion. 20. Whence have they come together to profit by (*ūt*) this opportunity? 21. Not without reason did he go to that place a little more slowly. 22. He has besides a little longer skiff than this.

185.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The movement of the wind which comes thither from the north is swifter than an arrow. 2. In the meantime either Caesar himself or his lieutenant will go aboard the ship along with the foot-soldiers. 3. While the pledge is being demanded, hostages are brought from all sides; for they perceive that Caesar dares to use arms. 4. They generously promised Sabinus the legate all things that he had sought. 5. The army which he has collected ought to be carried across by the transports which the king has decided to send. 6. All the leaders except this (one) wanted to approach the harbor by the passage which was between the hill and the forest. 7. This approach is behind the mountain which slopes to the sea, and opposite the fortification to which the quaestor is betaking himself. 8. Caesar had assigned these troops to the lieutenant who in the former war was closely hemmed in by the enemy.

LESSON XXXII

NEUTERS IN -us, -eris. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

186. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūti cōsuērunt, cum reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hanc causam summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant. Mīlitēs autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressī sunt.

187. 1. quō genere: (a) *which kind* (of soldiers), referring to the cavalry and charioteers just mentioned. (b) For nominative genus, cf. 95, 5; for declension, see 415.

2. ūti: how does this word explain the case of the preceding genere? Cf. 107, 7.

3. **cōnsuērunt**: for fuller form, **cōnsuēvērunt**; -**ve**- in verbs is often omitted.

4. **nostrōs**: a noun, not an adjective; the masculine gender showing that it means *our men, our soldiers*. What would the neuter **nostra** mean?

5. **nāvibus ēgredi**: the ablative case alone here means *from*; such a use of the ablative is called the ablative of separation. Note carefully that the preposition is omitted only where the meaning of the verb suggests separation as in **ēgredi**, *to go out*, **prohibēre**, *to keep out*, **liberāre**, *to free*, and that even with these verbs the preposition may be expressed, as in **ex nāvi ēgredi**, 132; furthermore the name of a person always takes the preposition.

6. **prohibēbant**: the preceding accusative and infinitive construction **nostrōs ēgredi** is the object of this verb, *they kept out our men disembarking, they kept our men from disembarking*.

7. **quod**: the causal clause beginning with this word explains and is in apposition with the preceding **causam**.

8. **nisi**: really a conjunction with the verb **cōstituēbantur** understood; it may, however, be translated here by *except*, without supplying a verb.

9. **altō**: here a noun, *deep water*. Compare English *the deep* for the *deep sea*.

10. **ignōtis locis**: render as an ablative absolute, *the places being unknown*.

11. **onere**: cf. note on **genere** above, and do not confuse such an ablative with the infinitive of the 3d conjugation.

188.

VOCABULARY

difficultās, *difficulty*.

latus, -**eris**, neut., *side, flank*.

onus, -**eris**, neut., *burden*; cf. adjs. **onerārius** and the Eng. *onerous*.

equitātus, -**ūs**, collective noun, *cavalry*; cf. **equus**, *eques*.

fluctus, -**ūs** (**fluere**, *to flow*), *wave*.

manus, -**ūs** (fem. by exception as **domus** is), *hand*; also *a band of men, force*.

liberāre, *to free*.

premere, **pressit**, **pressus**, *to press, press down, press hard*.

at, conj., *but*.

autem, conj., *but, however, moreover*; never stands first in its clause, but follows the first or second word of it.

nisi, conj., *if not, unless*.

audācter, adv., *boldly*.

māgnopere, adv., *greatly, very much*; irreg. comp. **magis**, *more*; irreg. superl. **māximē**, *most, especially, very*; **magis** and **māximē**, like Eng. *more* and *most*, are used in comparing adjs. and adverbs.

189.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. How great was the difficulty of coming together? 2. Our men ought to be freed from danger. 3. The third side was said to be opposite the barbarians. 4. The Gallic cavalry being hard pressed, Caesar called together the tribunes. 5. One hand is lifted (175). 6. He boldly demands that they take away the burden. 7. He says that this is being done. 8. They came down from the mountain into the waves with the charioteers. 9. But they are greatly frightened because of the unsteady motion of the skiff. 10. They lifted the second anchor out of the waves. 11. If the message was not favorable, seven swift ships were sent. 12. All things except the tide are favorable. 13. They kept the enemy from the open coast. 14. The rest of the Romans were freed from the danger of a war with-the-Venetians.

190.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The foot-soldiers disembarked, however, from the first transport, which had been greatly shattered by the waves and the tempest. 2. The two tribunes are said to have awaited the command of Caesar and to have boldly contended for our state. 3. In former times the difficulty was so trifling that almost all could be freed from danger. 4. The time was very fortunate because (only) a small



ROMAN FOOT-SOLDIER

part of the winter was left and the summer was very early. 5. Although their neighbors are unskilled, yet they will be suitable if they shall be placed (**cōstituere**) behind the two very well known legions. 6. Let the ninth legion follow between the long hill and the large house which is near the baggage train. 7. If the Roman leader shall command them to approach, they will come without fear through the level places and will reach the fourth garrison on the fifth day. 8. Nautical matters (**rēs**) are unknown to the new leader because he has not lived near the sea.

LESSON XXXIII

DATIVE OF APPARENT AGENT. ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND REVIEW
OF THE ABLATIVE. DECLENSION OF **ille**.

191. **Hīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitarent.** Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsue-rant nītēbantur.

192. 1. **erat pūgnandum**: (a) with intransitive verbs the gerundive is put in the neuter singular to express necessity and obligation; note the preceding intransitives **dēsiliendum** and **cōsistendum**; with these **erat** is to be understood. (b) The **hīs** at the beginning of the sentence is a dative, but is translated *by* (not *to*) *these*; the dative is thus used to express agency only with the gerundive. How is agency usually expressed with passive verbs? Cf. 18. (c) The gerundives, together with **erat** and **hīs**, may be translated *these had to leap down, stand and fight*; literally *it had to be leaped down, etc., by these*.

2. *illī*: (a) a pronoun met here for the first time; see 193 and 428. (b) It refers to what is distant in time, place, or thought, in contrast to what is near, and is contrasted with *hic*; thus in this sentence the first word *his* refers to the Romans, *illī* to the enemies of the Romans.

3. *nōtissimis locis*: for use, cf. 187, 10.

4. *conicerent*: what mode and tense? It follows the conjunction *cum*, *when*, *while*; translate like an imperfect indicative, *while they were throwing*.

5. *imperīti*: limited by the adverb *omnīnō* and with the genitive *generis* dependent upon it, *entirely unacquainted with this kind of fighting*.

6. *cōsuērant*: (a) what force has the perfect of this verb? Cf. 81. What, then, is the force of the pluperfect? (b) What complementary infinitive completes the meaning of the verb here and what case is used after that infinitive? Cf. 77, *e*, and 107, 7.

7. *nitēbantur*: (a) limited by the preceding ablatives *eādem alacritāte ac studiō*, *they did not strive with the same eagerness and zeal*; note that the ablative here tells how the action of the verb was performed. Such a use is called the ABLATIVE OF MANNER. (b) Note that the ablative is here limited by an adjective *eādem*; where no adjective (nor equivalent genitive) limits the ablative of manner it requires as a rule the preposition *cum*.

8. REVIEW OF THE USES OF THE ABLATIVE:—

(a) With prepositions, 12, 16.

(b) Of Means, 18.

(c) Of Agent, 18.

(d) Absolute, 42.

(e) With *ūtī*, 107, 7.

(f) Of Time, 119, 3.

(g) Of Separation, 187, 5.

(h) Of Manner, 192, 7.

193.

VOCABULARY

membrum, an arm or a leg, limb.

alacritās (alacer, eager), liveliness, eagerness.

āridus, dry; in the neut. as a noun, dry land; cf. *altum*, 187, 9.

Insuēfactus (in + *suēscere* + *facere*), made accustomed to, trained.

pedester, masc., *pedestris*, fem., *pedestre*, neut.; the masc. is

like the fem. except in nom. sing., <i>on foot, on land, infantry</i> ; with this adj., cf. the nouns pēs and pedes .	<i>stand, take a stand, halt</i> ; to consist in, depend upon.
ille, illa, illud , 428, and 192, 2, pron. and adj., <i>he, she, it, that, yonder, that well-known, famous</i> ; in passing to a new sentence, ille often indicates a change of subject.	nīti, nīxus, or nīsus , to <i>press upon, lean upon, strive, struggle</i> .
conicere , ¹ -iēcit, -iectus (con and iacere , to throw), to <i>throw together, throw with energy, hurl</i> ; to <i>put together in thought, conclude, conjecture</i> .	dēsiliire, -siluit, -sultus , to <i>leap down</i> .
cōnsistere, -stitit, -stitus , to	cum , conj., <i>when, after, while, because, since, although</i> .
	omnīnō , adv. (omnis), <i>altogether, wholly, at all</i> .
	paulum , adv., <i>a little, somewhat</i> : cf. paulō , which is in Caesar used only with comparatives.
	simul , adv., <i>at the same time, together, at once</i> .

194.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. In the third watch they reached the dry land. 2. Having learned the reason, they weighed anchor. 3. Together with the charioteer he leaped down. 4. He was freed by Cotta. 5. He was kept from the gate by the slings. 6. Their limbs were hindered by the character of their arms. 7. They used neither the chariot nor the skiff. 8. He will set sail either from Britain or from Gaul. 9. They hasten from the forest with great eagerness. 10. While he is standing in the water, the cavalry come. 11. The forces were struggling among the waves. 12. The difficulty of standing was very great. 13. For the enemy hurled darts and also arrows. 14. Therefore help had to be sent by Caesar. 15. The plunder must be carried back by that (man). 16. He urged them to press upon the enemy especially (**māximē**) near the open flank. 17. Where must he take his stand² in order to keep out the *essedarii*?

¹ Pronounced as if written **conficere**, the first **i** being a consonant pronounced like *v*.

² Cf. **hīs cōnsistendum erat**.

195.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Although this burden was heavier than that, yet the trained horse carried it to the skiff. 2. Before they reached (indicative) the island at the fourth hour, Caesar told the troop of cavalry that the coast must be seized by the horsemen. 3. If they shall wage war more boldly, the enemy will be conquered. 4. Messengers must be sent in order to learn the opinion of that man. 5. Because their hands were hindered they were not able to resist (**sustinēre**) the Britons with the same bravery which they had shown in battles on-land. 6. Those horsemen are trained, but these are wholly untrained, and will be frightened unless the leader shall be able to encourage them. 7. At the same time, however, they dared to advance a little from the dry land and so threw their weapons that the ranks of the Romans were disturbed.

 LESSON XXXIV

 TWO DATIVES — TO WHOM AND FOR WHICH. REVIEW OF
THE DATIVE.

196. Quod ubi Caesar **animadvertit**, nāvīs longās, quārum et **speciēs** erat barbarīs **inūsitātior** et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum **removērī** ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitutī, atque inde fundis, sagittīs, **tormentīs** hostēs **prōpellī** ac **submovērī** iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. **Nam** et nāvium **figūrā** et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum **permōtī** barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum **etiam** pedem **retulērunt**.

197. 1. **quod**: the antecedent is the state of things described in the last lesson. For position and translation, cf. 167, 1.

2. **inūsitātior**, *more strange*, i.e. than that of the transports.

3. *ad ūsum expeditior, easier in use.*
4. *removērī*: the subject is *nāvis*, above.
5. *ad latus apertum, toward or opposite the exposed flank.*
6. *ūsui*: (a) cf. *eī ūsui fuit*, 95, 4. (b) Note that with the verb in both instances two datives are used, one of the person to whom (*eī*, *to him*; *nostris*, *to our men*), and one of the thing for which (*ūsui*, *for use*, *freely of use*). (c) The dative of the thing in such cases often clearly expresses purpose, e.g. *praesidiō obsidibus cohortem reliquit*, *he left a cohort for a guard to the hostages*, better *to guard the hostages*. (d) Sometimes the dative *to whom* is omitted. (e) In this connection review previous uses of the dative: —

1. Dative with verbs of Giving and Saying, 8, a.
2. Dative with adjectives, 48.
3. Dative of Apparent Agent, 192, 1, b.

198.

VOCABULARY

figūra, *shape, figure*.

tormentum (*torquēre*, *to twist*),
a hurling engine, a twisted cord,
a rack; anguish, torment.

speciēs, 5th decl. (cf. *per-spicere*),
sight, appearance, pretense.

inūsitātus (*ūtī*), *unusual, strange.*

permovēre, *-mōvit*, *-mōtus*, *to*
move deeply, arouse, excite.

removēre, *-mōvit*, *-mōtus*, *to*
move back, remove.

submovēre, *-mōvit*, *-mōtus*, *to*
put out of the way, drive off.

animadvertere (*animum + ad +*
vertere) *-vertit*, *-versus*, *to*
turn the mind to, attend to, notice;
in eum animadvertere, to pun-
ish him.

prōpellere, *-pulit*, *-pulsus*, *to*
drive forward, drive away.

referre, *rettulit*, *relātus*, *to bear*
back, report, announce; pedem

referre, to retreat; cf. ferre, 120.

nam, conj. in principal clauses, *for.*

certē, adv., *surely, certainly.*

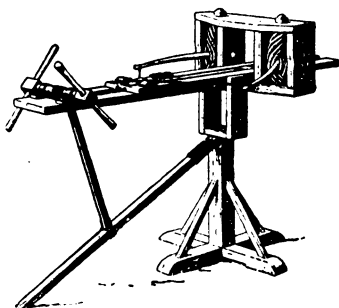
etiam, adv., *also, even.*

199.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. It is certainly of great use to dislodge the enemy.
2. The hurling engines must be removed by the Atrebatians.
3. He promised an unusual opportunity (*facultās*) to the cohort.

4. They report to Caesar that those men retreated. 5. They also noticed that his limbs were a little larger. 6. They had been disturbed by the strangeness of the shape of the ship. 7. This fleet was near the beach. 8. The appearance of the sea was well known to those people. 9. For in the former summer they dared to remain in that region. 10. That multitude must be driven away by these horsemen. 11. They struggled in land battles with the greatest eagerness. 12. They hurled this kind of weapons with the greatest zeal. 13. The trained horses stand in the waves without difficulty. 14. They will leap to the dry land at the same time. 15. No one is wholly useless to the commander. 16. They have many strange kinds of hurling engines. 17. Because of his influence they will not dare to punish him.



TORMENTUM

200.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. While (**cum**) they were keeping (imperfect subjunctive) the Romans from the dry land, Caesar advised the quaestor to hold the mountain. 2. He thinks it is a great disgrace to be frightened and driven away by two thousand soldiers. 3. Because they were aroused by the size of his army, the merchants in the winter furnished the ropes and all the equipment which they had promised. 4. He orders the nation which is surrounded by the sea to send ships to the side which slopes toward the north. 5. After reaching the hill he learned that these ships had withstood the storm. 6. When the height of the hill was ascertained, they halted in accordance with (**ob**) their custom, and remained there until the fourth hour of the day.

LESSON XXXV

THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. THE ENDING -ō IN THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

201. Atque nostris militibus **cunctantibus**, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui **decimae** legionis aquilam ferēbat **obtestatus** deus ut ea res legioni **feliciter** eveniret, "Desilite," **inquit**, "**commilitonēs**, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus **prōdere**; **ego** certe **meum** rei **pūblīcae** atque imperatoris **officiū** **praestiterō**."

202. 1. **cunctantibus**: (a) a present participle from nominative **cunctāns**; for declension, see 60, 4. (b) Note that, though **cunctārī** is a deponent verb, it has a present participle which is active both in form and meaning: so with all deponents. (c) Forms with **militibus** an ablative absolute; *our soldiers delaying, while our soldiers were holding back.*

2. **maximē**: (a) for irregular comparison, see 424, 5. (b) It here means *especially*, as often, and limits the prepositional phrase which immediately follows.

3. **qui**: the antecedent **is** is omitted, as often in Latin; this antecedent is the subject of a verb which follows, and is limited by a participle.

4. **legioni feliciter eveniret**, *that it might turn out auspiciously for the legion.*

5. **desilite**: an imperative plural, *leap down.*

6. **inquit**: the subject is the omitted antecedent of **qui**; see N. 3.

7. **commilitonēs**: the case of the person addressed, called nominative independent or vocative; here, as in most nouns, its form is the same as that of the nominative.

8. **vultis**: 2d person plural present indicative, *you wish*; for the verb, cf. **volēbat**, 146.

9. **ego**: (a) *I*, the nominative singular of the pronoun of the first person. (b) The accusative singular is **mē**.

10. **praestiterō**: (a) *I will have discharged*; a future perfect indicative 1st person singular; its subject is **ego**. (b) The future perfect may here be translated into our English idiom by the future, thus, *I will discharge*. (c) Note carefully the personal ending **-ō** of the 1st person singular active; the same personal ending is used in the present indicative active, thus:—

vocō, *I call, I am calling.* **dūcō**, *I lead, I am leading.*
moneō, *I advise, I am advising.* **audiō**, *I hear, I am hearing.*

Compare the above forms with the present infinitive active, and note how the 1st person singular of the present indicative is formed from the present infinitive active in each conjugation.

203. THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

First Conjugation

vocā-ns, *calling.*

Third Conjugation

dūcē-ns, *leading.*

Second Conjugation

monē-ns, *advising.*

Fourth Conjugation

audi-ē-ns, *hearing.*

1. How is the present active participle formed from the present stem in each conjugation? (Note a peculiarity in the 4th conjugation.)

2. For declension, cf. N. 1 and 423. Note that the masculine and feminine are alike and that the neuter differs from these only in the accusative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

3. In using the present participle, note that it is always in Latin precisely used of an act going on at the time of the main verb; thus, in this lesson, the soldiers were hesitating at the precise time when the standard bearer addressed them. In English, on the other hand, in such a sentence as, "Hobbling to the door, he found it locked," the present participle refers to an act which occurred BEFORE the time of the main verb; thus, the man, of course, hobbled to the door before he found it locked.

204.

VOCABULARY

deus (the plur. cases are often contracted, thus nom. **dī**, gen. **deum**, dat. and abl. **dīs**), a god.

officium, a service, kindly service, obligation, duty.

com-militō, -**ōnis**, fellow-soldier; note force of prefix **com-**.

decimus, tenth.

meus, my; cf. **ego** and acc. **mē**.

pūblicus (**populus**), of the people, public; **rēs pūblica**, common-wealth, republic.

ego, I; accus. **mē**, me.

cunctārī, to delay, hesitate.

obtestārī (**testis**, a witness), to call as a witness, appeal to, entreat.

praestāre, -**stitit**, -**stitus**, to stand before, excel (with dat.); **praestat**, it is better; also transitively, as in this lesson, to fulfil, discharge, show, furnish.

inquit, says he; found commonly only in the pres. and fut. ind., and always after one or more words of a direct quotation.

prōdere, **prōdidit**, **prōditus**, to put forth, transmit, disclose, betray.

ēvenīre, -**vēnit**, -**ventus**, to come out, turn out, happen; cf. **accidere**.

fēlīciter, adv. (**fēlīx**, fortunate), fortunately, auspiciously.

205.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. I also notice the shape of the hurling engine. 2. He besought the gods to drive away the king. 3. When their fright is dispelled (ablative absolute), they will contend with that leader. 4. "The tenth legion will not hesitate," says he. 5. They take their stand to discharge their duty. 6. Under (**per**) pretense of danger they retreated. 7. They declare that this thing turned out fortunately. 8. It is better to drive away the foot-soldiers. 9. I, myself (simply **ego**), certainly am not betraying my district. 10. They saw our men delaying near the quaestor. 11. He displayed unusual valor at that time. 12. For he deeply moved those-standing (present participle) in the sea. 13. He begs his fellow-soldiers to join battle. 14. Let them be a terror (for a terror) to the enemy. 15. This happened to the king because of the storm. 16. I excel those-who-have-been-driven-away (participle). 17. He entreats them to follow me.

206.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The man who carried the standard leaped down with his burden and hastened toward those-struggling with the enemy. 2. Having collected a part of the hostages, they began to go aboard the ship which had reached the harbor. 3. He has learned that the leader brought up the tenth legion on time. 4. This occupation was so trifling that the leader determined to leave it. 5. If they were much troubled by the confusion of the ranks, the leader sent up the foot-soldiers which had come from the north. 6. Having been overthrown in battle they established peace in order that many soldiers might be added (*accēdere*) to the army. 7. In a loud (great) voice (192, 7) he orders those who are wont to fight, to hurl weapons at those-advancing.



EAGLE BEARER

LESSON XXXVI

THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. USE OF **Cum**, *When*, *After*, *While*.

207. *Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcīt atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.*

208. 1. **hōc**: what three cases possible for this form? Wait for the following words to help you decide which it is.

2. **dīx-isse-t**: (a) a past perfect or pluperfect subjunctive; cf. its form with that of the pluperfect indicative. (b) It follows

cum, which is here a conjunction, not a preposition, *when he has said*. (c) What now appears to be the case of **hōc**? Compare N. 1. (d) For the ablative **vōce māgnā**, cf. 192, 7.

3. **cohortātī inter sē**, *having urged among themselves, urging each other*.

4. **nē . . . admitterētur**: (a) may be freely translated by an active, *not to permit so great a disgrace*. (b) The exact words which the soldiers used were **nē . . . admittātur**, *let it not be permitted*; cf. 131, 2. The past tense is used when the clause becomes the object of the past tense **cohortātī**. (c) Clauses of will, both independent and substantive, when negative, are introduced by **nē**, not **nōn**.

5. **cōspēxissent**: (a) **hōs** the first word of the clause is the object of this verb. (b) It is a pluperfect subjunctive; cf. N. 2 above and 209 below. (c) Here, as in **dixisset** above, it follows the conjunction **cum**; cf. **cum . . . conicerent**, 192, 4, where **cum** is followed by the imperfect subjunctive. Note that in both instances these subjunctives are translated like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. In Caesar **cum**, *when, while*, followed by the imperfect or pluperfect tenses takes the subjunctive.

6. **subsecūtī**: a perfect participle from the deponent verb **subsequī**, *to follow close, to follow as aid*; those who follow are the soldiers from the nearest ships.

7. **appropinquāvērunt**: its indirect object is the preceding **hostibus**; *they drew near to the enemy*.

209.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

	<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>
<i>Act.</i>	vocāv-isse-t	dūx-isse-t
<i>Pass.</i>	vocātus esset	ductus esset
	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
<i>Act.</i>	monu-isse-t	audīv-isse-t
<i>Pass.</i>	monitus esset	audītus esset

1. The plurals may be readily formed with the regular plural personal endings and participles.

2. What is the tense sign of the pluperfect subjunctive active? How may this tense be formed from the perfect infinitive active?

3. Note that the pluperfect subjunctive passive is exactly like the pluperfect indicative passive, except that the imperfect subjunctive *esset* is used in forming it instead of the imperfect indicative *erat*.

210.

VOCABULARY

prope, adv., and prep. with accus., *near*; comp. **propius**, sup. **proximē**.

propior, comp. adj., *nearer*; for decl., see 423; positive wanting, sup. **proximus**.

tantus, *so great, so large, such*; cf. **tantulus** and **quantus**.

ūniversus, *all together, all in one, in a body, en masse*.

appropinquāre (**propinquus**), *to draw near, approach*; cf. **adire** and **attingere**.

cohortārī, *to urge, encourage*; stronger form than **hortārī**.

iacere, **iēcit**, **iactus**, *to throw*.

dēicere or **dēicere**, **iēcit**, **iectus**, *throw down, drive out, destroy*.

prōicere, **iēcit**, **iectus**, *to throw forward, throw forth, throw away*.

subicere, **iēcit**, **iectus**, *to throw under, place under, make subject, expose, subject*. Cf. also **conicere**, 193, and make a list of English words derived from **iacere** and the above compounds.

item, adv., *also*; cf. **idem** and **idem**.

nē, adv. and conj.; as adv. *no, not*, used with a subjunctive of will or wish; as a conj. used to introduce a negative purpose clause, *so that not, lest*.

tum, adv., *then, at that time*.

211.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. While Caius was approaching the garrison, the Britons threw darts. 2. When he had cast himself forward, the rest did not hesitate. 3. The horse is near the standard. 4. The chain is nearer than (**quam**) the hurling engine. 5. Commius is nearest to the arms. 6. With unusual zeal he exposed himself to the arrows. 7. "Let them not betray the people," said he. 8. I myself am

discharging my duty to the legate. 9. Then he urged them to distribute grain. 10. The battle turned out fortunately for the prefect. 11. The war was broken off (*intermittere*) by the Morinians. 12. All together they cast themselves down from the horses. 13. He will beg the gods also to defend him (to be for a guard to himself). 14. His fellow-soldiers of the tenth legion were not wanting (*dēficere*) to the republic. 15. The messenger while disembarking is hindered. 16. He sees the wind driving on the ships.

212.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He called the *essedarii* in such-a-loud (so great a) voice that they all drew near. 2. In the fifth year those who live in this canton will send aid to free the Gauls. 3. He said that he had striven hard (greatly) to obtain oars and equipment. 4. The plans of Volusenus were told (shown) to the legate who held supreme power. 5. After the long baggage train (75) had been destroyed, they brought a large number of horses into public places. 6. The limbs and the back of the hostage, who he said had been led away, were very large. 7. When they had done this and were waging war, they learned that the nearest garrisons were in the greatest danger.



LESSON XXXVII

VERBS IN -*īō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Pūgnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter cōsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore*

aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs **adoriēbantur** et aliī ab latere apertō **in** ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

214. 1. **pūgnātum est** : neuter gender, *it was fought*, better, *there was fighting*.

2. **ācritēr** : what does this adverb limit? Is its position with reference to that word the usual one? It may here be freely translated by an adjective, *there was sharp fighting*.

3. **ōrdinēs servāre**, *to keep their ranks*, i.e. *move forward in order*.

4. **alius aliā ex nāvī** : literally *another from another ship*; but our English idiom requires the expanded expression, *one from one ship, another from another*.

5. **aggregābat** : (a) follows the conjunction **quod** like **poterant**. (b) Notice that the indirect object of this verb **eīs signīs** must be supplied in thought, and that this indirect object is the antecedent of **quibuscumque signīs** in the relative clause just before, *he kept attaching himself to those standards to which standards he ran up*, more freely and idiomatically, *he kept attaching himself to whatever standards he fell in with*. (c) The thought of the whole sentence is that the hasty, haphazard arrangement of the soldiers made the fight less steady and enthusiastic, and created confusion.



SIGNUM

6. **nōtis vadīs** : for construction, cf. 173, 7.

7. **ēgredientīs** : (a) note that this present participle is of the 4th conjugation, although the present infinitive and perfect participle are of the 3d; see General Vocabulary. (b) Refers to the same time as the verb **cōspēxerant**, i.e. they saw the Romans in the very act of disembarking; cf. 203.

8. **impeđitōs**, *taken at a disadvantage*, because alone (**singulārīs**), or clinging with both hands to the ship, or standing deep in the water on an uneven bottom.

9. **ūniversōs** : contrasted with **singulārīs**, above.

10. **coniciēbant**: (a) note that the infinitive (**conicere**), the perfect (**conīcīt**), and the participle (**coniectus**) are of the 3d conjugation, while this form is of the 4th; cf. **ēgredientis**, N. 7, and **faciat**, 113, 3, **facient**, 139, 7, from the 3d conjugation verb **facere**. (b) The 1st person singular, present indicative, active voice, of such verbs ends in **-iō**, thus, **coniciō**, **faciō**. (c) There is an important class of verbs called verbs in **-iō** of the 3d conjugation; all the forms based on the perfect and participial stems are of the 3d conjugation; of the forms based on the present stem some are of the 4th conjugation; these 4th conjugation forms must be carefully learned from the paradigm in 436. (d) Of these verbs in **-iō** of the 3d conjugation we have had the following: **capiō** and its compound **recipiō**; **faciō** and its compound **dēficiō**; **effugiō**; **iaciō** and its compounds **coniciō**, **dēiciō**, **prōiciō**, and **subiciō**; **cōnspiciō** and **perspiciō**; **ēgredior**, *I go out*; and **prōgredior**.

215.

VOCABULARY

vadum , a shallow place, ford.	and pronominal adj., <i>whoever</i> .
alius , alia , aliud (cf. illud), <i>another, other, different</i> ; alius . . .	<i>whatever</i> .
alius , <i>one . . . another</i> .	uterque , utroque , utrumque , pron., <i>each, either, both</i> .
aliquis , aliquid , pron., declined like quis , 108, but has aliqua instead of aliquae in neut. plur., <i>some one, any one, something, anything</i> ; ali- in this word has the same meaning as in ali-us .	singulāris , <i>one-by-one, alone; unique, exceptional, remarkable</i> .
quicumque , quaecumque , quodcumque , declined like qui , pron.	aggregāre (grex , gregis , a flock). <i>to add to a flock, to attach, join</i> .
	capiō , capere , cēpit , captus (see N. 10), <i>to take, capture</i> .
	effugiō , -fugere , -fūgit , — (see N. 10), trans. or intrans., <i>to flee away, escape from</i> .

¹ In learning the paradigm the pupil should omit every verbal form of which as yet he has had no example in the four regular conjugations; e.g. all forms of the 1st and 2d persons, except the 1st person singular of the present indicative.

occurrere , - currit , - cursus , <i>to run up, meet, fall in with, resist.</i>	ācritēr , adv., <i>sharply, vigorously, bravely.</i>
adorīrī , - ortus , <i>to rise up to, approach, attack</i> ; commonly used only in last sense.	fīrmitēr , adv., <i>firmly.</i> vērō , adv., <i>in truth, surely, in fact, but.</i>

216. ORAL EXERCISE

1. Some one will capture the ford and the passages. 2. They vigorously attacked both armies. 3. Each was running away. 4. Let them make another man leader. 5. Let them attach themselves to Caesar himself. 6. He urged them to throw darts also. 7. The same woman is running up to this (man). 8. I in truth am advancing to the entrance. 9. Other houses ought to be looked at by him. 10. Whoever drew near to the waves was cast down. 11. That man who cast himself forth into the waves was surely exceptional. 12. Who can stand firmly in such big waves? 13. The tides then (at that time) were remarkable. 14. What-sort-of arms have those-who-are-fleeing? 15. The sea is nearer than the forest.

217. WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. The hands of those who were disembarking were so hindered that the men themselves were exposed to the weapons of the enemy. 2. The grain does not fail, if they are obedient to the command (**nūtus**) of the king himself. 3. Let not those (men) attack anything except the nearest garrison. 4. They will proceed seven miles from the harbor in order to examine-closely the things of¹ which they have heard. 5. The movement of the wind is of great use to those who sail on the deep sea. 6. On the fourth day, when they were seeking the protection of the legate, many ships arrived at² the harbor. 7. When they had betaken themselves to a part of the army, they told the lieutenant that the appearance of the Roman war ships was very (**māximē**) unique.

¹ Not the genitive.

² See 120, **pervenire**.

LESSON XXXVIII

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN **-er**. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

218. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item **speculātōria nāvigia** militibus complēri iussit et quōs **labōrantēs** cōspēxerat hīs **subsīdia** submittebat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, **suīs** omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs **impetum** fēcērunt atque eōs in **fugam** dedērunt; neque **longius** prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs **cursum** tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc unum ad **prīstinam fortūnam** Caesarī **dēfuit**.

219. 1. **quod cum**: cf. **quod ubi**, 197, 1.

2. **militibus complēri**: **militibus**, though the name of persons is here an ablative of means, not of agent; the soldiers here are not active agents, but merely the load by which the boats are filled.

3. **labōrantēs**: for force of present participle, see 214, 7.

4. **quōs . . . hīs**: the relative before its antecedent, *whom . . . to these*; so often in Latin.

5. **nostri**: (a) the nominative singular is **noster, nostra, nostrum**; the **e** before **r** appears only in the nominative singular masculine. (b) There are also adjectives of the 3d declension which have the **e** only in nominative singular masculine; cf. **pedester, pedestris, pedestre**, 193. (c) In some adjectives, however, of both the 2d and 3d declensions, the **e** is retained in all forms, e.g. **celer, celeris, celere**. (d) There are nouns of both the 2d and 3d declensions declined like **noster** and **celer**, e.g. **ager** 220. (e) For declension of each of the above nouns and adjectives, see 414, 415, 420, 423, footnote.

6. **simul**: here means *as soon as*.

7. **suīs**: (a) ablative plural masculine of the possessive adjective **suus, sua, suum**. (b) **suus**, like the corresponding sub-

stantive **sui**, always refers to some subject in the sentence; here to **nostrī**. (c) The masculine **suīs** here means *their men*, just as **nostrī** in this sentence means *our men*; *our (men), all their (comrades) supporting them, made an attack.*

8. **eōs** in **fugam dedērunt**, *put them to flight.*

9. **longius**: (a) the comparative of the adverb **longē**; cf. **tardius**, 167, 2; it means here *very far*. (b) Study carefully the comparison of the following adverbs: —

<i>Pos.</i> long-ē	<i>Comp.</i> long-ius	<i>Superl.</i> long-issimē
“ fēlic-iter	“ fēlic-ius	“ fēlic-issimē

(c) Contrast the comparison of the adverb **longē** with that of the neuter of the corresponding adjective: —

<i>Pos.</i> long-um	<i>Comp.</i> long-ius	<i>Superl.</i> long-issimum
----------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------------

In which degree do the adverb and adjective agree in form? In which do they disagree? (d) Study the comparison of adjectives in 119, 2.

10. **capere**: here, *reach*.

11. **ad pristinam fortunam**, *to complete his former good fortune*; **ad** has often in it the idea of purpose.

220.

VOCABULARY

fortūna , <i>luck, fortune, good or bad; possessions.</i>	prīstinus , <i>former, early, pristine.</i>
fuga , <i>flight.</i>	speculātōrius , adj. (cf. cōnspicere), <i>of spies, observation.</i>
ager, agrī , masc., <i>a field, farm, territory, open country.</i>	suus , reflexive adj., <i>his, her, its, or their</i> ; cf. 124 and N. 7 above.
nāvigium , <i>a vessel, ship.</i>	labōrāre , <i>to labor, toil, struggle, be hard pressed.</i>
subsidiū , <i>troops in reserve, auxiliaries, support, help.</i>	cōnsequī, -secūtus , <i>to pursue, overtake, attain, obtain.</i>
cursus, -ūs (currere , <i>to run</i> ; cf. oc-currere), <i>a running, course, voyage, journey.</i>	deesse, defuit , <i>to be wanting, fail, be at fault</i> ; cf. dēficere .
impetus, -ūs (petere), <i>an attack, impulse, violence, force.</i>	longē , adv., <i>far, by far.</i>

221.

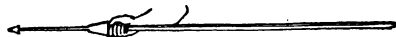
ORAL EXERCISE

1. Aid was sent up to the swift spy boat. 2. By running (160, c) they will overtake others at the ford. 3. Our leader will not be wanting to his men in the infantry battle. 4. They are toiling hard (greatly) that they may obtain the farm. 5. Some one will make an attack behind their back. 6. They were betaking themselves in flight to the sea. 7. Let not fortune abandon the matchless general. 8. Both escaped when the garrison had been captured. 9. Whoever shall meet him (dative), will attach himself to the army. 10. Our men surely are more firmly sustaining the attack. 11. While they were coming, he advanced very slowly. 12. These men are very closely hemmed in by mountains. 13. Let them seek help a little more boldly. 14. He most courteously attended (*prōsequi*) the Gaul to the gate. 15. The boats were drawn up as a rule on the beach. 16. The ship is exposed to the severe tempest. 17. These places slope toward the north more (188) than those.

222.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. When they were sharply attacking the neighboring barbarians, the tenth legion was led out to drive away the Morinians. 2. The soldiers who had been sent back about two miles said that the enemy were so hard pressed that they were departing from the battle. 3. He followed the very tall leader into danger more recklessly after the eagle had been betrayed to the enemy. 4. They will set sail and return to that place, so that they may use very seasonably (*opportūnē*) all things which they have found there. 5. If they shall cast weapons at our men while advancing, they will find that the attack of the Romans must be avoided as far as possible.



TĒLUM

LESSON XXXIX

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE. GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION. REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES.

223. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, **statim** ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; sē obsidēs datūrōs factūrōsque esse **mandāta** pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem **suprā** dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam esse praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs **ōrātōris modō** Caesaris mandāta **dēferret, comprehenderant** atque in vincula coniēcērant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce ēius rei **culpam** in multitudinem **contulērunt** et propter **imprudentiam** ut **ignōscerētur** petīvērunt.

Of the seventy-five word forms in the above text only eleven (or about one in seven) are those of new words; and of these eleven, five are akin in derivation to words already learned. It ought to encourage the learner to see how profitable in reading new Latin the labor of learning words is to him.

224. 1. **simul atque**, *at the same time as, as soon as.*

2. **sē recēpērunt**, *they recovered themselves.*

3. **datūrōs . . . factūrōs**: (a) future active participles of **dare** and **facere**, meaning *about to give . . . about to do*. (b) The verb **esse** is used with each of these participles, forming the future active infinitive. (c) The participles limit the accusative plural masculine **sē**, which is the subject of the infinitive **esse**. (d) The future infinitive is here used after the verb of saying **pollicitī sunt**, *they promised that they were about to do*, better, *that they would do*; for the direct form, *we will do*. (e) Note that the Latin uses the accusative with the future infinitive, where the English would use simply the present infinitive, *they promised to do*.

4. **dēmōnstrāveram**: (a) a 1st person singular; note the personal ending **-m** and cf. 202, 10. This personal ending is also used in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, thus, **dēmōnstrābam**, *I was showing*, **dēmōnstrārem**. (b) Our English idiom would have the simple past here, *I showed*. (c) For the fact referred to, see 125 and 132.

5. **praemissum esse**: the subject of the perfect passive infinitive is **quem**, which must be translated by a nominative, *who I showed had been sent ahead*; this is because the English uses after a verb of saying an indicative with subject nominative; the Latin an infinitive with subject accusative.

6. **hunc illi**: note this excellent illustration of the use of these pronouns; cf. 192, 2; 193.

7. **dēferret**: (a) for use, cf. 208, 5. (b) Irregular; the regular form would be **dēferreret**. (c) For **modō**, just before, see 192, 7.

8. **in petendā pāce**: (a) **petendā** is a gerundive; cf. 160. (b) It agrees with **pāce**, and the literal meaning is *in peace to be sought*, but it is freely translated as if it were a gerund with a direct object, viz. *in seeking peace*. (c) Such a construction is called the gerundive construction; in Caesar it is nearly always used instead of the gerund with a direct object. (d) Such a construction often expresses purpose in expressions like these: —

Ad petendam pācem venit.

*He comes for seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

Pācis petendae causā venit.

*He comes for the sake of seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

225. The participles and infinitives have now all been learned from the text except the rare and difficult future passive infinitive. Learn them all except the future passive infinitive; see 432–436. How many active participles? How many passive? Which participles are based on the present stem? How many the future active

be distinguished from the perfect passive? In what respect is the perfect passive infinitive like the future active? In what different? How does the present passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation differ from that of the other conjugations?

226.

VOCABULARY

culpa, fault, blame.

imprudentia, want of foresight, imprudence, ignorance.

mandātum (**mandāre**), a thing intrusted, commission, command.

modus, measure, manner, mode, fashion; cf. French *à la mode*.

orātor (**orāre**, to beg), a speaker, orator, ambassador.

comprehendere, -**prehendit**, -**prehensus**, to take hold of, grasp, seize, arrest.

ignōscere, **ignōvit**, **ignōtus**, to grant pardon, pardon.

cōnferre, -**tulit**, -**lātus**, to bring together, collect, compare; to devote, apply, ascribe; **sē cōnferre**, to betake oneself.

dēferre, -**tulit**, -**lātus**, to bring away, grant, confer; to give an account of, report; cf. **perferre** and **referre**.

statim, adv., on the spot, straightway, immediately.

suprā, adv., above, before, formerly.

227.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He says they will certainly betake themselves thither. 2. The field is dry and smooth. 3. The speaker declares that Caesar will overtake the spy boats. 4. He has heard that the commands were reported. 5. In this fashion (ablative of manner) they were collecting auxiliaries. 6. The multitude, on account of its imprudence, recklessly made an attack. 7. It will be at once pardoned, if they shall apologize (excuse themselves). 8. They have retreated in the meantime farther than they then advanced. 9. Almost all the voyage was disagreeable (**gravis**). 10. Caesar, after hindering their flight, attacked the baggage train. 11. His former fortune will not be wanting. 12. About seven ships being collected, they went to the island. 13. He heard there that light-armed soldiers would come from all sides. 14. I had also said that they would not find grain. 15. Whence do you wish to

summon cavalry? 16. The report being spread abroad, I was hastening hither. 17. I think he is by no means faithful in bringing grain. 18. The grain ought to be brought thence. 19. He hastened in order to arrest the Gaul.¹ 20. He says he has captured eight garrisons in all (*omnīnō*). 21. Besides, the time is not suitable for making ships. 22. They promised to come (N. 3, c).

228.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Although they seized Commius while reporting Caesar's command, yet they had not killed (*tollere*) him, but sent him back along with their own (*suus*) ambassadors. 2. As soon as they could leap down from the ship, they aided their fellow-soldiers (were for an aid to their fellow-soldiers, cf. 197, 6), and the matter turned out happily enough. 3. In order to hinder the enemy (translate in three ways) he sent his army to that place, and said he would keep them from drawing down (187, 6) their boats. 4. If only he reached the garrison opportunely, he urged them not to (208, 4) surrender (*prōdere*) themselves. 5. He first collected so great a number of soldiers that in a short time the unstable Gauls abandoned their useless military equipment and fled. 6. After advancing a little they returned in safety to the farther hill, from which many barbarians had been driven.

 LESSON XL

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. REVIEW OF THE REFLEXIVE — SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

229. Caesar *questus* quod, cum *ultrō* in *continentem* *lēgātis* missis *pācem* ab *sē* petissent, bellum sine causā *intulissent*, *sē* *īgnōscere* *imprudentiae* dixit *obsidēsque*

¹ Translate in three ways; cf. 113, 2, b, and N. 8, above.

imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem **ex longinquiōribus** locis **arcessitam** paucis diēbus sēsē **datūrōs** dixerunt. **Intereā** suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenire et sē civitātēsque suās Caesarī **commendāre** coepērunt.

230. 1. **ab sē**: (a) note the form — the same in the ablative as the accusative. (b) *from him*, **sē** here referring to **Caesar**, the subject of the principal clause, and not to the subject of **petissent**, which is in the same clause with **sē**; a reflexive which, while standing in the subordinate clause, refers to the subject of the main clause is called an INDIRECT reflexive.

2. **petissent**: (a) contracted from **petiissent**. (b) For mode and tense, cf. 208, 5.

3. **intulissent**: (a) follows the conjunction **quod**, and is therefore in a subordinate clause. Pick out all the subordinate clauses in the text of the last three Lessons. (b) The participle **questus** is an expression of *saying*; therefore the verb **tulissent** is in a subordinate clause indirectly quoted, or in a subordinate clause of Indirect Discourse. The verb of such a clause must always be in the subjunctive. (c) In what mode is the verb of the principal, declarative¹ clause of Indirect Discourse? Cf. 145.

4. **ignōscere . . . dixit**: why is the infinitive **ignōscere** used here? Its subject is **sē**.

5. **imprudentiae**: dative with **ignōscere**, *he pardoned their imprudence*; it is really an indirect object, *he grants pardon to their imprudence*.

6. **diēbus**: here the ablative expresses time within which rather than in (or at) which.

7. **datūrōs**: with this participle **esse** is to be understood. What infinitive is thus formed? The infinitive **esse** is frequently omitted with the future active participle, perfect passive participle, and the gerundive.

¹ The principal clause may, of course, be interrogative or imperative.

8. **suās**: this is an excellent lesson for the study of the reflexive pronoun and adjective; there are five instances of their use in these few lines. Study each instance in connection with 124, 219, 7, and N. 1, above.

231.

VOCABULARY

continēns (**continēre**), *bounding, neighboring; continuous, uninterrupted; of character, continent, temperate.* As noun, a *mainland, continent.*

longinquus¹ (**longus**), *far off, distant, prolonged.*

multus, *much*; in plural, *many*; in the comp. the sing. has only the neut. **plūs**, **plūris**, *more*; see 424, 3; this word is a substantive and is used like **mīlia**, thus **plūs virtūtis**, *more bravery*: plural **plūrēs** (cf. **complūrēs**, 118); sup. **plūrimus**.

pauci, -cae, -ca (plural), *few.*

commendāre (**mandāre**), *to intrust, commend, recommend.*

arcessere, -cessīvit, -cessītus (**accēdere**), *to cause to come, summon, fetch.*

querī, **questus**, *to complain.*

coōriri, **coōrtus** (cf. **ad-oriri**), *to come forth, arise, break forth.*

inferre, -tulit, -lātus, *to bring in, bring upon or against*; **Gallis** (dat.) **bellum inferre**, *to bring (or make) war upon the Gauls*; **signa inferre**, *to advance, attack*; cf. **pedem referre**, 196.

interea, adv., *meanwhile*; cf. **interim** and **praeterea**.

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

ultrō, adv. (cf. **ulterior**, 158), *beyond, besides, without compulsion, voluntarily.*

232.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. A few merchants ought to be summoned from the mainland. 2. He reported that many had recommended this man. 3. He judges that the orator will put the blame on the inexperienced multitude (223). 4. These places are very remote from the sea. 5. Very many declare that they themselves are suitable. 6. They complain that others will not intrust the arms to them. 7. How great imprudence they showed! 8. Meanwhile let them make

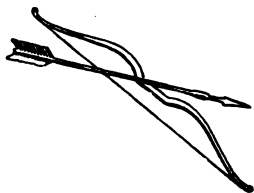
¹ Pronounce in three syllables **lon-gin-quus**, the first **u** of the last syllable being a consonant, with the sound of *w*; cf. **a-qui-la**.

war on their nearest neighbors. 9. I was saying (224, 4) above that, if they waited (N. 3), they were excused. 10. When they had been armed, they advanced. 11. They urge him not to pardon the disgrace. 12. Their way of fighting (160) is very strange. 13. He will not attach himself to our standards. 14. He was looking-for a long rope in order to fasten the spy boat. 15. It is unusual to draw near to the enemy without arms. 16. This ship is called a transport. 17. They are waiting for my (men) to draw near (167, 11). 18. They delay till the ninth day for the sake of rousing up the fourth legion.

233.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. So great a storm suddenly arose that they could not reach the island at the fifth hour. 2. Because they were not able to keep the legions from their field, they said they would voluntarily obey these commands and at once seize those who had betrayed (N. 3) the well-known Romans. 3. While (*cum*) they were betaking themselves into unknown places, they were surrounded by barbarians, who declared that the ripe grain was theirs. 4. The rest of the horses were trained so that they obeyed when-they-were-started (*incitāre*). 5. They think that Caesar will not attack the maritime states as a whole, because the time is not opportune. 6. He thought that, although he had managed nautical matters recklessly, yet Caesar would pardon him. 7. He urges him to levy hostages on the small state, from which many men ought to be called together on the fifth day.



ARCUS ET SAGITTA

LESSON XLI

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS.

234. 28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā diē quārtō **postquam** est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēviginti, dē quibūs suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex **castrīs vidērentur**, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut **nūlla** eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae **eōdem** unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad **inferiōrem** partem insulae, quae est propius **sōlis occāsum**, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, **necessariō adversā** nocte in altum **prōvectae** continentem petiērunt.

For the first time a whole chapter of the text is assigned for a lesson. This is the twenty-eighth chapter of Book IV. of the Gallic War. It contains but twelve new words.

235. 1. **est ventum**, *it was come*, better, *they came*.

2. **sustulerant**: from *tollere*, *to lift*; here, *had taken on board*.

3. **superiōre**: for meaning, cf. 120; refers to the port farther up the coast, mentioned in 158.

4. **lēnī ventō**: may be explained as an ablative of means, or manner, or as an ablative absolute.

5. **ap-propinquārent Britanniae**: (a) note that the dative **Britanniae** is used with **ap-propinquārent**, *they were drawing near to Britain*. (b) Cf. **hostibus ap-propinquāvērunt** 207, **obtemperāre imperiō** 118, **prae-stāre** 204, **oc-currere** 213, **in-ferre** 231, **his subsidia sub-mittēbat** 218, and **ante-pōnere** 236. Note that in all these instances the verb acquires such a meaning from the preposition compounded with it, that it takes a dative connected in sense with the preposition. (c) The dative thus used is an indirect object just as in other instances of its use; it is a help,

however, to note the composition and exact meaning of such verbs, especially as they are often so translated as not to require *to* or *for*, thus, **obtemperāre**, *to obey*, **appropinquāre**, *to approach*.

(*d*) The dative is thus used with many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **cum**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**.

6. **vidērentur** : why subjunctive? Cf. 208, 5.

7. **nūlla** : note gender ; it agrees with what noun understood?

8. **posset** : mode and tense, and why? Cf. 167, 9.

9. **referrentur** : (*a*) irregular imperfect subjunctive for **refererentur**. (*b*) Has the same construction as the preceding **posset**.

10. **aliae . . . aliae**, *some ships . . . other ships* ; cf. **alius** 214, 4, and 421.

11. **propius** : (*a*) for form, cf. **prope** 210. (*b*) Though compared like an adverb, it takes the accusative case after it like the preposition **prope**.

12. **māgnō suō cum periculō** : (*a*) *with their own great danger*, *ter*, *with great danger to themselves*. (*b*) Manner is here expressed by **cum** with the ablative ; what omission might have made? Cf. 192, 7, *b*. (*c*) What is the antecedent of **suō**?

10.

. . . **complērentur**, *when these (ships) after the answer were being filled by the waves*. What is the relation or conjunction?

9: (*a*) ablative absolute, *the night turned them*; better, *though night was at hand*.

means that it was better to put to sea even at the risk of being swamped in the surf

Glossary

sōlis, masc., *the sun* ; **oriēns**

oriēns, *the rising sun, east*.

cadere, -ūs (**cadere**, *to fall*), *a*

occāsus sōlis, *setting* ; **occāsus**

occāsus, *the west* ; cf. **accidere** 146.

4. **dēmōnstrāveram**: (a) a 1st person singular; note the personal ending **-m** and cf. 202, 10. This personal ending is also used in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, thus, **dēmōnstrābam**, *I was showing*, **dēmōnstrārem**. (b) Our English idiom would have the simple past here, *I showed*. (c) For the fact referred to, see 125 and 132.

5. **praemissum esse**: the subject of the perfect passive infinitive is **quem**, which must be translated by a nominative, *who I showed had been sent ahead*; this is because the English uses after a verb of saying an indicative with subject nominative; the Latin an infinitive with subject accusative.

6. **hunc illi**: note this excellent illustration of the use of these pronouns; cf. 192, 2; 193.

7. **dēferret**: (a) for use, cf. 208, 5. (b) Irregular; the regular form would be **dēferreret**. (c) For **modō**, just before, see 192, 7.

8. **in petendā pāce**: (a) **petendā** is a gerundive; cf. 160. (b) It agrees with **pāce**, and the literal meaning is *in peace to be sought*, but it is freely translated as if it were a gerund with a direct object, viz. *in seeking peace*. (c) Such a construction is called the gerundive construction; in Caesar it is nearly always used instead of the gerund with a direct object. (d) Such a construction often expresses purpose in expressions like these:—

Ad petendam pācem venit.

*He comes for seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

Pācis petendae causā venit.

*He comes for the sake of seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

225. The participles and infinitives have now all been learned from the text except the rare and difficult future passive infinitive. Learn them all except the future passive infinitive; see 432–436. How many active participles? How many passive? Which participles are based on the present stem? How may the future active

be distinguished from the perfect passive? In what respect is the perfect passive infinitive like the future active? In what different? How does the present passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation differ from that of the other conjugations?

226.

VOCABULARY

culpa, fault, blame.

imprudentia, want of foresight, imprudence, ignorance.

mandātum (**mandāre**), a thing intrusted, commission, command.

modus, measure, manner, mode, fashion; cf. French *à la mode*.

orātor (**orāre**, to beg), a speaker, orator, ambassador.

comprehendere, -prehendit, -prehensus, to take hold of, grasp, seize, arrest.

ignōscere, **ignōvit**, **ignōtus**, to grant pardon, pardon.

cōnferre, -tulit, -lātus, to bring together, collect; compare; to devote, apply, ascribe; **sē cōnferre**, to betake oneself.

dēferre, -tulit, -lātus, to bring away, grant, confer; to give an account of, report; cf. **perferre** and **referre**.

statim, adv., on the spot, straightway, immediately.

suprā, adv., above, before, formerly.

227.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He says they will certainly betake themselves thither. 2. The field is dry and smooth. 3. The speaker declares that Caesar will overtake the spy boats. 4. He has heard that the commands were reported. 5. In this fashion (ablative of manner) they were collecting auxiliaries. 6. The multitude, on account of its imprudence, recklessly made an attack. 7. It will be at once pardoned, if they shall apologize (excuse themselves). 8. They have retreated in the meantime farther than they then advanced. 9. Almost all the voyage was disagreeable (**gravis**). 10. Caesar, after hindering their flight, attacked the baggage train. 11. His former fortune will not be wanting. 12. About seven ships being collected, they went to the island. 13. He heard there that light-armed soldiers would come from all sides. 14. I had also said that they would not find grain. 15. Whence do you wish to

4. **dēmōnstrāveram**: (a) a 1st person singular; note the personal ending **-m** and cf. 202, 10. This personal ending is also used in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, thus, **dēmōnstrābam**, *I was showing*, **dēmōnstrārem**. (b) Our English idiom would have the simple past here, *I showed*. (c) For the fact referred to, see 125 and 132.

5. **praemissum esse**: the subject of the perfect passive infinitive is **quem**, which must be translated by a nominative, *who I showed had been sent ahead*; this is because the English uses after a verb of saying an indicative with subject nominative; the Latin an infinitive with subject accusative.

6. **hunc illi**: note this excellent illustration of the use of these pronouns; cf. 192, 2; 193.

7. **dēferret**: (a) for use, cf. 208, 5. (b) Irregular; the regular form would be **dēferreret**. (c) For **modō**, just before, see 192, 7.

8. **in petendā pāce**: (a) **petendā** is a gerundive; cf. 160. (b) It agrees with **pāce**, and the literal meaning is *in peace to be sought*, but it is freely translated as if it were a gerund with a direct object, viz. *in seeking peace*. (c) Such a construction is called the gerundive construction; in Caesar it is nearly always used instead of the gerund with a direct object. (d) Such a construction often expresses purpose in expressions like these: —

Ad petendam pācem venit.

*He comes for seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

Pācis petendae causā venit.

*He comes for the sake of seeking peace,
or to seek peace.*

225. The participles and infinitives have now all been learned from the text except the rare and difficult future passive infinitive. Learn them all except the future passive infinitive; see 432–436. How many active participles? How many passive? Which participles are based on the present stem? How may the future active

be distinguished from the perfect passive? In what respect is the perfect passive infinitive like the future active? In what different? How does the present passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation differ from that of the other conjugations?

226.

VOCABULARY

culpa, *fault, blame.*

imprudentia, *want of foresight, imprudence, ignorance.*

mandatum (**mandāre**), *a thing intrusted, commission, command.*

modus, *measure, manner, mode, fashion*; cf. French *à la mode*.

orator (**orāre**, *to beg*), *a speaker, orator, ambassador.*

comprehendere, **-prehendit**, **-prehensus**, *to take hold of, grasp, seize, arrest.*

ignoscere, **ignovit**, **ignotus**, *to grant pardon, pardon.*

cōferre, **-tulit**, **-lātus**, *to bring together, collect, compare; to devote, apply, ascribe; sē cōnferre, to betake oneself.*

dēferre, **-tulit**, **-lātus**, *to bring away, grant, confer; to give an account of, report*; cf. **perferre** and **referre**.

statim, *adv., on the spot, straightway, immediately.*

suprā, *adv., above, before, formerly.*

227.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He says they will certainly betake themselves thither. 2. The field is dry and smooth. 3. The speaker declares that Caesar will overtake the spy boats. 4. He has heard that the commands were reported. 5. In this fashion (ablative of manner) they were collecting auxiliaries. 6. The multitude, on account of its imprudence, recklessly made an attack. 7. It will be at once pardoned, if they shall apologize (excuse themselves). 8. They have retreated in the meantime farther than they then advanced. 9. Almost all the voyage was disagreeable (**gravis**). 10. Caesar, after hindering their flight, attacked the baggage train. 11. His former fortune will not be wanting. 12. About seven ships being collected, they went to the island. 13. He heard there that light-armed soldiers would come from all sides. 14. I had also said that they would not find grain. 15. Whence do you wish to

243.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He saw that the anchors ought to be raised as soon as the forces had arrived at the forest. 2. For the sake of collecting a good troop (of cavalry), they set out from the seacoast in the first watch. 3. The form of the eagle which was struck by the short arrow was very remarkable. 4. He knows that the forest which is before the sea has been seized by the enemy. 5. He says that all except Cotta will, at the fifth hour, come out of the gate which is opposite the highest hill. 6. They returned with the foot-soldiers in order to complain about the imprudence of the multitude. 7. Because of the fault of the leader, the army was left near the garrison of the enemy.



LESSON XLIII

NINE ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN **-ius**. IMPERSONAL VERBS.
 REVIEW OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

244. Complūribus nāvibus **frāctīs** reliquae cum essent (fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentis **āmissīs**) ad nāvīgandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod **necesse** erat accidere) **tōtīus** exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī poterant, et omnia deērant quae ad **reficiendās** nāvis erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus **cōnstābat** hiemārī in Galliā **oportēre**, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem **prōvīsum** nōn erat.

245. 1. **essent** : the subject is the preceding **reliquae**; how do you explain the gender of this word?

2. **id** : it refers to the whole clause **perturbātiō . . . facta est**.

3. **accidere** : its subject is **quod**, and **quod accidere** together is the subject of **erat**; *that which to happen was necessary, the occurrence of which was unavoidable.*

4. **tōtius** : (a) a genitive singular, the same for all genders, from the nominatives **tōt-us**, -a, -um. (b) The dative singular is **tōti** for all genders. (c) Compare the genitive and dative singular of **qui**, **is**, **hic**, **ille**, **ipse**, and of the adjectives **alius** 213, **alter** 247, **ūllus** 239, **nūllus** 234, **uter** (cf. **uterque** 213), and **ūnus** 172. Learn the complete list from 421. (d) Note (in 421) the peculiar neuter of **alius**, and also the use of **alterius** as its genitive.

5. **neque enim**, and *not for*; in translating, the *and* may be omitted and the negative translated in connection with the verb which follows — **erant**.

6. **ad reficiendās nāvis** : (a) compare this gerundive construction with the gerund **ad nāvigandum**, just above, and review carefully 159, 3, 6, 160, and 224, 8. What is the literal meaning of **ad reficiendās nāvis**? (b) For form **reficiendās**, cf. 214, 10.

7. **ūsui** : for use, cf. 197, 6.

8. **cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre** : (a) the subject of **cōnstābat** is **oportēre**, and that of **oportēre** is **hiemārī**; for the infinitive as subject, cf. 77, d. (b) The translation is *it was evident that it was necessary that the winter be passed in Gaul*, better, *it was clear that the winter must be passed in Gaul*. (c) **cōnstābat**, **oportēre**, and **hiemārī** are all used IMPERSONALLY; this term is explained in the next paragraph.

246. IMPERSONAL VERBS. — Study the following examples : —

1. **Pūgnātum est** (213).

A battle was fought.

There was fighting.

2. **Erat pūgnandum** (191).

Fighting was to be done.

Fighting had to be done.

3. **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna** (239).

It happened that the moon was full.

4. **Rōmānōs hiemāre in Galliā oportet**.

It is necessary that the Romans winter in Gaul.

The Romans must winter in Gaul.

In what person and number is each verb in the above sentences? Impersonal verbs are always in this person and number. In impersonal verbs in their strictest use the subject is implied in the verb itself and no other subject appears. Note that in *pūgnātum est* and *pūgnandum erat* the subject *pūgna* is suggested. Observe how this is brought out in the translations.

Sometimes an impersonal verb admits a clause as its subject (see 3), or an accusative with infinitive (see 4), or a simple infinitive, or a neuter pronoun. Some verbs are always impersonal, others only at times (*praestat* 204). Intransitive verbs are impersonal in the passive (*ventum est* 234).

247.

VOCABULARY

coniūrātiō (*coniūrāre*, to swear together), a conspiracy; for decl. and gender, cf. 54.

rebelliō (*bellum*), a renewal of war, rebellion.

alter, *altera*, *alterum* (see N. 4), one of two, the other, the second; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

tōtus (see N. 4), the whole, the whole of.

necesse (found only in the nom. or accus. sing. neut.), unavoidable, necessary.

cōnstāre, *-stitit*, *-stātūrus*, to agree, be consistent; to stand firm, to abide; to be sure, evident; to consist of, depend; to stand at, cost.

hiemāre (*hiems*), to pass the winter, winter.

oportet, *oportuit*, *oportēre*, impersonal, it is necessary, proper, right, it behooves.

prōvidēre, *-vidit*, *-vīsus*, to foresee, take precautions, provide, provide for.

āmittere, *-mīsit*, *-missus*, to let go, let slip, lose.

frangere, *frēgit*, *frāctus*, to break, break down, fracture, wreck.

reficiō, *-ficere*, *-fēcit*, *-fectus*, to make again, repair, recruit, restore, refresh.

clam, adv., and prep. with abl., secretly, without the knowledge of.

postea, adv., afterward; cf. **post** and **postquam**.

248.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. It was evident to the whole army that a conspiracy had been made. 2. It is proper to provide grain for the cavalry itself.

3. How many ships of the other fleet were shattered that night? 4. Eighty-seven ships were much shattered in the night. 5. The best ships will be repaired more quickly. 6. If the moon was full, they did not accomplish anything secretly. 7. Eighty ships must be drawn up farther from the sea. 8. A rebellion must not be made by the Britons. 9. The oars of one ship were useless for moving it back. 10. For the sake of giving aid they must stand in the ocean. 11. After they returned, eighteen cohorts sailed away (were borne forth). 12. He sees that this kind of chariot is larger and better than that.

249.**WRITTEN EXERCISE**

1. When they had set sail for Britain, Caesar had not provided very much grain, because he thought he would return before the winter approached. 2. While he is hesitating to hinder the enemy, he notices that the Britons are running up to the horsemen. 3. Although there was sharp fighting, yet few men were lost by the Romans. 4. Let them not (208, 4) run away, for either the tribune or the prefect will report it to Caesar. 5. But neither the leader nor the commander-in-chief can repair the ships, unless each shall use very many things which he will find in the nearest forest. 6. Therefore, when all the soldiers have been summoned (ablative absolute), Caesar will order them to make the equipment of their own ships themselves.

LESSON XLIV**REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXII-XLIII.****250.****REVIEW OF TEXT**

The text studied in these lessons is Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV., Chapters 24-29, somewhat simplified. Review these six chapters with great care, reading the Latin aloud and translating it into good idiomatic English. The pupil should also be able to translate the Latin

from hearing it read. Be sure you know the case of every noun, pronoun, and adjective, and the mode and tense of every verb. Be able to explain the construction of every word.

251.

GRAMMAR REVIEW

FORMS

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nouns and adjectives in -er ,
219 , 5, and 414 , 415 , 420 ,
and 423 , footnote.
2. Neuters in -us , -eris , 187 , 1,
11 , and 415 .
3. Adjectives with genitive in
-ius , 245 , 4, and 421 .
4. Declension of ille , 192 , 2, 428 .
5. Irregular comparison of ad-
jectives and adverbs, 240 ,
3 , and 424 . | 6. Comparison of adverbs,
219 , 9.
7. Verbs in -iō of the third
conjugation, 214 , 10, and
436 .
8. Present indicative 1st per-
son singular, 202 , 10, <i>c</i> .
9. Pluperfect subjunctive, 209 .
10. Present active participle, 203 .
11. Future active participle and
infinitive, 224 , 3. |
|--|--|

In connection with these additional verb forms, review those given in Review Lessons XVI. and XXXI., and cf. **432-436** inclusive.

SYNTAX

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Dative of Apparent Agent,
192 , 1, <i>b</i> .
2. Datives To Whom and For
Which, 197 , 6.
3. Dative with Compounds,
235 , 5.
4. Ablative of Separation, 187 , 5. | 5. Ablative of Manner, 192 , 7.
6. Gerundive Construction, 224 ,
8.
7. Impersonal Verbs, 246 .
8. Use of cum , when , 208 , 5.
9. Subordinate Clauses of In-
direct Discourse, 230 , 3. |
|--|--|

252.

WORD REVIEW

The following 156 words are first used in Lessons XXXII.-XLIII.:—

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

culpa 39	figūra 34	fuga 38	lūna 42
	fortūna 38	imprudentia 39	

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

ager 38	mandātum 39	nāvigium 38	subsidiū 38
castrum 41	membrum 33	Ōceanus 42	tormentum 34
deus 35	modus 39	officiū 35	vadum 37

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

alius 37	īnsuēfactus 33	paucī 40	tantus 36
alter 43	inūsitātus 34	plēnus 42	tōtus 43
āridus 33	longinquus 40	prīstinus 38	ūllus 42
bonus 42	meus 35	pūblicus 35	ūniversus 36
decimus 35	multus 40	speculātōrius 38	uterque 37
īferus 41	nūllus 41	suus 38	

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

alacritās 33	continēns 40	nox 42	rebelliō 43
commilitō 35	difficultās 32	onus 32	sōl 41
coniūratiō 43	latus 32	ōrātor 39	

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

lēnis 41	pedester 33	propior 36	singulāris 37
necesse 43			

FOURTH DECLENSION NOUNS

cursus 38	equitātus 32	impetus 38	occāsus 41
	fluctus 32	manus 32	

FIFTH DECLENSION NOUN

speciēs 34

PRONOUNS

aliquis 37	ego 35	ille 33	quicumque 37
------------	--------	---------	--------------

VERBS

First Conjugation

adflīctāre 42	cohortārī 36	cunctārī 35	liberāre 32
aggregāre 37	commendāre 40	hiemāre 43	obtestārī 35
appropinquāre 36	cōnstāre 43	labōrāre 38	praestāre 35
auxiliārī 42			

Second Conjugation

oportēre 43	prōvidēre 43	removēre 34	submovēre 34
permovēre 34			

Third Conjugation

advertere 41	conicere 33	iacere 36	prōpellere 34
āmittere 43	cōnsequī 38	ignōscere 39	prōicere 36
animadvertere 34	cōnsistere 33	inquit 35	prōvehere 41
antepōnere 41	dēicere 36	nītī 33	querī 40
arcessere 40	efficere 42	occurrere 37	reficere 43
capere 37	effugere 37	premere 32	subicere 36
comprehendere 39	frangere 43	prōdere 35	vertere 41

Fourth Conjugation

adorīrī 37	coōrīrī 40	dēsīlīrē 33	ēvenīrē 35
------------	------------	-------------	------------

Irregular

cōnferre 39	dēferre 39	īnferre 40	referre 34
deēsse 38			

CONJUNCTIONS

at 32	cum 33	nē 36	postquam 41
autem 32	nam 34	nisi 32	

PREPOSITION

prope 36

ADVERBS

ācritēr 37	fēlicitēr 35	noctū 42	suprā 39
audāctēr 32	fīrmītēr 37	omnīnō 33	tum 36
celērītēr 42	intērēā 40	paulum 33	ultrō 40
certē 34	ītem 36	postēā 43	vērō 37
clam 43	longē 38	simul 33	
eōdem 41	māgnopere 32	statim 39	
etiam 34	necessāriō 41	subitō 40	

253.

EXERCISES

These exercises illustrate all the forms and syntax learned since the last review, and use all the new words in Lessons XXXII.-XLIII. :—

1. Dixit sē eōs quī ab occāsū sōlis subsidiō (dative) arcessiti essent subitō adortūrum esse. 2. Cum Caesar imprudentiae multōrum statim ignōvisset, ācritē cohortātus est ut ūniversī culpā sē suōsque (219, 7, c) liberārent. 3. Illa nāvigia speculātōria nōn esse idōnea ad tormenta referenda certē cōstat. 4. Nē etiam cunctentur dum equitātus effugientēs commilitōnēs prope agrum longinquiōrem celeriter adoriātur. 5. Existimat impetum sibi (192, 1, b) summā alacritāte in proximōs faciendum ut uterque ōrātor māximē permoveātur. 6. Noctū pedestria auxilia clam appropinquāre alterī exercitūs laterī oportet nē (210) eōrum mōtum hostēs animadvertant. 7. Nisi fluctūs nāvigia intereā frangent, equitātus eōdem decimā hōrā prōvehētur. 8. Postquam huic manūi (band) sē feliciter aggregāvērunt, firmiter cōstitērunt et omninō incolumēs erant. 9. Eis vērō quī optimōs agrōs et tōtās fortūnās comprehendērunt audācissimē bellum inferant. 10. Rōmānīs peditibus nāvēs necessāriō reficiendae sunt ut ad continentem statim revertantur. 11. Impetui Ōceani nāvīs subicere quam in Britannīā hiemāre tum praestābat. 12. Postea membrīs expeditīs ad onus removendum (224, 8, d) nitēbantur. 13. Quicumque āridum attinget, hostīs aliōs in aliam partem (direction) prōpellet.

254.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He will run up to somebody. 2. "I prefer the night to the day," said he. 3. I myself of my own accord am providing for (in) the winter. 4. He begged the gods to help. 5. You do not wish to betray me to our enemies. 6. With my own hands also I am casting darts. 7. They committed themselves to flight. 8. Those are the trained soldiers of the republic. 9. A few ships are full of water. 10. He knows the shape of their field. 11. He has not taken any plunder however. 12. It is necessary to keep

conspiracy and rebellion out of the camp. 13. I had shown above that the difficulty in (of) standing firmly was very great. 14. Even a gentle breeze was wanting then. 15. All things will turn out happily. 16. He says the cavalry are advancing a little and will overtake other bands of the enemy.

255.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. When the voyage had been accomplished, they reported (**dēferre**) Caesar's commands to the barbarians. 2. Caesar complained because the messenger who had been of great use to himself had been cast out in this way. 3. He says that the appearance of the moon was very unusual on the night when the ships were lost. 4. He will bring together at the same time those-in-front and those who have turned toward the west. 5. So great a storm arose that some ships were cast far away on the beach farther-down and some were shattered. 6. Those struggling in the shallow places say they will do their duty even if they should be hard pressed and dislodged. 7. But with his old-time remarkable valor he leaped down ; for he saw there were no hurling engines to drive back the enemy.



LESSON XLV

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

256. 30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē **conlocūtī**, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse **intellegerent** et **paucitātem** militum ex castrōrum **exiguitāte** cōgnōscerent (quae hōc erant etiam **angustiōra** quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat) optimum esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō **commeātūque** nostrōs

prohibere et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfīdēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūratiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

257. 1. **inter sē conlocūtī**, *conferring with each other*; cf. **cohortātī inter sē** 208, 3.

2. **et**, before **paucitātem**; connects **intellegerent** with **cōgnōsacerent**, both of which follow **cum**.

3. **quae erant angustiora**: (a) *which was narrower*; **erant** must be translated by an English singular because the antecedent of its subject **quae** (*i.e.* **castrōrum**), though plural, is translated by the English singular *camp*. (b) **angustiora** from nominative singular **angustius**, *narrower*; note that the neuter comparative has long o in the genitive **angustioris**, and cf. **tempus**, **temporis**.

4. **hōc**, *on this account, because of this*; an ablative of CAUSE, explained by the **quod** clause which follows; note how it differs from the ablative of means, and that it expresses (without a preposition) the same idea expressed by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative.

5. **dūxērunt**: here *they thought*; cf. English *to draw an inference, a train of thought*.

6. **prohibere**: (a) the subject of **esse** (cf. 77, d) and limited by the neuter superlative **optimum**. (b) For preceding **frumentō commeātūque**, cf. 187, 5.

7. **rem . . . prōducere**: (a) *to protract the campaign*; note that the meaning of **rem** depends in a marked degree upon the sense of the particular passage. (b) The infinitive **prōducere** has the same construction as **prohibere**. (c) The sentence up to this point is long, but not difficult if its principal clause **principēs dūxērunt** is clearly distinguished, and the clause in parenthesis omitted in translating the first time.

8. **hīs**: to whom does this word refer? Remember that Caesar is here describing the thought of the Britons.

9. **belli inferendī causā** : (a) **causā** is an ablative of cause ; see N. 4. (b) For **belli inferendī**, cf. 224, 8. Express the meaning of the whole phrase by another Latin construction.

10. **trāns-it-ūr-um** : (a) future participle of the verb **trāns-i-re**. (b) **esse** is here to be understood (as often with participles) and a future infinitive is thus formed (224, 3). What is its subject?

11. **rūrsus** : limits the general idea of the whole sentence ; they again prepared to fight as they had done before.

258.

VOCABULARY

exiguitās (exiguus), scantiness, smallness.	conloqui , -locūtus, to talk together, converse, confer.
paucitās (pauci), fewness, a small number.	discēdere , -cessit, -cessūrus (cf. accēdere), to go apart, go away, depart.
commeātus , -ūs (commeāre , to go back and forth), a going back and forth, a trip ; provisions, supplies.	intellegere , -lēxit, -lēctus (inter and legere , to choose between), to see into, discern, understand.
reditus , -ūs (redire), a going back, return.	interclūdere , -clūsit, -clūsus (inter and claudere), to shut out or in, cut off, intercept.
trānsire , -iit, -itus, to go across, cross, pass over.	paulātim , adv. (paulum), little by little, gradually.
angustus (cf. angustē), narrow.	rūrsus , adv. (reversus from re-vertēre), back again, again, anew.
cōnfidere , -fīsus est (semi-deponent like audēre ¹), to trust, believe.	

259.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He is conferring with (**cum**) the legate about the opinion of Commius. 2. They crossed the canton to shut off the barbarians. 3. Because of their imprudence Caesar pardoned them. 4. He says the legion will cross the narrow ford. 5. The ripe grain must be brought together by some one. 6. A few by great zeal can overcome many. 7. The fewness of the Roman

¹ If you have forgotten this word, look it up in the General Vocabulary.

foot-soldiers was well known to the Britons. 8. He believes that some one will come home (126, 4). 9. They will cut off this army from the farther mountain. 10. They dared to talk about conspiracy. 11. I have plenty of supplies very near. 12. They believe they can hinder the return of the traders.

260.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. After learning about the greatness of the storm, they encouraged each other to depart from the Roman camp. 2. Although they had sought peace in great fear because of the valor of the Romans, yet when they saw the smallness of the camp they gradually stirred up a rebellion. 3. They returned anew to the fields for the sake of summoning charioteers in order to surround the Roman camp. 4. The mountains in that place skirted the shore closely, so that a few greatly hindered those disembarking from the ships. 5. Caesar understands that, if he should approach nearer the fortress of the Britons, they would attack him.



LESSON XLVI

THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

261. 31. At Caesar, etsi **nōndum** eōrum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex **ēventū** nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit **suspiciābatur**. Itaque ad omnēs **cāsūs** subsidia **comparābat**. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs **cotīdiē** in castra cōferēbat et quae **gravissimē** adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum **māteriā** atque **aere** ad reliquās reficiendās **ūtēbātur** et quae ad eās rēs erant **ūsui** ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, **duodecim** nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis **commodē** posset effēcit.

262. 1. **ex eō, quod** : (a) **eō** is explained by the **quod** clause ; *from this (fact) because, better, from the fact that.*

2. **intermiserant** : review this verb in 114 ; here with the infinitive, *had interrupted the giving of hostages.*

3. **fore** : the future infinitive of **esse**, the same as **futūrum esse** ; the subject is **id**.

4. **subaldia** : here, *safeguards.*

5. **gravissimē** : (a) superlative from the positive **graviter** ; for comparison, cf. 219, 9. (b) Note that this adverb is formed from the adjective **gravis** by changing the ending of the genitive singular to **-iter** ; so as a rule with all 3d declension adjectives, e.g. **celer**, adverb **celeriter** ; **ācer**, *sharp*, genitive **ācris**, adverb **ācritēr**. (c) Study the adjective **longus** 30, adverb **longē** 218 ; adjective **angustus** 256, adverb **angustē** 166. In these 2d declension adjectives how is the adverb formed from the adjective ? (d) Note that many adverbs are really petrified ablatives, e.g. **intereā**, **necessariō**, **noctū**, **omninō**, **paulō**, **postea**, **subitō**, **suprā**, **ultrō**, **ūnā**, **vērō**. The ablative is an adverbial case, limiting like an adverb the meaning of a verb, adjective, or adverb.

6. **quae . . . nāvēs, eārum materiā**, *what ships, etc., their timber* ; in English we more commonly say, *the timber of those ships which*, etc. The peculiarity of the Latin is that it draws the antecedent noun into the relative clause.

7. **ūtēbātur** : for the case of **materiā** and **aere**, see 107, 7.

8. **comparāri iubēbat** : the subject of **comparāri** is **ea** understood, the antecedent of the relative **quae**.

9. **administrārētur** : why subjunctive ? Cf. 208, 5.

10. **nāvigāri** : used impersonally ; cf. 246.

11. **sātis commodē** : cf. 147, 1.

12. **effecit** : (a) the object of this verb is the clause **ut . . . posset**, a substantive clause of result ; *he made it (possible) that the voyage could be accomplished by the rest (of the ships) fairly well.* (b) Note the frequent use of clauses as nouns ; cf. N. 1, above, and 133, 4. (c) In the sentence ending with this word there are four uses of the ablative. Name and explain them all.

263.

VOCABULARY

māteria, *timber, wood.*

aes, aeris, neut., *copper, bronze*; since bronze was used in coins, **money**; **aes aliēnum**, *the money of another, debt.*

suspīciō, 54 (**sub** and **specere**; cf. **perspicere**), *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspīcārī, *to suspect.*

cāsus, -ūs (**cadere**, *to fall*), *a falling, a falling out, event, occurrence, chance, mischance.*

ēventus, -ūs (**ēvenīre**), *an occurrence, fortune, fate; the outcome, consequence.*

duodecim, indecl. (**duo** and **decem**, *ten*), *twelve.*

comparāre, *to make ready, prepare; get, procure.*

commodē, adv. (**modus**, 223), *in due measure, fitly, properly, well.*

cotīdiē, adv. (**quot** and **diēs**), *daily, every day.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, violently, disagreeably* (cf. **graviter ferre**, *to take ill, take hard, be vexed*), *weightily, impressively.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*



ANCIENT CARPENTERS

264.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Let not Caesar believe that his ships are crossing. 2. The storm had arisen very unseasonably.¹ 3. They understand that twelve ships have been completely lost. 4. With this timber they will repair the rest. 5. They will use bronze to fasten the chains to the sides. 6. Because of their small-numbers (fewness) a narrow camp is sufficient. 7. They are again cutting off the charioteers from their homes. 8. He says he will depart on the fourth day. 9. When equipment has been procured, they set out.

¹ **Minimē** (241) **opportūnē**.

10. They complain every day that some do not wish (148) to obey the Romans. 11. Many things were said briefly¹ and very well. 12. They have sailed twelve miles in two hours.

265.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. This very severe misfortune in truth caused (262, 12) Caesar to form (**capere**) new plans. 2. The Britons, from the fact that twelve ships were lost, believed that the return of the Romans had been interrupted. 3. They were taking it ill that the Roman horsemen were boldly getting provisions from their very scant supply. 4. They did not yet suspect that the outcome would be favorable to the Romans. 5. In the meantime they talked together secretly about the narrowness of the Roman camp, and gradually strengthened Caesar's suspicion.



LESSON XLVII

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. SUPINE IN **-um**. REVIEW OF EXPRESSION OF PURPOSE.

266. Study the use of the genitive in the following expressions: —

1. **pars aestātis.**
part of the summer.
2. **māgnus numerus obsidum.**
a great number of hostages.
3. **septem mīlia passuum (172).**
seven thousand of paces.
seven thousand paces, seven miles.
4. **satis causae.**
enough cause, reason enough.

¹ See adjective **brevis** and 262, 5, a, b.

5. **plūs auctōritātis.***more authority* (cf. 231, under **multus**).6. **fidēlissimus nūntiōrum.***the most faithful of the messengers.*7. **aliquid novī cōnsilī**¹.*some (sort) of new plan, some new plan.*

a. Note that the genitive as used above is not a possessive genitive; cf. 8, *b*.

b. Note that the genitive in each expression names the whole, while the word on which 'it' depends names a part; for this reason a genitive of this kind is called the genitive of the whole or the partitive genitive.

c. Note that 1, 2, and 6 conform pretty closely to English idiom, *of* being used in English to express the partitive idea, but that 3, 4, 5, and 7 involve Latin idioms which must be carefully learned.

d. Note that in this construction the word on which the genitive depends may be a noun naming a part, as **pars**, **numerus**; the numeral **mīlia** (not numerals in general); words, usually adverbs, which have become substantives, as **satīs**; neuter singulars of pronouns and adjectives, as **plūs**, **aliquid**; and superlatives, as **fidēlissimus**.

267. 32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā **frūmentātum** missā, quae appellābātur **septima**, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne **interpositā**, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra **ventitāret**, īī quī prō portīs castrōrum in **statiōne** erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt **pulverem** māiōrem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō **iter** fēcisset. Caesar (id quod erat) suspicātus aliquid novī ā barbaris **initum**

¹ Accented **cōn-sī'-lī**, the accent of the uncontracted form **cōn-sī-lī-i** being retained, contrary to 3.

cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

268. 1. **ex cōnsuētūdine**, *in accordance with custom*.

2. **frūmentātum**: (a) NOT a perfect passive participle, but a supine, a verbal noun of the 4th declension, found only in the accusative singular, as here, and ablative singular **frūmentātū**. (b) The only use of the supine in **-um** is to express purpose after a verb of motion; here after the verb of motion **missā**, *being sent to get grain*. (c) Comparatively few Latin verbs have a supine; of those we have thus far learned only **frūmentārī**, **nūntiāre**, and **petere**. (d) For other and more common ways of expressing purpose, see 113, 2, 119, 5, 197, 6, 224, 8, d.

3. **hominum**: (a) *of the people*, not *the men*; refers, of course to the Britons. (b) For syntax, see 266 above.

4. **remaneret**: note that it is singular number to agree GRAMMATICALLY with **pars** which in SENSE may be taken as plural; agreement in Latin is usually strictly grammatical.

5. **quam . . . ferret**: (a) after **quam**, **ut** is to be understood and **ut . . . ferret** is to be taken as a clause of result, *than so that an every-day-matter would bring (would occasion) it*; freely, *than usual*. (b) **ferret** for **fereret**; so **ferre** for **ferere**.

6. **quam in partem**: (a) we might expect **in quam** alone; for **partem**, see 262, 6. (b) For meaning of **partem** here, cf. 253, 13.

7. **fēcisset**: for mode, cf. 230, 3.

8. **id quod erat**, *that which was (the fact)*: explained by what follows.

9. **aliquid novī . . . cōnsilī**: see 266, 7, and note the separation of **aliquid** and the partitive genitive **cōnsilī**.

10. **initum**: (a) for **initum esse**; cf. **trānsitūrum**, 257, 10. (b) What form of the verb and why used here?

11. **sēcum**: (a) for **cum sē**; with the reflexive, personal, and relative pronouns the preposition **cum** is thus appended. (b) What is the meaning of **sē** and how do you know this? Cf. 124.

12. **ex reliquis duās**: (a) *two (out of) of the rest*. (b) What are referred to as shown by the gender of **duās**? How many cohorts in a legion? Cf. 54.

13. **sēsē**: simply a form for **sē**, doubled without change of meaning.

14. **iussit**: what is the subject of this verb? What construction does it take after it? Illustrate by this sentence.

269.

VOCABULARY

iter, itineris, neut. (**ire**), *a way, route, journey, march*; **iter facere**, often means *to march*.

pulvis, pulveris, masc., *dust*.

statiō (stāre), *a standing station, sentinel's beat, anchorage, harbor*; *a sentry, sentinel*.

septimus (septem), *seventh*.

frūmentārī, *to get grain, forage*.

ventitāre (venīre), *to keep coming, resort*.

interpōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to put between, interpose, bring forward, pledge, suggest*.

excēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go out, depart*.

prōcēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go forward, advance, proceed*.

succēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to come from below, to come up or near, to come into the place of, succeed; to be successful, succeed*.

inīre, -iit, -itus, *to go into, enter, begin*; **inīre cōnsilium**, *to form a plan*.

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately*.

270.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He sent men to seek peace (translate in five ways). 2. He will lead forward two cohorts to guard (**praesidium**) the camp. 3. They came forward to announce that the enemy were forming some new plan. 4. They will be able to get more timber than copper. 5. Caesar had some suspicion after what-happened (**ēventus**) to the ships. 6. Caesar understands that they will confer together anew. 7. The Romans will be greatly disturbed by the scantiness of their equipment. 8. The narrow ship is the fleetest of the whole fleet. 9. He suspects that there has been an accident. 10. They are daily bringing forward some

reason for (of) conspiracy. 11. In what direction did the rest of the cohorts proceed? 12. They can forage well enough. 13. Some better plan will be successful.

271.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. They think there is reason enough why (**quā rē**) they should at once cut off (subjunctive) the Romans from supplies. 2. After the seventh legion had departed, very much dust was seen about two miles (ablative) from the sentry's beat. 3. While these things were being done, their return was gradually cut off and there was sharp fighting near the camp. 4. On account of the fewness of the soldiers they believed that Caesar had not yet crossed the sea to conquer the Britons (translate last clause in three ways). 5. Even after the wind had severely shattered twelve ships, a part of the people kept coming to the Roman camp.



LESSON XLVIII

ABLATIVE OF MEASURE (DEGREE) OF DIFFERENCE.

272. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque **aegrē** sustinēre et **cōnfertā** legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus **dēmessō** frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs **dēlituerant**; tum **dispersōs dēpositis** armīs in **metendō** occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs **interfectis** reliquōs **incertis** ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

273. 1. **paulō longius** : note the use of the ablative **paulō**¹ with the comparative **longius** to tell *how much farther; farther by a*

¹ Really an ablative though often called an adverb; see 262, 5, d.

little, a little farther; the ablative thus used with comparatives and words of similar meaning is called the ablative of MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE.

2. **premi**: how does this passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation differ from the same infinitive in the three other conjugations?

3. **sustinēre**: here intransitive, *holding their own*; review the word in 75.

4. **cōnfertā legiōne**: the ablative absolute here expresses cause; cf. 42, 3, c.

5. **frūmentō**: limited by what preceding adjective?

6. **occupātōs**: here more in the sense of the noun **occupātiō** and of its English derivative. Is this the usual meaning of this verb? See General Vocabulary.

7. **incertis ordinibus**: ablative absolute of cause.

8. **simul**: here, *and at the same time, and also*.

274.

VOCABULARY

cōnfertus (cōnfercīre), *pressed close together, crowded, compact*.

incertus, *not fixed, unsettled, uncertain*.

dispergere, -persit, -persus, *to scatter, disperse*.

dēponere, -posuit, -positus, *to place down, lay aside*.

dēlitiscere or **-litēscere, -lituit**, —, *to hide away, lie hid*.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcit, -fectus, *to put out of the way, kill*.

metere, messuit, messus, *to reap, mow, harvest*.

dēmetere, -messuit, -messus, *to cut down, reap*.

aegrē, adv. (**aeger**, *sick*), *painfully, with difficulty, scarcely*; for comparison, see 240, 3, d.

275.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The dust is a little higher than the standards. 2. The timber is twelve feet longer than the skiff. 3. The camp was much (**multō**) narrower than usual. 4. They are hiding so as to kill very many Romans. 5. They were so scattered that some attacked one part, others another. 6. They laid aside their arms in order to mow easily (**commodē**). 7. They have enough timber

to repair two ships. 8. The plans which they have formed are uncertain. 9. They will come eight miles to this harbor. 10. The ranks of the first cohort are very compact.

276.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. When the result of the accident had not yet been ascertained, because of his suspicion Caesar at once placed soldiers on guard at the gates of the camp. 2. He suspected that, because some ships had been severely shattered, the Britons would encourage each other to advance. 3. While he was daily preparing safeguards, the seventh legion kept coming into the fields to forage. 4. Since no reason for fear had been put forward, he was wont to march seven miles daily and to go into the fields of the Britons. 5. With difficulty they will prove to Caesar that there was reason enough for (*quā rē*) departing from his camp.

LESSON XLIX

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

277. 33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. **Prīmō** per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō ter-rōre equōrum et **strepitū rotārum** ordinēs plērumque per-turbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās **īnsinuāvērunt**, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus **proeliantur**. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita **currūs conlocant**, ut, sī illī ā multītūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs **receptum** habeant.

278. 1. **hōc**: (a) limits **genus**. (b) Is used as a predicate adjective, *is this, is as-follows*. (c) For form, see 113, 1, 6.

2. **ex essedis pūgnae**: (a) **pūgnae** is a genitive depending on **genus**. (b) **ex essedis** is an adjective phrase describing **pūgnae**.

3. **per omnis partis**, *in all directions*.

4. **ipsō**, *by the very fear, by the mere fear*; for form and use of **ipse**, cf. 102 and 428.

5. **equōrum**: the genitive in Latin designates what belongs in the widest sense to the word on which the genitive depends, and in many cases cannot be translated by the objective with *of*; here **equōrum** means *caused by the horses*; cf., for interesting uses of the genitive, 107, 6, 139, 4, 147, 3.

6. **perturbant**: the thought of the clause ending at this word is that the rush of the horses and the loud rattling of the chariots is enough to disturb the ranks through fear even before any attack is actually made.

7. **insinuāvērunt**: (a) a perfect definite, *they have wound in*. (b) Note that the perfect indicative is here used after **cum**, and cf. 208, 5. (c) How do we determine the meaning of the preceding **sē**? Cf. 124.

8. **pedibus**: an ablative of means, though translated *on foot*; cf. **quibus**, ablative of means in 244, well translated *in which*.

9. **illī**, *the soldiers* who rode in the chariots as distinguished from *the drivers, aurigae*. Note that the pronoun **ille** is often used in a sentence to change the subject just mentioned. It must frequently be translated by supplying its antecedent. For form and use of **ille**, see 192, 2, and 428.

10. **habeant**: (a) why subjunctive? Cf. 167, 9. (b) The preceding **suōs** is a substantive. What is its meaning? Cf. 219, 7. (c) The preceding present subjunctive **premuntur** should be translated like the corresponding form of the indicative; the subjunctive is used through the influence of the subjunctive in the clause **ut . . . habeant**, within which it stands.

11. This is an excellent lesson for the review of pronouns. Study the pronouns in this lesson with the comment upon them in the above notes. In addition, study the form and use of the following: **is** and **quī** 71, **idem** 153, 8, **quī** and **quis** as interrogatives, 108, **quicumque** and **aliquis** 215, **quisquam** 102, **ego** 202, 9.

279.

VOCABULARY

rota, a wheel; cf. Eng. *rotate*.

currus, -ūs (*currere*, to run), a chariot; cf. *cursus*, and the British term **essedā** (*essedum*).

receptus, -ūs (*recipere*), retreat, way of retreat.

strepitus, -ūs, a confused noise, din, rattle, clatter.

conlocāre (*locus*), to place, set, station, arrange; this word

NEVER means *to collect*, the **con** in composition meaning *firmly*, not *together*.

insinuāre (*sinus*, a curve; cf. Eng. *sinuous*), to wind in, to work one's way in, to insinuate.

proeliārī, to join battle, fight in battle, battle.

primō, adv., at first, in the first place.

280.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Some one is cutting down the grain. 2. He says that his men are foraging. 3. He says that he himself will advance with difficulty. 4. When this journey was begun (**inire**), retreat was unhindered. 5. What sort of wheels did the chariot have? 6. Who was lying concealed behind (**post**) the timber? 7. How much (**quantus**) dust do the crowded ranks raise (**tollere**)? 8. Laying aside fear, they keep coming to the same place. 9. He said he was uncertain because he had not examined anything (**quisquam** 102). 10. The danger is so great that the reserves ought to be summoned.

281.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Whoever shall attack that man while he is marching will be killed. 2. I think that I shall at once place the seventh legion on guard before the chariots. 3. Some were frightened at first by the mere clattering of the large chariots and the swift rush (**impetus**) of the horses, because they had not yet seen that strange way of fighting. 4. Caius himself will place foot-soldiers among the horsemen, so that they (**hic**) being scattered about may quickly run up to them (**ille**). 5. How many (**quot**) barbarians did yonder (**ille**) Romans kill when they had worked their way into the confused multitude?

LESSON L

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE AND THE PERFECT
SUBJUNCTIVE.

282. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>1st Conjug.</i>	vocāv-eri-t <i>he will have called</i>	vocāt-us erit <i>he will have been called</i>
<i>2d Conjug.</i>	monu-eri-t <i>he will have advised</i>	monit-us erit <i>he will have been advised</i>
<i>3d Conjug.</i>	dūx-eri-t <i>he will have led</i>	duct-us erit <i>he will have been led</i>
<i>4th Conjug.</i>	audīv-eri-t <i>he will have heard</i>	audīt-us erit <i>he will have been heard</i>

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>1st Conjug.</i>	vocāv-eri-t	vocāt-us sit
<i>2d Conjug.</i>	monu-eri-t	monit-us sit
<i>3d Conjug.</i>	dūx-eri-t	duct-us sit
<i>4th Conjug.</i>	audīv-eri-t	audīt-us sit

(a) With the two tenses above all the tenses of the verb have now been learned. What are the tenses of the indicative? Of the subjunctive? (b) What, judging from the translation given above, is the force of the future perfect indicative? How does it differ from the past perfect? (c) Note the similarity between the future perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive. What difference between the two in the active? What in the passive? (d) The plural in every case above is regularly formed, but in forming the plural of the future perfect indicative be careful about the plural of **erit**; see 165.

283. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitā-

tiōne efficiunt utī in **dēclivī** ac **praecipitī** locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī **moderārī** ac **flectere** et per **tēmōnem** **percurrere** et in **iugō** **insistere** et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

1. **praestant**: study this word in 204. Is it transitive or intransitive here? What is its most appropriate translation?

2. **incitātōs**, *roused up, at full speed.*

3. **sustinēre**, *to hold up, rein in.*

4. **brevī**: with **tempore** understood.

5. **cōsuērint**: (a) the full form would be **cōsuēverint**. (b) It is a perfect subjunctive. (c) It has the force of a present subjunctive; cf. 81. (d) Explain the use of the subjunctive here, noting the meaning of **tantum** (limiting **efficiunt**). (e) What infinitives complete the meaning of **cōsuērint**?

284.

VOCABULARY

iugum (*iungere, to join*), *that which joins, a yoke, for cattle or horses; conquered armies, in token of submission, were often sent under a yoke consisting of a spear set on two uprights; cf. Eng. subjugate; a yoke-shaped hill, a ridge.*

exercitātiō, *exercise, training.*

mōbilitās (*movēre*), *activity, mobility; changeableness, fickleness.*

stabilitās (*stāre*), *steadfastness, firmness; the opposite of mōbilitās.*

tēmō, **ōnis**, masc., *a pole or tongue of a wagon.*

cotidiānus, adj. (*cotidiē*), *daily.*

dēclivis, adj. (*clivus, a slope*), *sloping down.*

praeceps, adj., nom. same for all genders, gen. **praecipitis**, abl. sing. **praecipitī** (*prae and caput, head*), *head foremost, headlong, steep, abrupt, rapid.*

moderārī, *restrain, moderate, manage, guide.*

flectere, **flēxit**, **flexus**, *to bend, turn.*

insistere, **instītit**, —, *to stand on; to follow up, pursue.*

percurrere, **-cucurrit** or **-currit**, **-cursus**, *to run along, run through, traverse.*

cito, *quickly; for comp., see 219, 9.*

tantum, adv., (**tantus**), *so greatly, so much, so far; may be used as a noun, often with partitive genitive dependent upon it.*

285.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Yonder mountain is steep. 2. They will have turned the chariots. 3. He will more quickly restrain the horses. 4. This chariot (genitive) pole is a little shorter than that. 5. Because of the rattling of the wheels they are retreating in great fear. 6. Let them not wind in among the footmen of both leaders. 7. He will have advanced to-get-grain (supine). 8. The cavalry has more (266) flexibility than the infantry. 9. Some practice will make the others fit to reap grain.¹ 10. The scattered troops will be brought together again with difficulty. 11. They will have had daily practice in running along over (*per*) the ridge.

286.

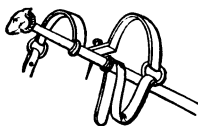
WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. What will they do if the yoke, which seems² to have such great firmness, is (shall have been) broken?³ 2. The Romans so far surpass them that they have departed and hidden behind the crowded chariots. 3. They say they are laying aside their slings because the enemy have not yet battled with them (cf. *sēcum* 268, 11). 4. They think that, if the ranks are unsteady, they will kill very many at first before Caesar can place his hurling engine near. 5. The way of retreat which the foot-soldiers had afforded was lost because the Romans did not flee, but followed up the retreating barbarians.

¹ Use *idōneus* with *ad* and the gerundive construction.

² Use passive of *vidēre* (236).

³ After *sī, iſ*, the Romans often used a future perfect where we use a present or a future.



IUGUM

LESSON LI

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTION.

287. 34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; **namque** eius **adventū** hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex **timōre** recēpērunt. Quō factō ad **laccessendum** hostem et ad commit-



REMAINS OF ROMAN CAMP

tendum proelium **aliēnum** esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt **continuōs** complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continēbant et hostem ā pūgnā prohibēbant. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis **praedicāvērunt** et quanta praedae faciendae atque in **perpetuum** Britanniae liberandae facul-

tās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs **expulissent**, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine **peditātūs** equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

Note how few new words there are in this long chapter.

288. 1. **tulit**: (a) the preceding **nostrīs** would better be taken as a dative; (b) **rēbus** is an ablative of means and **novitāte** one of cause; *to our men disturbed by these things because of the strangeness of the (kind of) fighting.*

2. **adventū**: ablative of time, *at the arrival.*

3. **sē recēpērunt**, *got themselves back, recovered.*

4. **sē locō continuū**: **locō** is an ablative of means, though translated by *in*; cf. 278, 8.

5. **dum haec geruntur**, *while these things are being done*; but in connection with the past tense **discessērunt**, *while this was going on*, or simply, *meanwhile*. **Dum** is often thus used with the present where we might expect a past.

6. **occupātis**: here in the sense of *occupied, engaged, engrossed*; cf. the noun **occupātiō**.

7. **diēs**, *for many successive days* or simply *many successive days*, omitting *for*. Note that here the accusative expresses duration or extent of time; cf. the accusative of extent of space in 173, 6, *b* and the ablative of time in which, 119, 3.

8. **facultās**: (a) limited by what adjective? (b) What two gerundive constructions in the genitive depend on this word?

9. **dēmōnstrāvērunt**: (a) a verb of saying. (b) **quanta facultās darētur**, *how great an opportunity was given*; the subjunctive here is due to the fact that a question is indirectly quoted after a verb of saying; interrogative clauses when indirectly quoted have their verbs in the subjunctive; the question as presented by the messengers was in the indicative; thus **quanta facultās datur** or **dabitur**? (c) **sī . . . expulissent**, *if they should drive out*; why subjunctive? See 230, 3. The form in direct discourse would be future perfect indicative; cf. 282 and 286, 1, footnote.

289.

VOCABULARY

timor (*timēre*), *fear*; for decl. and gender, see 101, 2.

adventus, -ūs, *a coming to; arrival*.

peditātus, -ūs, *infantry*; cf. **equitātus**.

aliēnus (*alius*), *belonging to another, foreign, alien, hostile, unfavorable*; **aes aliēnum**, *money of another, debt*; cf. **aes** 263.

continuus, *continuous, successive*.

perpetuus, *continuous, unbroken, whole*; **in perpetuum** (*tempus*), *for all time, forever*.

circumsistere, -stitit or -stetit, —, *to stand around, to surround*; cf. **Insistere**.

expellere, -pultit, -pulsus, *to drive out*.

lacessere, **laccessivit**, **laccessitus**, *to provoke, irritate, attack, harass*.

praedicāre, *to declare openly, publish, proclaim, boast*; distinguish from **praedicere**, *to say beforehand, foretell*.

namque, conj., *a strengthened nam, for, and in fact*.

290.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Who proclaimed the arrival of the infantry? 2. He asked them (sought from them) who proclaimed the arrival of the infantry. 3. They showed how many chariots had been stationed. 4. How many miles did they retreat in headlong fear? 5. They understood whence the same man was driven. 6. He suspects how great danger has surrounded him. 7. He finds out how (**quam**) long the chariot pole is. 8. If the din of the battle is heard (286, 1, footnote), the merchants will be frightened. 9. By daily practice for many years he will be able to stand on the yoke. 10. Seven successive hours they were battling. 11. He knows that he ought to leave that unfavorable position. 12. If he shall have paid (**solvere**) his debts, he will return. 13. The wheels belonged to other people (**aliēnus**).

291.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He first asks into what sloping place the chariots have worked their way. 2. He says that the charioteers will control and turn the horses very quickly because they have used the same

horses all summer. 3. He has learned in what way they produce the firmness of bronze. 4. They accomplished so much by their flexibility of motion that the enemy were compelled to give the signal for retreat. 5. They will run along the steep ridge for the sake of driving out the enemy; for Britain must be freed from disgrace for ever.

LESSON LII

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

292. 35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs **pulsī**, **celeritāte** periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter **trīgintā**, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō **ante** dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in **aciē** prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō **diūtius** nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō **spatiō** secūtī quantum cursū et **vīribus** efficere poterunt, complūrēs ex iis **occiderunt**; **deinde** omnibus longē **lātē**que **aedificiis incēnsis** sē in castra recēpērunt.

293. 1. **fore = futūrum esse**, *would be, would happen*; its subject is **idem**, *the same thing*; note the gender.

2. **essent pulsī**: subjunctive because in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse, the idea of thinking being conveyed by **vidēbat**; in direct discourse it would be a future perfect indicative, **pulsī erunt**.

3. **ut . . . effugerent**: subjunctive of result, in apposition with **idem**; *that they would escape danger*.

4. **dictum est**: for use, see 246; for the fact mentioned, see 125 and 223.

5. **sēcum = cum sē** (268, 11).

6. **tantō spatiō . . . quantum**, *for so great a distance . . . as*; **tantō spatiō** is an ablative of measure of difference;¹ see 273, 1; an accusative of extent of space might have been used; see 173, 6, *b*; for meaning of **quantum**, cf. General Vocabulary and the use of the English *as* with the force of a relative pronoun.

7. **cursū et viribus**, *by running and strength*; the meaning is *by their strength in running* or *as runners*.

8. **efficere**, *accomplish*; better here *cover*, with reference to space passed over.

294. Study the following examples to learn what tense of a dependent subjunctive must follow each tense of the indicative:—

Quid audiunt? <i>What do they hear?</i> <i>What are they hearing?</i>	dēmōnstrat	}	quid audiant <i>what they hear</i> <i>what they are hearing</i>
	dēmōnstrābit		
	dēmōnstrāverit ²		
	dēmōnstrābat	}	quid audirent <i>what they heard</i> <i>what they were hearing</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit		
	dēmōnstrāverat		
Quid audiēbant? <i>What were they hearing?</i> <i>What did they hear?</i>	dēmōnstrat	}	quid audiverint ³ <i>what they heard</i>
	dēmōnstrābit		
	dēmōnstrāverit		
	dēmōnstrābat	}	quid audirent <i>what they were hearing</i> <i>what they heard</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit		
	dēmōnstrāverat		

¹ The idea of comparison required by such an ablative is sometimes only implied. Here a comparison between the starting point and the limit of pursuit is suggested.

² Future perfect indicative.

³ Perfect subjunctive.

Quid audient? <i>What will they hear, be hearing?</i>	dēmōnstrat	} quid audiant ¹ <i>what they will hear, be hearing</i>
	dēmōnstrābit	
	dēmōnstrāverit	
	dēmōnstrābat	} quid audirent ² <i>what they would hear, be hearing</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit	
	dēmōnstrāverat	

Quid audīverunt? <i>What have they heard?</i> <i>What did they hear?</i>	dēmōnstrat	} quid audīverint ³ <i>what they have heard</i> <i>what they heard</i>
	dēmōnstrābit	
	dēmōnstrāverit	
	dēmōnstrābat	} quid audīvissent <i>what they had heard</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit	
	dēmōnstrāverat	

Quid audīverant? <i>What had they heard?</i>	dēmōnstrat	} quid audīverint ³ <i>what they heard</i>
	dēmōnstrābit	
	dēmōnstrāverit	
	dēmōnstrābat	} quid audīvissent <i>what they had heard</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit	
	dēmōnstrāverat	

Quid audīverint? <i>What will they have heard?</i>	dēmōnstrat	} quid audīverint ³ <i>what they will have heard</i>
	dēmōnstrābit	
	dēmōnstrāverit	
	dēmōnstrābat	} quid audīvissent <i>what they would have heard</i>
	dēmōnstrāvit	
	dēmōnstrāverat	

¹ Or, for greater clearness, **audītūrī sint**.² Or **audītūrī essent**.³ Perfect subjunctive.

1. The first column gives the direct form of the question ; the third gives the form which this question assumes when indirectly quoted after (1) a tense referring to present or future time and (2) a tense referring to past time. What are the only two subjunctive tenses used after present and future tenses? What the only two used after past tenses? Note especially how the lack of a future and future perfect subjunctive is supplied. What does a future become when indirectly quoted after a present or future? What a future perfect, when quoted after a past?

2. A purpose clause admits only the present or imperfect subjunctive ; thus **venit ut rēgem videat**, *he comes that he may see the king, to see the king*, but **vēnit ut rēgem vidēret**, *he came that he might see the king, to see the king*. Note that the corresponding clauses in English express the difference between the present and past sequence by *may* and *might*.

295.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, *a building*.

spatium, *space, extent, distance* ;
used both of *place* and *time*.

celeritās, *quickness* ; cf. **celer** and **celeriter**.

vīs, fem., gen. and dat. sing. rare, accus. **vim**, abl. **vī** ; nom. plur.

vīrēs, gen. **vīrium**, etc. ; meaning in sing. *force, violence* ; in plur. *strength, power*.

aciēs, -ēī, fem., *a sharp edge, keenness, a sharp look, the front of an army, line of battle*.

trīgintā, indecl., *thirty*.

incendere, -cendit, -cēnsus, *to set on fire, kindle, fire, ignite*.

occidere, -cīdit, cīsus (ob, *against, down, and caedere, to cut*), *to cut down, slay*.

pellere, **pepulit**, **pulsus**, *to drive, defeat, rout*.

ante, adv., and prep. with accus., *before, of both space and time*.

deinde, adv., *then, next*.

diū, adv., for comp., cf. 424, 5 (akin to **diēs**), *all day, a long time, long* ; cf. **longē** used of space.

lātē, adv., *widely, far and wide*.

296.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He asked how long they drove the Britons. 2. How far from the steep ridge did he turn his horses? 3. They say that he in the first place restrained his horses. 4. Then he ran out along

the pole. 5. He asks why (**quā rē**) they harassed the infantry. 6. Other people's buildings must not be set on fire by the barbarians (192, 1, *b*). 7. He says thirty horsemen were killed that winter. 8. They will stand in this space before the battle line. 9. For they will come to scatter (**dispergere**) the enemy far and wide. 10. For many successive hours they had mown down the grain. 11. How many (**quot**) buildings will they have set on fire before night? 12. He asked how many buildings they would have fired before night.

297.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Their steadfastness was so great that they were not driven out, although they were surrounded by the chariots with the greatest speed. 2. When the Romans had published the arrival of Caesar, the enemy were disturbed by great fear. 3. They believe that they can shut off the Romans from the sloping place by force. 4. The fickleness (**mōbilitās**) of the Gauls is as great as (293, 6) the steadiness of the Romans, whose daily practice in arms has accomplished much. 5. He knows what the faithful soldiers, who have shown so much strength and agility, will say to the leader when he marches (286, 1, footnote) into the camp. 6. He hastened to beg them not to defeat and cut down those who had accomplished so much for the republic.



LESSON LIII

REVIEW OF GENDER, ALL DECLENSIONS.

298.

FIRST DECLENSION

ancora, fem.; but cf. **Cotta**, masc. by meaning

SECOND DECLENSION

rēmus, masc.

ager, masc.

signum, neut.

THIRD DECLENSION

*Masculine***terr-or***Feminine*

{ **cohor-s**
hiem-s
vōx = vōc-s }
class-is
facul-tās
vir-tūs, gen. -tūtis
leg-iō
alti-tūdō

Neuter

gen-us, -eris
temp-us, -oris
mar-e
flū-men, gen.
-minis, river

FOURTH DECLENSION

currus, masc. ; but exceptions, domus, manus, fem.

FIFTH DECLENSION

rēs, fem. ; but exception, diēs, masc.

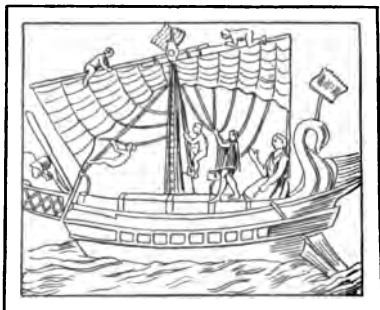
1. Note that names of males are masculine and names of females feminine in Latin exactly as in English, thus **Cotta, lēgātus, nūntius, commilitō, eques, nēmō, orātor, princeps, rēx**, are of course masculine and their endings have nothing to do with their gender. It is, therefore, only in names of things that gender is determined by ending.

2. (a) Note that the first three words included in braces under the feminine of the 3d declension end in **s** preceded by a consonant. (b) What difference do you notice both as to the length of the **u** and as to the genitive ending between feminine and neuter nouns in **-us** of the 3d declension? (c) There are some exceptions under several of these headings, e.g. **-is**, and **-s** preceded by a consonant. There are also a good many nouns not at all covered by these rules the gender of which must be learned separately.

3. Make a list for each declension of the nominative endings in each gender.¹

¹ It is suggested to teachers that much time is often wasted in the classroom by giving endings which are practically useless; thus the larger number

299. 36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat **uplicāvit** eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē **aequinocī infirmīs** nāvibus hiemī **nāvigātiōnem** subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post **mediam** noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō **infra** delātae sunt.



ROMAN SHIP

300. 1. duplicāvit: hīs, the first word in the sentence is a dative with this verb.

2. propinquā diē: ablative absolute, *the day being near*.

3. subiciendam: (a) with this participle **esse** is to be understood; cf. 230, 7. (b) For case of preceding **hiemī**, cf. 235, 5. (c) **nāvibus** is best taken as an ablative of means; *he thought the voyage in weak ships ought not to be exposed to wintry weather*. Note that the ablative of means must often be translated by *in*. Cf. 288, 4.

4. paulō: cf. for case, 273, 1.

5. ex iīs . . . duae, *two of these*; so **ex** with ablative often; cf. 268, 12, and **ē plūribus ūnum**, *one of many*.

6. reliquae: explain its gender; cf. **onerāriae, quae, nāvis**, above. It is the subject of **cēpērunt** understood.

7. capere: used here in the same sense as in 218.

of nouns in **-es** found commonly in prose are masculine from their meaning not because they end in **-es**; cf. N. 1 above. Of course the longest rules do not cover all the nouns.

301.

VOCABULARY

aequinoctium (**aequus**, *equal*, and **nox**), the time when day and night are equal, *the equinox*.
nāvigātiō (**nāvigāre**), *the act of sailing, sailing, a voyage*.
ratio, *a reckoning, consideration, plan, method, system, reason*;
habere ratiōnem, *to keep an account, take account*.
infirmus, *adj., not strong, weak*.

medius, *the middle, the middle of*;
 for the latter sense, cf. **reliquus**,
summus, **tōtus**, **infinus** or **imus**, **primus**; thus, **summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain*,
prima nox, *the first of the night*.
duplicāre (**duplex**, *double*), *to double*.
Infra, *adv., and prep. with accus., below, underneath*.

302.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He asks them how great a disturbance there was below.
 2. He says that thirty of the infantry were slain. 3. The bronze by which the timber was fastened was weak. 4. After learning the strength of the battle line, he doubled the number of soldiers.
 5. For he thought the enemy would quickly attack him. 6. Another man's fear will not frighten me. 7. The arrival of the ships ought to be proclaimed. 8. He had prepared an unbroken space before the building. 9. Their method of fighting is very strange.

303.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. They said they would immediately drive out and keep out for ever the Romans who had come into their country a little (while) before. 2. After setting fire to the equipment they hastened with great speed to the hill in order to work their way into the middle of the camp. 3. Their violence was so great that no one could long sustain their very severe attack. 4. Then they roused up their neighbors to run over the fields and to get grain far and wide. 5. Let them not think that Caesar because of the equinox will delay¹ his sailing in order to get a wind suitable for driving his ships.

¹ The future infinitive of deponent verbs is the same as the future active infinitive, 223, 3.

LESSON LIV

REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV.-LIII.

304. REVIEW OF TEXT

Caesar's Gallic War, Book IV, Chapters 30-36. For method of review, see what is said under this head in the last Review Lesson — XLIV.

305. GRAMMAR REVIEW

FORMS

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Pronouns, summary and review, 278, 11 and 426-430. | 3. Formation of adverbs, 262, 5. |
| 2. Gender, all declensions, 298. | 4. Future perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive, 282. |

SYNTAX

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Accusative of Duration of Time, 288, 7. | 5. Indirect question, 288, 9. |
| 2. Partitive Genitive, 266. | 6. Sequence of tenses, 294. |
| 3. Ablative of Cause, 257, 4. | 7. Purpose, summary and review of different ways of expressing it, 268, 2. |
| 4. Ablative of Measure of Difference, 273, 1. | 8. Supine in -um, 268, 2. |

306. WORD REVIEW

The following ninety-nine words occur for the first time in Lessons XLV.-LIII.:—

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

māteria 46 rota 49

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

aedificium 52 aequinoctium 53 iugum 50 spatium 52

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

aliēnus 51	cōnfertus 48	incertus 48	perpetuus 51
angustus 45	continuus 51	īnfirmus 53	septimus 47
	cotidiānus 50	medius 53	

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

aes 46	iter 47	pulvis 47	suspiciō 4
celeritās 52	mōbilitās 50	ratio 53	tēmō 50
exercitātiō 50	nāvigātiō 53	stabilitās 50	timor 51
exiguitās 45	paucitās 45	statiō 47	vis 52

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

dēclivis 50	praeceps 50
-------------	-------------

INDECLINABLE ADJECTIVES

duodecim 46	trīgintā 52
-------------	-------------

FOURTH DECLENSION NOUNS

adventus 51	currus 49	peditātus 51	reditus 45
cāsus 46	ēventus 46	receptus 49	strepitus 49
commeātus 45			

FIFTH DECLENSION NOUN

aciēs 52

VERBS

First Conjugation

comparāre 46	duplicāre 53	moderārī 50	suspiciārī 46
conlocāre 49	frūmentārī 47	praedicāre 51	ventitāre 47
	īnsinuāre 49	proeliārī 49	

Third Conjugation

circumsistere 51	discēdere 45	īnsistere 50	mefere 48
cōfidere 45	dispergere 48	intelligere 45	occidere 52
conloquī 45	excēdere 47	interclūdere 45	pellere 52
dēlitiscere 48	expellere 51	interficere 48	percurrere 50
dēmetere 48	flectere 50	interpōnere 47	prōcēdere 47
dēpōnere 48	incendere 52	laccessere 51	succēdere 47

Irregular

inīre 47	trānsire 45
----------	-------------

CONJUNCTION

namque 51

PREPOSITION

ante 52

ADVERBS

aegrē 48	cotidiē 46	īnfā 53	prīmō 49
cito 50	deinde 52	lātē 52	rūrsus 45
commodē 46	diū 52	nōndum 46	tantum 50
cōnfestim 47	graviter 46	paulātim 45	

EXERCISES

The following exercises illustrate all the new forms and syntax learned since the last review and bring in all the new words used in Lessons XLV.-LIII.

307. 1. Ut ante peditātūs adventum lātē frūmentārentur, septima turma singulārī celeritāte trīgintā milia passuum prōcessit. 2. Dicit commeātum priusquam in aliēnōs agrōs iter faciant cito comparandum esse. 3. Namque legiōnum commeātū interclūdendārū causā Britannī frūmentum omne cōnfestim dēmetent. 4. Intellegit quis duodecim diēs continuōs petītum (supine) māteriam ex angustō spatiō castrīs proximō discesserit. 5. Paucitāte militum et exiguitāte castrōrum cōnfidērunt sē eōs qui nōndum excessissent satis commodē expellere posse. 6. Pulvere quī oriēbātur suspiciō prīmō interposita est. 7. Tantam exercitātiōnem habēbant ut in praecipitū iugī latere equōs flectere possent. 8. Cotidiē ex mediā silvā ventitābant ut omnia aedificia paulātim incenderent. 9. Deinde infirmis manibus lacessitis receptui signum dabant et dēclive iugum perpetuō strepitū rūrsus trānsibant. 10. Sī timor nāvigātiōnem impediverit, aliquid cōsili novī ineundum (from *inire*) erit.

308.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The return of the chariots was proclaimed to those who were scattered. 2. He did not suspect that any one (*quisquam*) had been killed. 3. A little more crowded line of battle can be put in position. 4. He asks what is the outcome of the battling

below the gate. 5. This cohort will next go on guard (267). 6. The weather is uncertain at the time of the equinox. 7. With difficulty they control the violence of the man. 8. The science (*ratio*) of war is learned by daily practice. 9. They have been greatly (*graviter*) disturbed by their debts (*aes aliēnum*) for a long time. 10. The fickleness (*mōbilitās*) of the Gauls is a perpetual danger to Caesar.

309.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Enough (*satis*) space must be given to turn (gerundive) the horses without accident. 2. Caesar after doubling the strength of the garrison asks where the barbarians have hidden. 3. While they are conversing about the strength of the wheels and the poles of the chariots, the charioteers work their way into the ranks. 4. After driving the enemy twelve successive miles, they killed many and surrounded the rest, who had not yet laid down their arms. 5. They accomplish so much by standing on the ridge and by running along over (*per*) the fields that the enemy are cut off from provisions because they cannot reap the grain.

LESSON LV

TWO ACCUSATIVES AFTER VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING.

NOUNS IN *-men*.

The lessons which follow are taken from Caesar's Gallic War, Book I., Chapters 16-20. They give an interesting incident which is referred to in the story of the second invasion of Britain, which will be taken up later.

310. 16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar **Haeduōs** frūmentum quod essent **pūblicē** pollicitī **flāgitābat**. Nam propter **frīgora** nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē **pābulī quidem** satis māgna cōpia **suppetēbat**; eō autem frūmentō quod **flūmine Ararī** nāvibus sub-

vexerat minus **ūtī** poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīī **āverterant**, ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat**. Diem ex diē eum dūcēbant Haeduī; frūmentum cōnferri, **comportārī**, **adesse** dicēbant.

311. 1. **flāgitābat**: (a) has two objects, **Haeduōs**, the name of the persons asked, and **frūmentum**, the name of the thing asked for; with certain words a similar construction occurs in English, *e.g. he asks the boy the way, they asked him his opinion, they taught him the language*. (b) Note, however, that not all verbs of asking take two accusatives; with **petere**, for example, the name of the person asked is put in the ablative with **ab**, thus, **ab Haeduīs frūmentum petēbat**. (c) **pollicitī essent** in the preceding subordinate clause is subjunctive because of the idea of saying in **flāgitābat**.

2. **nōn modo**, *not only*.

3. **frūmenta**: in plural of standing grain; in singular of harvested grain.

4. **subvexerat**: (a) the preceding **flūmine** and **nāvibus** are both ablatives of means; for translation of **nāvibus**, cf. 300, 3, c.

(b) The preceding **flūmine** is from nominative **flūmen**; note the change of **e** to **i**; it is of the neuter gender; cf. 298, and give the other neuter endings of the 3d declension. What, then, is its accusative singular? What, the nominative and accusative plural? For complete inflection, see 415.

5. **ūtī**: (a) the preceding **minus** has almost the force of **nōn**. (b) How does this word explain the case of the preceding **frūmentō**? Cf. 107, 7.

6. **diem ex diē**: (a) *day after day*; note the meaning of **ex** here. (b) For case of **diem**, cf. 288, 7.

7. **dūcēbant**: here, *were putting off, were delaying*.

8. **cōnferri**: (a) a present passive infinitive; note the doubling of the **r**. (b) This verb refers to the *gathering* of the grain in the fields, the next **comportārī**, to *bringing it in*, from various quarters to Caesar's camp.

312.

VOCABULARY

Haeduus, adj., *Haeduan*; as noun a *Haeduan*, one of the *Haeduans*, a tribe in central Gaul in alliance with the Romans.

pābulum (*pāscere*, to feed, pasture), that which feeds, food, especially for animals, fodder.

Arar or **Araris**, genitive **Araris**, accus. **Ararim**, abl. **Arari**, masc., a river of Gaul, flowing into the Rhone, now the *Saône*.

flūmen, **flūminis**, neut. (*fluere*, to flow), a river.

frīgus, -oris, neut., cold; in plur. with the same meaning or cold spells, frosts.

comportāre, to carry together; cf. **reportāre**.

flāgitāre, to ask repeatedly or earnestly; to demand, importune, dun; see 311, 1.

āvertere, -vertit, -versus, to turn away; **āversus**, turned away, with one's back turned; cf. **adversus** 236.

subvehere, -vexit, -vectus, to carry from below, carry up.

suppetere, -petivit, -petitus, to be on hand, in store.

adesse, -fuit, to be near, be present, assist.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluit**, — (**nē**, not, and **velle**, 148), not to wish, to be unwilling.

pūblicē, adv., publicly, by public authority, in the name of the state.

quidem, adv. of emphasis, calling attention often to the preceding word, in truth, certainly, at least;

nē Caesar quidem, not even Caesar; note position of **Caesar**.

313.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He will importune his fellow-soldiers for their opinions.
2. In the winter they had asked (**petere**) the people for fodder.
3. They had warned the *Haeduans* of this.¹ 4. They will have marched eight miles. 5. They got all kinds of plunder near the sea. 6. Those facing (us) will not permit such a disgrace (207).
7. Not even in the summer was there grain enough in store. 8. Do not let (let not) the supply of provisions fail. 9. They sailed forth (were borne forth) into the sea in the first watch. 10. In the name of the state he asks them to be present (133, 4).

¹ Accusative case **hōc** — **monēre** being sometimes used with two accusatives like an English verb of teaching.

314.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. It is evident (245, 8) that the horsemen rode along between the Arar river and the mountain, which they could not climb (161).
 2. "How many Britons," said he, "live in yonder (**ille**) buildings, the sides of which I see?" 3. The cold was so great that they did not bring together the equipment to the beach as (**quō modō**) they had promised. 4. He will not turn away from those to whom he has attached (214, 5) himself because of their valor. 5. He was unwilling to pardon those who had attacked him when his-back-was-turned.



LESSON LVI

MODE AND TENSE USED AFTER **Ubi**, **Postquam**, **Simul atque**.
 REVIEW OF TIME CONSTRUCTIONS. CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE USE OF **Cum**.

315. **Ubi** sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem **instāre** quō diē frūmentum militibus **mētīrī** oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, graviter eōs **accūsāt**, quod, cum frūmentum neque **emī** neque ex agrīs **sūmī** possit, **tam necessariō** tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn **sublevētur**, **praesertim** cum māgnā ex parte eōrum **precibus** adductus bellum **suscēperit**; **multō** etiam gravius quod sit **dēstitūtus** queritur.

316. 1. **diūtius**: comparative of **diū** (295); it has the meaning *too long* rather than *longer*; the comparative ending often means *too*; cf. 167, 2.

2. **dūcī**: for meaning here, see 311, 7.

3. **intellēxit**: (a) note mode, and especially tense; cf. mode and tense used after **ubi** in 166, 196, **postquam** in 234, and **simul atque**, *as soon as*, in 223. What is the mode and tense in each case? These instances represent the regular usage after these con-

junctions. (b) For use of *cum*, *when*, cf. 208, 5. (c) For ablative absolute with temporal (time) force, see 42. (d) For time in which, cf. 119, 3. (e) For duration of time, cf. 288, 7.

4. *quō diē*, *on which day*, in English translation omit *day*; for similar repetition of antecedent, cf. *in eā parte . . . quam in partem* 267.

5. *oportēret*: (a) for impersonal use, cf. 246. (b) Why subjunctive? Cf. 230, 3.

6. *propinquis hostibus*: for construction, cf. *parte reliquā* 89, 1.

7. *sublevētur*: for mode, cf. 230, 3.

8. *māgnā ex parte*, *out of or from great part*, *freely*, *in a great measure*, *largely*.

9. *suscēperit*: (a) a perfect subjunctive; what other tense has the same form in 3d person singular? Cf. 282. (b) Note the tenses used in this sentence after the principal verb *accūsāt*, viz. *possit*, *sublevētur*, *suscēperit*, and cf. 294; pupils find the sequence after the present and future more difficult than that after past tenses. (c) The verb is subjunctive because it follows *cum*, expressing CAUSE, which takes the subjunctive in all tenses. Note that the idea of time and cause are so closely blended in many sentences that we cannot tell whether to translate *cum*, *when* or *since*; cf. such an English sentence as *when he struck me, I struck him*. *Cum* meaning *although*, i.e. in concessive clauses, also takes the subjunctive.

10. *multō gravius*: for case of *multō*, cf. 273, 1.

317.

VOCABULARY

prex, *precis*, a *prayer*, *entreaty*, *curse*; usually found only in the plural.

necessārius (*necesse*), *necessary*, *unavoidable*, *needful*; as noun, a *relative*, *friend*.

accūsāre (*ad* and *causa*), to *call to account*, *blame*, *accuse*.

ēnūntiāre, to *speak out*, *express*, *disclose*.

īnstāre, *-stitit*, *-stātūrus*, to *stand upon*, *approach*, *press upon*, *threaten*. What case does it take? Cf. 235, 5.

sublevāre, to *lift from beneath*, *lift up*, *aid*.

dēstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, to <i>set down, abandon, forsake.</i>	mētīrī, mēnsus, to measure ; cf. Eng. <i>mensuration.</i>
emere, ēmit, ēmptus (originally <i>to take), to buy.</i>	multum and multō, advs., much ; multō is really an abl., and is used as a rule only with comparatives.
sūmere, sūmpsit, sūmptus, to <i>take, take in hand, assume, ap-</i> <i>propriate.</i>	praesertim, adv., especially.
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpit, -ceptus, <i>to take from beneath, take up,</i> <i>undertake.</i>	tam, adv., so ; used with adjs. and advs., while ita usually limits verbs ; cf. the derivative tantus, and quam, tum, nam.

318.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Caesar ought to measure out grain to-day (this day). 2. Let him lift up the burden with his own hands. 3. The army's supply of provisions is not great enough for a whole year. 4. Caesar earnestly asked them for help because the enemy were pressing on. 5. After the Haeduians deserted them, the Romans bought some grain. 6. They are accustomed to obey his commands. 7. The cold is so great that fodder is not yet on hand. 8. As soon as he was present, the necessary supply of fodder was brought together. 9. When the transport had been filled, they set sail. 10. After he took the bronze, it was carried up by the river.

319.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Although Caesar can neither buy it nor take it from the fields, yet the Haeduians do not bring into the camp the grain which they have promised. 2. Caesar says that the prayers of the Haeduians induced him to wage war that summer. 3. He was much more roused up when this was uttered because the Haeduians had put him off day after day. 4. Caesar could not use the grain which was so necessary because he had marched away from the Arar. 5. After being sternly rebuked by Caesar, they will not wait many hours to apologize (excuse themselves) publicly for (because of) their fault. 6. He says he is unwilling to wage war longer, especially when they have furnished not even the grain, which has to be measured out to the army.

LESSON LVII

COMPLETE INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE IN
ALL CONJUGATIONS. DECLENSION OF **Ego** AND **Tū**.

320. Tum **dēmum** **Liscus**, summus Haeduōrum **magistrātus**, quī **vergobretus** appellātur et **creātur annuus** et **vītae** necisque in suōs habet **potestātem**, **ōrātiōne** Caesaris adductus quod **anteā** **tacuerat prōpōnit**.

321. 1. **annuus**: though an adjective agreeing with the subject of **creātur**, it may be translated as an adverb, *annually*; so often with adjectives agreeing with the subject.

2. **in suōs**: note the force of the accusative with **in**, *upon*, or *over his own (people)*, not *among his own*, which would be **in suis**.

3. **potestātem**: what two preceding genitives depend upon this word? The clause ending with this word describes any chief magistrate among the Haeduans, not Liscus in particular.

4. **prōpōnit**: **id**, the omitted object of this verb, is the antecedent of the preceding **quod**.

322. Learn from **432-435** the present indicative active of each conjugation. (a) Note and carefully learn the personal endings of each person in both singular and plural, reviewing **202**, 8, 10, c. (b) Note that, while in general the forms of the present tense are made by adding the personal ending directly to the present stem, in the 3d conjugation the final vowel of the present stem is changed, thus, **regis** where **reges** would be expected.

323. Learn from **426**, after reviewing **202**, 9, the declension of **ego** and **tū** complete. What similarities of form do you note in these two pronouns?

324.

VOCABULARY

vīta, *life*.**Liscus**, a Haeduan ruler.**vergobretus**, *vergobret*, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans.**nex**, **necis** (for gender, see 298), *death*, especially a violent death.**ōrātiō** (for decl. and gender, see 54), *a speaking, talk, speech*; cf. **ōrātor**.**potestās** (for decl. and gender, see 60), *power, lawful authority*; cf. **imperium**, **auctōritās**.**magistrātus**, **-ūs**, *a civil office, civil officer, magistrate*.**annuus**, *adj., annual, for a year*.**creāre**, *to make, create, elect*.**tacēre**, **tacuit**, **tacitus**, *trans. and intrans., to be silent, be silent about, pass over in silence*.**prōponere**, **-posuit**, **-positus**, *to put or set forth, declare, set before the mind, purpose*.**anteā**, *adv., before, beforehand*.**dēmum**, *adv., at length, at last*.**apud**, *prep. with accus., with, near, among*; **apud Caesarem** would mean *before Caesar, in the works of Caesar, or at Caesar's house*, according as Caesar is thought of as a judge, an author, or a householder.

325.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. We set forth these things to the rulers. 2. You (plural) are turning away from us.¹ 3. Provisions must be measured out (gerundive) by me. 4. He thinks that you (singular) will save my life. 5. We ask the orator for a speech. 6. You (plural) ask them to elect Liscus vergobret. 7. You (singular) ask what power we have (288, 9). 8. When his death was reported, they kept silent. 9. For many years he has been chief magistrate among the Haeduans. 10. The leader can be elected annually. 11. The plan (**ratiō**) of the speech seemed to be remarkable (**singulāris**). 12. He was unwilling to bring together arms, especially since he had been deserted. 13. That leader had much more influence among his own people than this (one). 14. At the house of the vergobret we declare our suspicions.

¹ In the 1st and 2d persons, as in the 3d, the subject when a pronoun is not expressed except for emphasis. In this sentence **vōs** would be expressed if a contrast is intended with **nōbīs**.

326.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Though (**cum**) he had been silent for so long a time before, at length he spoke out boldly (**audācter**). 2. We say that we shall buy the necessary grain unless (**nisi**) it is brought up by public authority. 3. The Haeduans, being blamed by Caesar, began (**coepisse**) to complain about the cold (weather). 4. We are taking fodder from the fields so that a supply may be on hand. 5. We are undertaking a severe war and pressing upon the enemy, although not even this nation has assisted our leader. 6. Those men are present by whose prayers the Romans were in a great measure led to remain near the river Arar. 7. In the works of the orator we learn that a conspiracy was made against the republic.



LESSON LVIII

USE OF **Quin**. INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE,
ALL CONJUGATIONS. REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

327. Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud **plēbem** plurimum **valeat**, quī **privātim** plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs **sēditiōsā** atque **improbā** ōrātiōne multitudinem **dēterrēre** nē frūmentum cōferant quod **dēbeant**: praestāre, sī **prīncipātum** Galliae **obtinēre** nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre, neque **dubitāre quin**, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs **libertātem** sint **ēreptūrī**. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē **coērcērī** nōn posse. **Quin** etiam, quod necessāriam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

328. 1. **esse**: infinitive in the principal, declarative clause of indirect discourse.

2. **nōn nūllōs**: two words with the force of one; *not none* = *some*. Write the direct form for **nōn nūllōs esse**.

3. **plūrimū valeat**: (a) Why subjunctive? Cf. 230, 3. (b) **valēre** has nearly the meaning of **posse**, and **plūrimū valet** means, literally, *can very much*; freely, *is very great*.

4. **plūs possint**: for mode and for meaning, cf. preceding note.

5. **dēterrēre**: cf. N. 1, and note that the indirect discourse is continued through this whole lesson. Write the direct form of this verb with its subject.

6. **nē . . . cōnferant**: (a) a negative volitive clause used with **dēterrēre**; cf. 131, 2, and 208, 4. (b) Freely translated with the context, *these are keeping the multitude from furnishing*. (c) Cf. the construction here used with **dēterrēre** with that used with **prohibēre** in 187, 6. (d) **multitūdō** is the subject of **cōnferant**, which is plural because **multitūdō** is a collective noun; usually, however, in Latin a collective noun takes a singular verb; cf. 268, 4.

7. **dēbeant**: (a) *they ought*; the infinitive **cōnferre** is understood. (b) Cf. the meaning and use of the impersonal verb **oportet** 246, 4. (c) How else may necessity or obligation be expressed? Cf. 160.

8. **praestāre**: the direct form is **praestat**, *it is better*; cf. the word in 204; with this word begins the **improba orātiō** just referred to.

9. **possint**: the direct form is **possumus**, 1st person, since the influential leaders in speaking to the common people would identify themselves with them, *we Haeduans*.

10. **imperia perferre**: (a) *to endure the commands or rule*. (b) The subject of the impersonal verb **praestat**.

11. **dubitāre**: for direct form **dubitāmus**; cf. N. 9.

12. **sī . . . superāverint**: (a) a perfect subjunctive is used because this is a subordinate clause of indirect discourse. (b) The direct form would have a future perfect indicative, *if they shall have conquered*; freely in English idiom, *if they conquer*; cf. 286,

1, footnote; for change in tense, cf. 294. (c) The form of the verb is the same in direct and indirect discourse; cf. 282.

13. **ūnā cum**: cf. 126, 5.

14. **quīn . . . ēreptūrī sint**: (a) *that they are about to snatch away, are going to snatch away*. (b) Note the use of **quīn**; it is thus used with the subjunctive after negative expressions of *doubting* and *hindering*. (c) The preceding **Haeduīs** is a dative, though translated, *from the Haeduans*; the dative is thus used, where the ablative of separation might be expected, with **ēripere** and a few other verbs.

15. **nostra**, *our*, i.e. *Roman plans*; **nostra** is used by Caesar to adapt his book to Roman readers; Liscus said *your plans* or *the Roman plans*.

16. **quaeque**, *and what things* or *those things which*; the antecedent of **quae** is the subject of the following verb, **ēnūntiārī**.

17. **hōs . . . posse**: in the direct form **hī ā mē coērcērī nōn possunt**.

18. **quīn**: here not used with the subjunctive, and meaning *nay more, in fact*; see Vocabulary.

19. **quod . . . ēnūntiārīt**: (a) the full form of **ēnūntiārīt** is **ēnūntiāverīt**; cf. 187, 3; so very often in the 1st conjugation. (b) A perfect subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse. (c) The conjunction **quod** is here translated *as to the fact that*. (d) In speaking directly to Caesar he said **tibi**, *to you*, instead of the indirect **Caesari**.

20. (a) The direct form for **ēnūntiāverīt** is **ēnūntiāvi**, *I have told*. (b) This is the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative active. (c) Learn from 432-435 the inflection of the perfect indicative active of all conjugations. (d) Note carefully the personal endings added to the perfect stem. How does the 2d person plural differ from the same ending in the present indicative active?

21. **intellegere sēsē**: in the direct form, simply **intellegō**, *I understand*; the infinitive must have its subject (here **sēsē**) expressed because it has no personal ending, but the personal ending **-ō** in **intellegō** means *I*.

22. **quantō cum periculō fecerit**: Diviciacus said *fēcerim*, *I have done it*. Why perfect subjunctive? Cf. 288, 9, and 294.

23. **quam diū**: relative, *as long as*.

24. **potuerit**: direct **potui**, 1st person of perfect indicative.

25. **tacuisse**: direct **tacui**. Inflect tense.

26. The sentence from **quin etiam** may be thus translated in the direct form: "Nay more too, as to my telling you on compulsion (**coāctus**) what I was obliged to tell, I understand with how much peril I have done it and for that reason I kept silent as long as I could." Translate this connected English into Latin with the help of the above notes. Notice that a literal translation of **necessāriam rem** would be bad English in this sentence.

329.

VOCABULARY

libertās (**liber**, *free*), *freedom, liberty*; cf. **liberāre**.

plēbs, **plēbis**, fem. (same root as **plēnus**), *the common people, commons*.

principātus, **-ūs** (**princeps**), *the leadership, principate*.

improbus (cf. **probāre**), *not good, bad, excessive, reckless*.

sēditiōsus (**sēditiō**), *full of discord, quarrelsome, seditious*.

dubitāre, *to doubt, hesitate*; in latter sense takes the infinitive.

coercēre, **-ercuit**, **-ercitus**, *to inclose on all sides, check, restrain*.

dēbere, **dēbuit**, **dēbitus** (**dē** and **habēre**), *to hold or keep from, owe*; in moral sense **dēbeō**, *I am under obligation, I ought*; cf. Eng. *debit* and *debt*.

dēterrēre, **-terrui**, **-territus**, *to frighten from, deter*; cf. **terror**.

obtinēre, **-tinuit**, **-tentus** (**tenēre**), *to hold against all comers, own, possess*; does NOT in Caesar mean *obtain*.

valēre, **valuit**, **valitūrus**,¹ *to be strong, well, in good health; to be able*; imperative **valē**, *farewell*.

ēripiō, **-ripere**, **-ripuit**, **-reptus** (**ē** and **rapiō**), for conjug. cf. 214, 10; *to snatch away, rescue*.

privātim, adv., *privately, in private*.

quīn, conj. and adv., *in truth, nay more*; with subjv., *that, but that, from, without*; sometimes equal to the relative **quī** and a negative, *who . . . not*.

¹ Note the unusual number of 2d conjugation verbs in this lesson. Which are regular? What slight irregularity has **obtinēre**? Cf. 47.

330.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. I have not doubted that he would restrain them. 2. Let not liberty be snatched away from the common people. 3. He will declare what the ruler took for himself. 4. You have chided me because I deserted you. 5. It is better to be well than to possess all things. 6. In private they betrayed (*prōdere*) him by seditious talk. 7. A bad vergobret ought to be kept from checking the common people. 8. He asks how (*quō modō*) they have obtained the leadership. 9. How many officers are elected annually? 10. Quote sentence 9 after *petent*. 11. Caesar will hear the prayers. 12. Quote 11 after *dicīt*. 13. I do not doubt that he will free the common people. 14. You did not hesitate, especially when Caesar was helping you. 15. Let us not doubt that they will take account (*habēre ratiōnem*) of the speech.

331.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Though the power of life and death has been given to Liscus, yet this man has much more influence with (*apud*) many. 2. He said he would tell them with how much danger to himself he had helped the Romans. 3. At length he declared that they would buy the provisions which the Haeduanus owed to the Roman soldiers. 4. You did not doubt that they would be silent about the plan which they had undertaken before. 5. We have been so faithful that the ruler has commended us to the commander-in-chief because (as he says) we hindered the conspiracy.



LESSON LIX

FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE, COMPLETE.

332. 18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī **Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat**, sed, quod plūribus **praesentibus** eās rēs **lactārī** nōlēbat, celeriter **concilium**

dīmittit, Liscum **retinet**. **Quaerit** ex **sōlō** ea quae in **conventū** dixerat. **Dicit liberius** atque audācius.

333. 1. **plūribus praesentibus** : ablative absolute, *many being present, in the presence of many*; the comparative form **plūribus** is here best translated by a positive.

2. **sōlō** : with this adjective understand **eo**, referring to Liscus.

3. **dicit** : (a) the subject is **Liscus**. (b) Is the position of the adverbs in this sentence usual or unusual? For the answer examine this and the three preceding lessons.

334. (a) Learn from 432 the complete conjugation of **vocāre** in the active voice. (b) Note wherein the personal endings of the several tenses differ from those of the present indicative already learned (322), especially in the 1st person singular. (c) Review carefully the tense signs. (d) Learn the imperative; cf. **dēsillite** 202, 5.

335.

VOCABULARY

concilium, an assembly, council;
cf. **cōnsilium**, a plan, counsel.

Dīviciācus, a Haeduan leader and
friend of the Romans.

Dumnorix, **Igis**, a Haeduan leader.
frāter, **-tris**, brother.

frāternus, adj., *belonging to a
brother, brother's, for or of a
brother, brotherly, fraternal*.

conventus, **-ūs**, *a coming together,
meeting, court*.

sōlus (for decl., cf. 421), *alone,
sole*; the neut. sing. **sōlum** is
used as an adverb, *only*; cf.
similar adverbial uses of **tantum**
and **multum**.

praesēns; see **praeesse** below.

praeesse, **-fuit**, **-futūrus**, *to be
over, to command*; takes the

dative; the pres. partic. **prae-
sēns** means *present, immediate*;
for decl., cf. **vocāns** 423.

dēsīgnāre (**sīgnum**), *to mark out,
point out, describe, designate*.

iactāre (**iacere**), *to throw repeat-
edly, throw about*; when used of
words, *to discuss*.

retinēre, **-tinuit**, **-tentus**, *to hold
back; to hold fast, retain*.

quaerere, **quaesīvit**, **quaesītus**,
to seek, look for, ask; note its
construction in the above text
and cf. 311, 1; cf. and distin-
guish **querī**, *to complain*.

sentīre, **sēnsit**, **sēnsus**, *to feel,
perceive, think, find*.

liberē, adv., *freely*; cf. **liber**,
free, and **libertās**.

336.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. He could see the shape (*figūra*) of the moon in the river.
 2. We shall annually elect a ruler to repress (hold back) bad (people). 3. During a long life he had great power among his people. 4. We blamed him before because he was keeping silent.
 5. Let them not by the death of our ruler snatch away our liberty. 6. We ought to be well, so that we may work (*labōrāre*) every day (daily). 7. I do not doubt that you will coerce those present. 8. For the sake of retaining (your) liberty you (plural) had brought together all the arms. 9. I shall have asked (*flāgitāre*) you to bring together (133, 4) fodder. 10. He had been so gentle that we hesitated (imperfect) to restrain him.

337.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Many of those whom Caesar commanded were present in the council in which these things had been discussed. 2. When the gathering was dismissed, he inquired of the vergobret concerning the seditious talk of Dumnorix, brother of Diviciacus. 3. We did not doubt that Dumnorix alone would have great power on account of his brother's leadership. 4. He not only described some bad man, but also (*etiam*) declared in private who it was (288, 9). 5. At length he felt that the leader whose talk was disturbing the plebs ought to be kept from complaining about the Romans.



LESSON LX

ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE,
 COMPLETE. PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

338. Eadem *sēcrētō* ab aliīs quaerit; reperit ea esse *vēra*: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā *audāciā*, māgnā apud plēbem propter *liberālītātem grātiā*, cupidum rē-

rum novārum. Complūrēs annōs **portōria** reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum **vectigālia** parvō **pretiō redēpta** habēre, **proptereā** quod illō **licente** contrā **licērī** audeat nēmō.

339. 1. **ipsum** : in the sense of *very man* rather than *himself*; *he finds out that Dumnorix is the very man*.

2. **summā audāciā** : (a) to be translated as the adjunct of **Dumnorigem**, but we in English should put in some such word as *man*; thus, Dumnorix, *a man of the greatest daring*. (b) Note that the ablative here describes or qualifies a noun, much like an adjective; it is called the ablative of QUALITY or the DESCRIPTIVE ablative. (c) In all other uses of the ablative that we have had it modifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or adverb; the ablative from this predominant use is often called the adverbial case; cf. Review of Ablative, in 192, 8, and also ablative uses in 257, 4, and 273, 1. (d) The ablative of quality is always modified by an adjective (or equivalent genitive), as here by **māgnā**; cf. the use of Ablative of Manner in 192, 7. (e) The genitive of quality, here, **māgnae audāciae**, might have been used with nearly the same meaning.

3. **māgnā . . . grātīā** : (a) for construction, see N. 2. (b) The two prepositional phrases between **māgnā** and **grātīā** are adjective phrases qualifying **grātīā**; this explains their position.

4. **cupidum** : (a) qualifies what noun? (b) Note how similar it is in force to the preceding ablatives of quality, which qualify the same noun. (c) Completed in meaning by the genitive case just as the adjectives *desirous* or *fond* are completed by the objective with *of* in English; cf. use of **imperitus** in 139, 4. (d) **novārum rērum** here means *a new government, revolution*.

5. **parvō pretiō**, *at a small price*; a variety of the ablative of means or instrument.

6. **vectigālia redēpta habēre** : with what noun does the participle **redēpta** agree? In the English expression *he had bought up the taxes*, the participle *bought up* really agrees with *taxes*, which is the object of the verb *had*, though we call the

whole combination a pluperfect tense. **redēpta habēre** has nearly the same meaning as **redēmisse**.

7. **licente**: (a) present participle; for declension and exact force, cf. 203. (b) An ablative absolute with **illō**, *while he* (i.e. *Dumnorix*) *was bidding*. (c) A present active participle, though the verb is deponent. Note that deponent verbs all have the active as well as the passive participles, also the gerund and supine. (d) Note further that the participle in **-nd-** (gerundive) is passive in sense even in deponent verbs. (e) These peculiarities may be thus illustrated:—

cunctāns, *delaying*.

cunctātūrus, *about to delay*.

cunctātus, *having delayed*.

cunctandus, *to be delayed, ought to be delayed*.

340. Learn from 433 the active voice of the 2d conjugation complete. Do any of the personal endings differ from those of the 1st conjugation? Do the tense signs? Do the stem endings?

341.

VOCABULARY

audācia, *daring, boldness, audacity*; cf. **audēre**, **audāx** (*bold*), **audācter**.

grātia, *favor*, either shown or received; hence *kindness, gratitude, recompense, or popularity*; sometimes like **causa**, with a genitive, *cause, reason, sake*.

portōrium (**portāre**), *a tax, especially a tax paid on goods imported, duty, customs*.

pretium, *price, value*.

liberālitās (**liber**, *free*), *the quality of a freeman, generosity*.

vectigal,¹ **-ālis**, neut. (has the endings of **mare** (416) except in nom. and accus. sing.), *tax, revenue*.

cupidus (**cupere**), *desirous, fond*.

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupiuit**, **cupitus**, *to long for, desire; to be*

¹ In former times, in cases where the revenue from a tax was uncertain, individuals would often estimate the amount that would be received and pay it into the state treasury in advance. If, owing to prosperous trade or other causes, the revenue was greater than anticipated, the individual who purchased and collected the tax would reap a handsome profit.

well disposed (in last sense with dative); for conjug., see 214, 10.

vērūs, *true, right, genuine, well-founded*; the neut. sing. is often a noun meaning *truth*.

licēri, **licitus**, *to bid* (at an auction).

redimere, **-ēmit**, **-ēptus**, (**emere**), *to buy back, buy up, purchase*.

proptereā, adv., *on account of this, therefore*; usually in combination **proptereā quod**, which may be translated simply *because*.

sēcrētō, *apart, separately, secretly*.



GALLIC HORSEMEN

342.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. The audacity of Dumnorix ought to be checked.
2. We ought to keep him from frightening others.
3. They promised his brother secretly a building of very great value.
4. While Diviciacus was delaying (present participle), Dumnorix bought up the customs.
5. He was desirous of true leadership.
6. He says you desired to hold the hill with (of) steep sides.
7. They seem to be fond of foraging.
8. He says they will set out in the third watch to forage (268, 2).
9. You have great power with the soldiers in private.
10. I advised them to show brotherly kindness.
11. Those present are men of small influence in this gathering.
12. After speaking (**loquī**) freely, he asks them to follow him.
13. While following him they ought to be attacked.
14. He promised to measure out (224, 3, *e*) the fodder.

343.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. They say that Dumnorix, a leader of remarkable generosity, will bid and will buy up the taxes. 2. The popularity of the man whom you have pointed out was so great that we did not dare to hinder him. 3. They feel that the quarrelsome Dumnorix possesses this fortune (plural) because no one bid against him. 4. He does not doubt that wicked men will snatch away liberty if they shall be able. 5. While the council was departing, after urging them not to discuss these things among those whom they commanded, we kept back Liscus alone.

LESSON LXI

CONJUGATION OF **Esse** AND **Posse** COMPLETE.

344. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse.

345. 1. et . . . et, both . . . and.

2. facultātēs ad largiendum, means for bribing, for bribery; cf. 159, 6.

3. comparāsse: (a) full form comparāvisse; cf. 328, 19, a. (b) The subject is Dumnorigem understood. (c) The indirect discourse continues from the last lesson. What is the direct form for this infinitive?

4. neque = et nōn.

5. domī: a peculiar form of domus meaning at home; cf. 126, 4.

6. **largiter posse** : for meaning, cf. 328, 3.

7. **hūius potentiae causā**, for the sake of this power, to secure this power ; cf. 224, 8, d.

8. **illic**, there ; i.e. among the Biturigians. The reference of **illic** here shows how necessary it is to follow the order of the Latin in getting the sense ; cf. page 69, footnote 1.

9. **potentissimō** : (a) the nominative of the positive is **potēns**, -entis ; note that the comparative and superlative endings are added to the genitive less -is. (b) In form a present participle associated in conjugation with **posse**. (c) It has lost its participial force and means simply *able, powerful*. (d) Learn the verbs **esse** and **posse** in all persons, complete ; study what is said of them in 76, 165 and in 431, 438. Why should **esse** and **posse** be learned together ? (e) The only forms presenting any difficulty to you now are those of the present indicative ; learn this with great care.

10. **conlocāsse** : (a) for full form, cf. N. 3, a ; (b) means here, *had given in marriage*. (c) Write all the verbs of this lesson as they would be in the direct form.

346.

VOCABULARY

potentia, *might, power, authority, influence* (personal and political but not official) ; cf. **potestās**, **facultās**, **auctōritās**, **imperium**, **rēgnum**.

Biturīgēs, -um, a Gallic tribe.

māter, -tris, *mother*.

sūmptus, -ūs (**sūmere**), *outlay, expense*.

familiāris (**familia**, *household*), *of the household, private, intimate* : as noun, *a friend* ; **rēs familiāris**, *private property*.

nōbilis (cf. **nōtus**), *well-known, high-born*.

augēre, **auxit**, **auctus**, *to increase, enlarge, transitive* ; cf. the intransitive **crēscere**.

crēscere, **crēvit**, **crētūrus**, *to grow, increase*.

alere, **aluit**, **altus** (**alitus**), *to nourish, support*.

largiri, **largitus**, *to give bountifully, give bribes*.

largiter, adv., *largely, bountifully*.

circum, adv., and prep. with accus., *around, about, all around*.

illic, adv., *in that place, there, yonder*.

semper, adv., *always, ever*.

347.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Dumnorix by buying up the taxes (ablative absolute) amasses larger means. 2. His influence is increasing much among the nobles. 3. You are a man of well-known fidelity (*fidēs*). 4. We cannot give bribes, even if we desire to obtain power. 5. You are very powerful there because you command many. 6. You ask (*quaerere*) me to point out Diviciacus. 7. He feels that the expense of his generosity is very great. 8. I cannot discuss these things in this council. 9. While my brother was present (ablative absolute), we could not speak freely. 10. The daring of Dumnorix alone keeps back many. 11. Let us be good and true. 12. You (singular) are fond of revolution. 13. A leader of such bravery ought to be aided (*auxiliāri*) by us.

348.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. My private property is so large that I can support many horsemen. 2. Dumnorix, whose mother had been given in marriage to a nobleman among the Biturigians, was willing (148) to do everything (all things) to increase his own power. 3. The gathering being dismissed, he declared in secret that Dumnorix would use much money (*aes*) in bribery (gerund). 4. Since he is a man of such popularity, he desires to bid in order to increase his private fortune. 5. Having bought up the duties, he kept so great a number of horsemen about him that no one dared to advance against him.

LESSON LXII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS, ACTIVE VOICE, COMPLETE.

349. Ipsum ex **Helvētiīs** uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātē et propinquās suās **nūptum** in aliās cīvitatēs conlocāsse. **Favēre** et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam **adfīni-**

tātem, ōdisse etiam suō **nōmine** Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius **dēminūta** et Dīvičiācus frāter in **antīquum** locum grātiaē atque **honōris** sit **restitūtus**.

350. 1. **habēre** : the indirect discourse continues.

2. **sorōrem ex mātēre**, a sister from the mother, a sister on the mother's side (only) ; i.e. a half-sister.

3. **propinquās** : note that it is here a noun and feminine ; see General Vocabulary.

4. **nūptum . . . conlocāsse** : for **nūptum**, cf. 268, 2 ; **conlocāsse** has here the force of a verb of motion.

5. **Favēre et cupere** : take the dative in **Helvētiis** ; the meaning *favor* might lead us to expect the accusative ; cf. **obtemperāre**, to obey, and **imperāre**, to command.

6. **suō nōmine** : ablative of cause, *in his own name, on his own account*, i.e. in addition to the hatred which his connection with the Helvetians would give him ; the Helvetians were at this time at war with the Romans.

7. **dēminūta** : with the participle supply **sit** to form the compound tense of the verb. Why not **est** ? Why not **esset** ? Cf. 294.

351. Learn from 434 and 435 the complete 3d and 4th conjugation in the active voice. Note that the personal endings are the same as in the 1st and 2d conjugation, but that in the present system the 3d conjugation sometimes changes or loses the final vowel of its present stem. Where ?

352.

VOCABULARY

Helvētius , adj., <i>Helvetian</i> ; as noun, a <i>Helvetian</i> . The Helvetians occupied the territory of modern Switzerland.	adfinitās , ¹ <i>nearness, relationship by marriage</i> ; cf. finēs , <i>borders</i> , finitimus . voluntās (velle) , <i>will, wish, in-</i>
--	--

¹ Note the unusual number of 3d declension nouns in this Lesson. For genitive and gender, cf. 415-417 and 298. How is the gender of **soror** and **uxor** determined ?

clination, permission, consent, good will.
honor, honor, office.
soror, sister.
uxor, wife.
nōmen (cf. **nōtus**), *means of knowing, name.*
antīquus¹ (*ante*), *old, ancient, former.*
favēre, fāvit, fautūrus, to be favorable, to favor; intrans., and takes dat. of person.
dēminuere (*minus*), *-minuit, -minūtus, to lessen.*
nūbere, nūpsit, nūptus, to veil

one's self, hence to marry (said of the woman); takes the dat. of the name of the man, thus **Caesarī nūpsit.**

ōdisse, ōdit, ōderat, etc., to hate; used only in the pf. system and act. voice; but **ōdit** is pres. in sense, *he hates*; the plupf. has sense of impf., and fut. pf. the sense of a fut.; cf. **coe-pisse**, which, however, is pf. in sense in the perfect.
restituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, to set up again, restore; cf. cōn-stituere.

353.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. I do not doubt that you will restore me to favor. 2. The sister of a Helvetian chieftain married Dumnorix. 3. Her brother gave her in marriage to him. 4. We shall come in order to increase our power. 5. I ought to blame you, for you have decreased my former honor. 6. This relationship (by marriage) causes you to (**efficere ut**) hate Caesar. 7. My mother and my wife favored their old friends. 8. The good will of Caesar was desired by many high-born Biturigians. 9. We are desirous of true honor. 10. I desire to have about me men of exceptional fidelity.

354.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. We hear that Dumnorix is giving lavishly out of the large means which he acquired by his audacity. 2. Since no one had bid against him, he readily enough secured the taxes at a small price. 3. By his mere (**ipse**) name he frightened them and kept them from bidding² against him. 4. You hate Caesar secretly

¹ Three syllables, — **an-tī-quus**; cf. **re-li-quus**.

² Cf. **nostrōs ēgredī prohibēbant** 186.

because you are desirous of the port dues and cannot get them while he is present in Gaul. 5. The expense of supporting the horsemen all the time has increased so much that Dumnorix is prevented from displaying more generosity.

LESSON LXIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB **Fiō (Fieri)**.

355. **Sī quid** accidat Rōmānis, summam in **spem** per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē **rēgnō**, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā **dēspērāre**. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium **equestre** adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, **initium** fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātūi quēm auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs **certissimae** rēs accēderent, quod per **finīs** Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs **trādūxisset**, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs **cūrasset**, quod ea omnia nōn modo **iniussū** suō et civitātis, sed etiam **inscientibus** ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

356. 1. **quid**: here not interrogative, but indefinite, *anything*; see Vocabulary.

2. **accidat**: the indirect discourse still continues; this present subjunctive represents a future indicative in direct discourse; cf. Sequence of Tenses in 294; it may be translated *should happen*.

3. **rēgnī obtinendī**: **rēgnī** depends on **spem**; for use of **obtinentī**, cf. 224, 8.

4. **summam in spem . . . venire**, *he is coming into the highest hope, better, he entertains the liveliest hope.*

5. **imperio**, *under the rule*; the ablative here expresses both time and cause, as the conjunction **cum** often does; cf. 316, 9, c.

6. **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**: correlatives like **et . . . et**, *not only . . . but also*; cf. **neque solum . . . sed etiam** 344.

7. **quam habeat**: the antecedent of **quam** is **gratiā**, which follows it in the order of the Latin.

8. **dēspērāre**: the end of the indirect discourse which follows **reperit** 338.

9. **paucis ante diēbus**: **ante** is an adverb here, and **diēbus** an ablative of measure of difference, *before by a few days, a few days before*; cf. 273, 1.

10. **quod . . . factum esset**: (a) the **quod** clause is here an adverbial accusative, *because an unfavorable battle had been made, or, as to the fact that an unfavorable battle had been fought, better still, regarding the unfavorable battle fought.* (b) Subordinate clause in indirect discourse because of the idea of thinking in **reperiēbat**. (c) For the form of **factum esset**, cf. **fieri** 175. Learn the whole inflection from 437,¹ with special care as to the inflection of the present indicative; note that it is the passive of **facere**, and that the translations *to become* and *to happen* are based on the first meaning, *to be made or done.* (d) Note that such forms as **fiēbat** are irregular in having a vowel long before another vowel, a vowel before another vowel being regularly short. We have a similar irregularity in the genitive ending **-ius** in **tōtius**, **illius**, etc.

11. **factum**: **esse** is to be supplied; making what infinitive?

12. **auxilio Caesari**, *to aid Caesar*; for use of the two datives, see 197, 6.

13. **praeerat**: for construction of preceding **equitātui**, cf. 235, 5.

14. **eōrum**: the antecedent is **equitātui**, which, though grammatically singular, means more than one horseman.

¹ The teacher should drill the pupil by calling for the rapid translation of such sentences as *it is done, we do, it happened, we become, it will be done, let it be done*, etc.

15. *accōderent*: (a) in what respect is this word similar to *fiō*? Cf. 152 and 154. (b) For mode, see 316, 9, c.

16. *quod . . . trādūxisset*: (a) the subject is *Dumnorix*. (b) Subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; the thought of Caesar as suggested by *suspiciōnēs*, above, is here quoted. (c) This clause, with the three following *quod* clauses, is in apposition with *rēs*, the subject of *accōderent*; do not forget that many clauses, both in English and Latin, are nouns.

17. *obsidēs dandōs cūrāset*: (a) *had cared for hostages to be given*, better, *had had hostages given*; *cūrāre* is often thus used with the gerundive, to show that a person has a thing done. (b) For form of *cūrāset*, see *comparāsse* 345, 3.

18. *suō iniūssū et civitātis*, *without his command and (that) of the state*; *iniūssū* is an ablative of manner (cf. 192, 7), literally *with his not-command*; *suō* refers to Caesar.

19. *inscientibus ip̄s*: ablative absolute; *ip̄s* refers to the Haeduan state and Caesar.

20. *satis causae*: for use, cf. 266.

21. *quā rē*, *on account of which thing, wherefore, why*.

22. *animadvertere in eum*, *to turn the attention to him, to attend to him, to punish him*. What would *animadvertere eum* mean?

357.

VOCABULARY

initium (*inire*), *a going in, beginning*; cf. Eng. *initiation*.

rēgnum (*rēx*), *royal power, kingdom*.

Sēquanī, *the Sequanians*, a Gallic tribe near the Haeduan.

finis, masc. by exception, *end*; in plur., *limits, boundaries, confines, territory*.

iniūssū (*in* negative and *iubere*), found only in abl., *without command*.

spēs, *sp̄s* (5th decl., 419), *hope, expectation*.

certus (*cernere*, *to separate, determine*), *determined, fixed, certain, sure*; cf. *certē*.

equester, adj., *of a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry*; for decl., cf. *pedester* 193. Cf. meaning of *equus*, *eques*, *equitātus*.

quis, *qua*, *quid*, indef. pron., *some one, any one, something, anything*; declined like the interrog.

<p>quis, but note qua for quae in nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut. The indef. quis, in Caesar, is usually found only after si, nisi, nē, num. cūrāre, to care for, attend to ; for use with gerundive, see N. 17. dēspērāre (spēs), to be hopeless, to despair.</p>	<p>scīre, scīvit, scītus, to know ; in-scīēns (in negative and scīre), unknowing, unaware ; for decl., cf. vocāns 423. trādūcere or trānsdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead or draw across ; may take two accusatives — one after dūcere and one after trāns in composition.</p>
---	---

358.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. I entertain the hope of increasing my private property. 2. He is made leader by the Helvetians. 3. You (singular) have the high-born Sequanians around you supported at great expense. 4. We give lavishly that our power may increase. 5. A few days before his sister had married a knight (**eques**). 6. He was influenced (**addūcere**) because his wife was a Helvetian. 7. His mother says the Biturigians are entering into some new plan (266, 7). 8. Because of this relationship we shall hate the Romans. 9. As to our knowing these certain facts, we found them out without the knowledge of Dumnorix. 10. If any one led across the cavalry forces without the command of Caesar, he punished him. 11. You (plural) know that Caesar will restore the kingdom and the name of king. 12. Men become (are made) great through their own efforts (**virtūs**).

359.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Dumnorix and his horsemen had begun to retreat, so that the rest of the horsemen might be frightened. 2. The fact was added that (**quod**) he always so favored his friends that they were very powerful there. 3. If you are (286, 1) an aid to Caesar, you will be made king in this territory. 4. Let a beginning be made by those whose honors have been lessened by Dumnorix. 5. There is reason enough why you should not despair concerning the good will of Caesar and that former honor.

LESSON LXIV

THE VERB *īre* (**Ēō**). SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH (OPTATIVE). CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING. CONSTRUCTION WITH **Antequam** AND **Priusquam** AND **Dum**, *Until*.

360. THE VERB *īre*.—Cf. **adit**, present indicative, 100; **adiit**, perfect indicative, 94; **adeat**, present subjunctive, 132; also the derivative nouns **initium** and **aditus**. Learn the whole verb from 439, and note that the stem is *i-*, but that this is changed to *e* before a vowel (e.g. **ēō**, **eunt**) and is shortened in the perfect passive participle.¹ Note, too, the declension of the present participle.

361. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH AND CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING. —

Nostri veniant!

May our men come!

Nē hostēs veniant!

May the enemy not come!

Verētur nē hostēs veniant.

He is afraid that the enemy will (may) come.

Verētur ut nostri veniant.

He is afraid that our men will (may) not come.

1. The first sentence shows that the subjunctive is used in expressing a wish; the second that a negative wish is expressed with **nē**. Distinguish carefully the subjunctive of will (131, 2) which expresses the authority of the speaker with imperative or almost imperative force.

2. Sentences three and four show that substantive clauses of wish are used as the object of verbs of *fearing*. The thing desired,

¹ It is not enough simply to repeat the forms in the order of the grammar; there should be much practice also in putting into Latin short expressions like *I go, I shall go, let us go, he was going, he says you will go*, etc.

nostrī veniant (positive desire), is introduced by the positive conjunction **ut**, and the thing not desired, **hostēs veniant**, is introduced by the negative conjunction, or adverb, **nē**.

362. 1. Ille locus nōn relictus est priusquam finis pūgnandī factus est.

That position was not abandoned before (until) an end of fighting was made.

2. Priusquam periculum faciat, Volusēnum praemittit.

Before he makes the attempt, he sends Volusenus ahead.

3. Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre reciperent, in finis finitimōs exercitum dūxit.

Caesar, before the enemy should recover (recovered) from fright, led his army into the neighboring territory.

4. Dum reliquae nāvēs convenīrent in ancorīs exspectāvit.

He waited at anchor until the rest of the ships should come together, or for the rest of the ships to come together.

a. Note that when the act is thought of as an actual fact (see the first sentence) the indicative is used after **antequam**, **priusquam**, and **dum**, *until*.

b. Note that when the act is thought of merely as something contemplated or in prospect but not as a fact the subjunctive is used (see last three sentences). Such a subjunctive is sometimes called the anticipatory subjunctive.

c. Note in the third sentence that the act looked forward to is regarded as something to be forestalled and prevented and does not take place. Note that in the fourth sentence an idea of purpose is combined with that of time; cf. 167, 11, *b*.

363. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium,

summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, **iūstitiam**, **temperantiam** cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius **suppliciō** Diviciāci **animum offendat verētur**. Itaque priusquam quicquam **cōnētur**, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānis **interpretibus** remōtis per **C. Valerium Troucillum**, prīncipem Galliae **prōvinciae**, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habet, cum eō conloquitur:

364. 1. **repūgnābat**: (a) the subject is **ūnum**, *one thing*. (b) The preceding **rēbus** is a dative of indirect object.

2. **cōgnōverat**: (a) has the force of an imperfect since the perfect has the force of a present; see General Vocabulary, and cf. **ōdisse** 352. (b) Note the omission of the conjunction between the objects **studium**, **voluntātem**, **fidem**, **iūstitiam**, **temperantiam**; so often in series of three or more; but the conjunction may be expressed between all; cf. **removērī et incitārī et cōstitui** 196. What is the English practice in such cases? (c) **quod . . . cōgnōverat** is in apposition with **ūnum** in the preceding clause; *the fact that he knew*, etc.

3. **ēius**: the antecedent is **Dumnorix**.

4. **nē animum offendat verētur**, *he is afraid that he will hurt the feelings*; for use, cf. 361, above.

5. **cotīdiānis**, *usual, regular*.

6. **cui . . . habēbat**: *roughly, to whom he was having the highest confidence of all things, more freely, in whom he had the greatest confidence respecting everything*.

7. **eō**: the antecedent is **Diviciācum**, three lines above.

365.

VOCABULARY

iūstitia, *justice, sense of justice*.

prōvincia, *a province, i.e. a territory governed by a magistrate sent from Rome; in the Gallic War the name is applied especially to that part of Trans-*

alpine Gaul which had been conquered by the Romans long before Caesar's time; this part of France is now called Provence.

temperantia (**temperāre**, *to re-*

strain one's self), self-control, temperance.

animus, soul, mind, feelings, disposition, spirit, courage.

supplicium, a kneeling, punishment, usually of death, because criminals were beheaded while kneeling.

Troucillus, Caius Valerius Troucillus, a prominent Gaul of "the province" (see **prōvincia**), who had received Roman citizenship.

Valerius, a Roman name.

interpres, -etis, an interpreter.

ēgregius (**grex**, herd), exceptional, choice, excellent.

cōnārī, to try, undertake.

repugnāre, to fight back, resist, be opposed, be repugnant.

verērī, **veritus**, to feel awe of, fear.

offendere, -fendit, -fēsus, to hit against, stumble, hurt, offend.

praeterire, -iit, -itus, to go by, pass over, neglect; **praeterita**, things gone by, the past.

366.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Caesar will try everything (all things) before he hurts the feelings of Diviciacus. 2. May he not pass over the name of Valerius. 3. He was afraid that you would lose hope (despair). 4. He is afraid that Caesar will not favor him (**eī**). 5. His sister has gone to marry Troucillus. 6. Let not any one lessen my influence. 7. He was a man of exceptional self-control. 8. We have the interpreter brought. 9. Although punishment was certain, you entertained the hope of seizing the royal power. 10. Without the king's order his wife resisted. 11. Let justice be done to all.

367.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He is afraid that the former honor which he secured by that relationship will not be restored. 2. He will cross (**trānsire**) these boundaries before the Sequanians can know that he has led an army across that river. 3. We do not doubt that you will so form (**inire**) plans that the cavalry battle will¹ be successful (**secundus**). 4. May they go to the Helvetian country before Dumnorix makes a beginning of his conspiracy. 5. Though

¹ Not indicative. What kind of a clause is this?

you hate me and have tried without my knowledge (ablative absolute) to disturb the Roman province, because of (your) brother's good will and justice I shall not punish you.

LESSON LXV

CONJUGATION OF **Velle, Nōlle, Mālle**. NEGATIVE PURPOSE.

368. Learn from 440 the conjugation of the three irregular verbs above with attention especially to the following points: (a) the base of the verb **velle** varies between **vol-**, **vul-**, **vel-**, and **vī** (see 2d person singular present tense). (b) **Nōlō** is compounded of **nōn** and **volō** (a fact which appears from three forms of the present indicative) and **mālō** from **magis**, *more*, and **volō**. (c) The present indicative, as in other irregular verbs, has some special peculiarities. (d) What is the difference in each between the present and imperfect subjunctive? Compare the same tenses of **posse**. (e) Which is the only verb having an imperative?

369. Simul **commonefacit** quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae **sēparātīm quisque** dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius **offēnsiōne** animī **vel** ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā **statuat** vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus, multīs cum **lacrīmīs** Caesarem **complexus, obsecrāre** coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statuaret.

370. 1. **quae**: the antecedent is **ea**, understood.

2. **ipsō**: refers to Diviciacus, not Caesar.

3. **sint dicta**: subjunctive, because of the idea of saying in **commonefacit**; cf. 230, 3.

4. **dē eō apud sē**, concerning *Dumnorix* in his (i.e. Caesar's) presence; for **apud**, see 324.

5. **ēius** : refers to Diviciacus and depends on **animī** ; for meaning of **ēius offēnsiōne animī**, cf. **nē Diviciāci animum offendat** 364, 4.

6. **ipae** : refers to Caesar.

7. **quid gravius**, *anything too severe*, i.e. *death* ; for **quid**, cf. 357 ; for **gravius**, cf. 119, 2, *d* and *e*.

8. **nē . . . statueret** : (*a*) a negative substantive clause of will, object of **obsecrāre** ; cf. 131, 2 and 208, 4. (*b*) For **nē** introducing clauses of wish, cf. 361. (*c*) **nē** (not **ut nōn**) is also used to introduce negative purpose clauses ; thus, **Sēcrētō cum Diviciācō Caesar conloquitur nē ēius animum offendat**, *in private Caesar talks with Diviciacus so that he may not hurt his feelings*. Note that such a clause is adverbial, not substantive. (*d*) For positive subjunctive purpose clause, see 113, 2 ; for various ways of expressing purpose, see 268, 2.

371.

VOCABULARY

lacrima, *a tear*.

offēnsiō (**offendere**), *a striking against, stumbling, offense*.

quisque, quidque, gen. cūiusque,
dat. **cuique**, etc., *each, each one, every one, everything* ; adj. form
quisque, quaeque, quodque ;
cf. **quis, quisquam**, and **aliquis**.

obsecrāre, *to beseech, implore*.

agere, ēgit, āctus, *to set in motion, drive, act, do, discuss*.

commonefaciō,¹ **-facere, -fēcit** ;
pass. **commonefīō**² (**com-**

monēre), *to call to mind, remind, admonish*.

complectī, -plexus, *to embrace*.

loquī, locūtus, *to speak, talk*.

pōnere, posuit, positus, *to put, place, set* ; **castra pōnere**, *to pitch a camp*.

statuere, statuit, statūtus, *to cause to stand, set, fix, decide, determine*.

vel, conj., or ; **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or* ; as adv., *even* ; cf. **aut**.

iam, *now, already, at length*.

sēparātīm, adv., *apart, separately*.

¹ Note that compounds of **faciō** with prepositions change **a** of **faciō** to **i** and throw back accent, while compounds of **faciō** with other words retain **a** and keep the accent on **faciō** ; thus, **in-ter'-fi-cit**, but **com-mo-ne-fa'-cit**.

² But compounds of **facere** with prepositions thus : **interficiōr**.

372.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. What do you want? 2. Why (*quā rē*) were you unwilling to speak or act? 3. You preferred to act separately. 4. Let us be willing to pass over his fault. 5. He did not keep Diviciacus from embracing¹ him. 6. The tears of his friend moved Caesar greatly. 7. The wounding of his feelings was repugnant to Caesar's hope. 8. I quickly advance without the general's order, so that they may not try to disturb the province. 9. He takes care (*ocurrere*) that they may not know that a sure beginning is being made. 10. I shall be reminded of everything.

373.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. At length I had pitched my camp on a hill which was near the borders of the province in-such-a-way (so) that the enemy did not wish to attack me. 2. When an interpreter had been called, we besought Caesar not to decide about the punishment of Dumnorix immediately (*statim*). 3. Everybody thinks that he should be blamed (*accusare*) because he led the Helvetians across the river without Caesar's knowledge. 4. Though Dumnorix was very reckless (*improbus*) and desirous of the royal power, his brother was a man of exceptional moderation and sense of justice. 5. If any one despairs because of the unsuccessful cavalry battle, I shall beseech him not to be afraid.

 LESSON LXVI

REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THE INDIRECTLY QUOTED IMPERATIVE. PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS.

The passage below, because of its variety in persons and tenses, excellently illustrates indirect discourse. To make it perfectly clear the direct form is given on the left of the page, the indirect exactly opposite on the

¹ See 187, 6 and 328, 6.

right; all words changed are underlined. Study and explain each one of these changes, referring for principal, declarative verbs to 145, for subordinate verbs and use of the reflexive to 230, 1, 3. For Sequence of Tenses, cf. 294, remembering that these words are quoted after **Diviciānus obsecrāre coepit**. Compare also indirect discourse in 327.

374.

Sciō — haec esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grā-tiam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī com-moveor. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē — — tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur.

Scīre sē illa esse vĕra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter **adulēscēntiam** posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus **opibus** ac **nervīs** nōn solum ad **minuendam** grā-tiam sed **paene** ad **perniciem** suam ūterētur; sēsē tamen et **amōre** frāternō et **exīstimātiōne** vulgī **com-movērī**. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum **amī-citiae** apud eum teneret, nēmīnem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

375. 1. **sē**: in the direct form the personal ending -ō in **sciō** expresses the person sufficiently, but **scīre** has no personal ending.

2. **ex eō**, *from that fact*, i.e. the behavior of Dumnorix.

3. **plūs dolōris** : for construction, cf. 266, 5.

4. **domī**, *at home*; not a genitive, but a case denoting the place where, called the LOCATIVE. In the singular of the 1st and 2d declensions its endings are the same as those of the genitive. Cf. 345, 5.

5. **posset** : (a) limited by both **plūrimum** and **minimum**, for force of which with this verb, cf. 328, 3. (b) The subject **ille** refers to Dumnorix.

6. **ad minuendam grātiām** : for use, cf. 224, 8.

7. **ego**, in the direct form : expressed because emphatic to emphasize the contrast between Diviciacus and his brother.

8. **commoveor** : (a) 1st person singular of the present indicative passive of the 2d conjugation. (b) Learn carefully from 432-435 the present indicative passive of all the conjugations, noting carefully the personal endings. Note also the vowel before the personal ending in the 2d person singular of the 3d conjugation. What two conjugations have the 1st personal ending -o-r?

9. **quod sī** : **quod** is a relative pronoun referring to the fact just mentioned in the preceding sentence. It is used adverbially, *as to which if*; *freely, but or now if*.

10. **quid** : cf. 356, 1.

11. **acciderit** : a future perfect indicative, but may be idiomatically translated *happens*; 286, 1.

12. **teneam** : combines the idea of time and cause; cf. 316, N. 9, c.

13. **factum** : **esse** understood ; *it was done, it came about*.

14. **āvertentur** : note the roundabout way of quoting this verb ; the Romans avoided the use of the future passive infinitive (a peculiar form) by using the future infinitive of **esse** with an **ut** clause as its subject.

376. Review the present imperative active in all four conjugations. Observe the change made in the imperative that follows after a verb of saying : —

Dēsillīte, leap down.

Dixit dēsillīrent, he said, let them leap down.¹

To what mode is the imperative changed when indirectly quoted after a verb of saying? Compare with the subordinate verb 230, 3, and interrogative verb 288, 9, b.

377.

VOCABULARY

adulēscētia, youth.

amīcītia (amīcus, friend), friend-ship.

nervus, a sinew, muscle, cord, nerve, force, strength.

vulgus, 2d decl., neut. by exception, the crowd, the masses, the multitude, the rabble.

amor, love, desire, longing; cf. amīcītia.

dolor, a pain, ache; suffering, grief, sorrow.

existimātiō (existimāre), judgment, opinion, reputation.

(ops),² not found in nom. and dat. sing., *help, aid*; in plur., *means, resources, property.*

perniciēs, -ēī, destruction, ruin.

commovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, to move violently or deeply, disturb, disquiet.

minuere, minuit, minūtus (minus), to lessen, diminish.

paene, adv., almost.

378.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. You (plural) are deeply moved by the tears of the interpreter, Valerius Troucillus. 2. May he not diminish the friendship of Caesar. 3. We fear that Caesar will hurt his feelings. 4. I am reminded by each one separately. 5. He will go quickly so that they may not pitch their camp in the province. 6. I am trying to attack them before they decide what to do (*agere*). 7. You (singular) are speaking of the pain in (your) limbs (*membrum*). 8. Beseech Caesar to pass over the conspiracy of Dum-

¹ Or *they were to leap down* or *they must leap down*. The translation of an indirectly quoted imperative is necessarily somewhat vague and ambiguous.

² All the 3d declension nouns in this Lesson are perfectly regular; if you have forgotten the declension of any, look up sample nouns in 415-417; if the gender, see 298.

norix. 9. Quote sentence 8 after *dicit*. 10. The resources of the excellent Diviciacus are becoming (*flerī*) greater because of his justice and self-control. 11. Hurting (*offēnsiō*) the feelings usually lessens love. 12. Why (*quā rē*) have you had (*ōūrāre*) the interpreter called? 13. Quote the above after *obsecrat*.

379.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. Caesar said he had embraced Diviciacus because of the love which Diviciacus had always (*semper*) shown toward himself. 2. Diviciacus fears the judgment of the multitude because by its favor (*grātia*) it can increase the strength of Dumnorix and bring-about (*efficere*) his own destruction. 3. We are afraid that neither the good will (*voluntās*) of Diviciacus nor the youth of Dumnorix will abate (*remittere*) the punishment of the latter (*hic*). 4. May they either resist or beg their neighbors to drive away the enemy. 5. Put (singular) the garrisons in the places which have been already almost captured. 6. Quote the last sentence after *dixerunt*.



LESSON LXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE, COMPLETE, ALL CONJUGATIONS.

380. Learn from 432-435 the whole of the passive voice, all conjugations. Note that (*a*) the personal endings in the present system throughout are the same as in the present tense;¹ (*b*) the verb *esse*² is used in forming the perfect tenses; (*c*) the present imperative passive singular is like the present infinitive active; (*d*) the following forms are peculiar: the 2d person singular future indicative 1st and 2d conjugations (*e.g.* *parāberis*), the 2d

¹ The most recent books give only *-ris* in the 2d person singular of the present indicative; elsewhere *-ris* or *-re*. But *-re* is more common in the future.

² Review this verb in 431.

person singular present indicative 3d conjugation (*e.g. dūceris*), the 1st person singular future indicative of the 3d and 4th conjugations (*e.g. dūcar*). In what are they peculiar?

381. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit utī et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigi cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scīre possit.

382. 1. *flēns*: for form and use, see 203; study carefully the parts of this verb in 383. How does it differ from other 2d conjugation verbs? In what respects is it like 1st conjugation verbs?

2. *peteret*: (a) for mode, cf. 208, 5. (b) For use of *verbis*, cf. 192, 7. (c) What is the object of *peteret*?

3. *faciat*: for use, cf. 133, 4.

4. *ostendit*: (a) the preceding *apud sē* means *with him* in the sense, *in his estimation*. (b) The preceding genitive *tantī* is a predicate after *esse*; *is of so much, is of so much worth, is worth so much*. (c) Study *is*, *sē*, and *suus* as they occur in this Lesson, in the light of 219, 7, and 230, 1, 10.

5. *rei pūblicae*: for force of this phrase, see *pūblicus* 204.

6. *condōnet*: (a) for mode, see 167, 9. (b) For tense, see 294. (c) The preceding datives *voluntātī* and *precibus*, though simple indirect objects with this verb of giving, may be well translated *for the sake of*.

7. *reprehendat*: for mode, cf. 288, 9.

8. *in reliquum tempus*, *for the rest of the time, for the future*.

9. *praeterita*: (a) for form, cf. 360, 365. (b) It is an accusative plural neuter, *bygone things, bygones, the past*.

383.

VOCABULARY

iniūria (in negative and **iūs, iūris**, right), *wrong, injustice, outrage.*

verbum, *a word.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, *a guard, keeper.*

dexter, -tera, -terum, or -tra, -trum (for decl., see **noster** 420), *on the right side, the right*; comp. **dexterior**, superl. **dextimus**; **dextera** or **dextra**, with **manus** understood, *the right hand*, often used as a pledge of friendship.

condōnāre, *to give up, sacrifice, remit, pardon, condone.*

cōnsōlārī, *to comfort, console.*

ōrāre, *to treat, entreat, beg.*

rogāre, *to ask*; for const. with

ōrāre and **rogāre**, cf. 311, 1.

vītāre, *to avoid, shun.*

adhibēre, -hibuit, -hibitus, *to hold to, summon, apply, employ.*

flēre, flēvit, flētus, *to weep*; for parts, cf. **complēre**, and 382, 1.

prēndere (or uncontracted **prehendere**), **prēndit, prēnsus**, *to grasp, catch, hold*; cf. Eng. *prehensile*.

reprehendere (*to hold back*), *to blame, reprehend.*

384.

ORAL EXERCISE

1. Let us not be disturbed by the words of the rabble. 2. The guard's right hand was grasped by me. 3. We begged them to pardon the wrong. 4. You do not wish to ask us for aid (**ops**). 5. May you prefer to avoid hurting (**offēnsiō**) my feelings. 6. We shall be blamed if we diminish the power of all good men (each best man). 7. You entreated me not to weep. 8. Console the guard for (**dē**) the destruction of his property. 9. I had applied myself to these pursuits (**studium**). 10. His youth is shown by his tears.

385.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. He says he was reminded of those whose esteem he considered worth so much (N. 4, *b*). 2. What shall we do, if he shall at length place troops of cavalry in the province? 3. He said let them decide¹ what they would do if he should at length place troops of cavalry in the province. 4. Speak either with each leader separately or with all in a body (**ūniversus**), so that they

¹ Indirectly quoted imperative.

may not heedlessly increase the sorrow of Diviciacus, whom love for his brother almost brought to destruction. 5. He waited until Caesar showed his friendship, fearing that Caesar would not embrace him.

LESSON LXVIII

REVIEW OF LESSONS LV.-LXVII.

386.

REVIEW OF TEXT

Caesar's Gallic War, Book I., Chapters 16-20. Review as directed in 250. Make a special study of the indirect discourse. For this, these chapters are particularly valuable. Be able to give all indirectly quoted discourse in the direct form, and to explain all the changes of mode, tense, pronouns, etc., in passing from the direct to the indirect form.

387.

GRAMMAR REVIEW

FORMS

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Third declension nouns in -men, 311, 4, 415.</p> <p>2. Declension of ego and tū, 323, 426.</p> <p>3. Present indicative active, all persons and conjugations, 322, 432-435.</p> <p>4. Perfect indicative active, all persons and conjugations, 328, 20, 432-435.</p> <p>5. First conjugation active, all persons, 334, 432.</p> <p>6. Second conjugation active, all persons, 340, 433.</p> <p>7. Third and fourth conjugations active, all persons, 351, 434, 435.</p> | <p>8. Present indicative passive, all persons and conjugations, 375, 8, 432-435.</p> <p>9. Passive voice, all persons and conjugations, 380, 432-435.</p> <p>10. Participles of 'deponent verbs, 339, 7.</p> <p>11. The irregular verbs esse and posse, all persons, 345, 9, 431, 438.</p> <p>12. The irregular verb feri, 356, 10, c, d, 437.</p> <p>13. The irregular verb ire, 360, 439.</p> <p>14. The irregular verbs velle, nolle, maile, 368, 440.</p> |
|--|--|

SYNTAX

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Two accusatives with Verbs of Asking and Teaching, 311, 1.
2. Ablative of Quality, 339, 2.
3. Construction after <i>ubi</i> , <i>postquam</i> , <i>simul atque</i> , 316, 3.
4. Causal and concessive use of <i>cum</i> , 316, 9, c.
5. Construction after <i>quān</i> , 328, 14.
6. Subjunctive of Wish (Optative), 361. | 7. Construction with Verbs of Fearing, 361.
8. Construction after <i>dum</i> , <i>un-til</i> , <i>antequam</i> , and <i>priusquam</i> , 362.
9. Negative Purpose clauses, 370, 8, c.
10. Indirectly quoted imperatives, 376.
11. Review of indirect discourse, 327, 328, 374, 375. |
|---|--|

388.

WORD REVIEW

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

adulēscētia 66	grātia 60	lacrima 65	temperantia 64
amicitia 66	iniūria 67	potentia 61	vita 57
audācia 60	iūstitia 64	prōvincia 64	

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

animus 64	initium 63	pretium 60	Valerius 64
concilium 59	Liscus 57	Troucillus 64	verbum 67
Diviciācus 59	nervus 66	rēgnum 63	vergobretus 57
frāter 59	pābulum 55	Sēquanī 63	vulgus 66
Haeduī 55	portōrium 60	supplicium 64	

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

annuus 57	dexter 67	Helvētius 62	sēditiosus 58
antiquus 62	ēgregius 64	improbus 58	sōlus 59
certus 63	frāternus 59	necessarius 56	vērus 60
cupidus 60			

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

adfinitās 62	cūstōs 67	finis 63	interpres 64
amor 66	dolor 66	flūmen 55	liberālītās 60
Arar (Araris) 55	Dumnorīx 59	frīgus 55	libertās 58
Biturīgēs 61	existimātiō 66	honor 62	māter 61

nex 57	(ops) 66	potestās 57	uxor 62
nōmen 62	ōrātiō 57	prex 56	vectīgal 60
offēnsiō 65	plēbs 58	soror 62	voluntās 62

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

equester 63	īnsciēns 63	nōbilis 61	praesēns 59
familiāris 61			

FOURTH DECLENSION NOUNS

conventus 59	magistrātus 57	prīncipātus 58	sūmptus 61
(iniussus) 63			

FIFTH DECLENSION NOUNS

perniciēs 66	spēs 63
--------------	---------

PRONOUNS

quis (indef.) 63	quisque 65
------------------	------------

VERBS

First Conjugation

accūsāre 56	creāre 57	ēnūntiāre 56	ōrāre 67
comportāre 55	cūrāre 63	flāgitāre 55	repūgnāre 64
cōnārī 64	dēsīgnāre 59	iactāre 59	rogāre 67
condōnāre 67	dēspērāre 63	īnstāre 56	sublevāre 56
cōnsōlārī 67	dubitāre 58	obsecrāre 65	vītāre 67

Second Conjugation

adhibēre 67	commovēre 66	flēre 67	tacēre 57
augēre 61	dēbēre 58	licērī 60	valēre 58
coērcēre 58	dētērrēre 58	obtinēre 58	verērī 64
	favēre 62	retinēre 59	

Third Conjugation

agere 65	dēstituere 56	pōnere 65	subvehere 55
alere 61	emere 56	prēndere 67	sūmere 56
āvertere 55	ēripere 58	prōpōnere 57	suppetere 55
commonefacere 65	loquī 65	quaerere 59	suscipere 56
complectī 65	minuere 66	redimere 60	trādūcere 63
crēscere 61	nūbere 62	reprehendere 67	
cupere 60	ōdisse 62	restituere 62	
dēminuere 62	offendere 64	statuere 65	

Fourth Conjugation

largīrī 61	mētīrī 56	scīre 63	sentīre 59
------------	-----------	----------	------------

Irregular

adesse 55	nōlle 55	praeēsse 59	praeterīre 64
-----------	----------	-------------	---------------

CONJUNCTIONS

quīn 58	vel 65
---------	--------

PREPOSITION

apud 57

ADVERBS

anteā 57	largiter 61	privātim 58	semper 61
dēmum 57	liberē 59	propterea 60	sēparātīm 65
iam 65	multō (multum) 56	pūblicē 55	sōlum 59
illic 61	paene 66	quidem 55	tam 56
	praesertim 56	sēcrētō 60	

EXERCISES

Containing all the 177 new words in Lessons LV.-LXVII., and illustrating all the rules of Syntax explained in these Lessons.

389. 1. Prōposuī Dumnorīgēm nōbilem apud plēbem grātiam suam multum augēre cōnātūrum priusquam magistrātūs sē dēterēre vellent. 2. Ēgregiīs equitibus praeēsse vult nē quis ā sē principātum ēripere possit. 3. Nōn iam dubitāvimus quīn Dumnorix Caesaris iniussū sine supplicī timōre liberē ageret. 4. Cum vergobretus Haeduōrum nōn creātus sit, tamen vectigālībus anteā redēptīs plūs potentiae quā Dīviciācus, quī vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, obtinet. 5. Tū privātim plūs potes quam ego, cūius nervōs seditiōsā ōrātiōe dēmum minuiistī. 6. Cum Liscum nōmen flūminis rogāvisset, ille dixit id semper Ararim appellātum esse. 7. Dumnorix Rōmānōs ōdit propterea quod Helvētiōs coērcent, quibus ipse favet. 8. Caesar ubi scīvit quantam iniūriam Dumnorix illic cōnfēcisset, verēbātur nē dēstituerētur. 9. Liscus pūblicē reprehēnsus in conventū ēnūntiāvit quendam principem rēgnī prēndendī causā paene ad perniciem rem pū-

blicam dūcere. 10. Dē audāciā quā Dumnorix portōria ēmit sēcrētō commonefimus. 11. Caesar Valeriō Troucillō interprete praesente magistrātui prōposuit quid quisque sēparātīm dē ēius frātre sēnsisset. 12. Tē multis lacrimis obsecrāvi nē amōre frāternō tam graviter commovērēris ut nōn in eum animadvertere posses. 13. Diviciācus est tantā iūstitiā voluntāteque ut offēnsiōnem ēius animi vitāre cupiam, praesertim cum apud Gallōs largiter valeat et mē sublevāre multum possit. 14. Multis precibus orāvistī nē accūsārem et dēsīgnārem eum quī honōrem Caesaris dēminueret et contrā illum suspiciōnēs vulgī aleret.

390.

ORAL EXERCISE

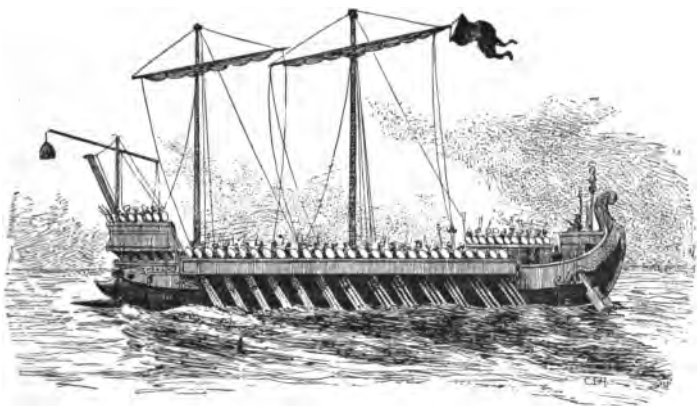
1. His mother and sister had married Sequanians. 2. You ought to be much more powerful on account of their friendship. 3. While the vergobret did not know (it), he had the Helvetians led across. 4. He says they will carry up their private property by the river. 5. May he either pass over or pardon the former wicked conspiracy. 6. You (plural) not only asked but even demanded fodder. 7. You (plural) do not wish to be present in the council of the Biturigians. 8. The necessary grain ought to be measured out by the guards. 9. A man of excellent self-control can be silent (though) offended. 10. It is certain that his words are true. 11. On account of his hope of liberty he alone took upon himself that expense. 12. After embracing him he wept. 13. Because of this relationship-by-marriage he decides to retain the friendship of the Helvetians. 14. He begs him to speak with his wife concerning that territory. 15. On account of his youth his judgment ought not to be followed. 16. When he grows (in power), he will restore his brother. 17. He says they take up and keep hurling the weapons. 18. He said the grain was not reaped on account of the cold.

391.

WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. At the very beginning of the cavalry battle our men eagerly press on so that the Helvetians may turn away their line-of-march

from the province. 2. He gives lavishly because no one has bid against him and he has annually bought up the revenues at a small price. 3. Bring together your wealth so that the soldiers may not despair, when they see (316, 9, c) your liberality and know that plenty of grain and arms will be on hand. 4. He says let them bring together their wealth that the soldiers may resist boldly. 5. Seizing his right hand, Caesar consoles him for his sorrow and summons his brother before he runs away (362).



A ROMAN WAR SHIP

THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

GALLIC WAR, Book V., Chapters 1-23 (with omissions)

392. 1. **L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus**,¹ discē-
dēns ab hibernīs Caesar in **Ītaliā**, ut² **quotannīs**
facere cōsuērat,³ **lēgātīs** imperat⁴ quōs **legiōnibus**
praefēcerat⁵ utī quam plūrimās possint⁶ hieme nāvis
5 **aedificandās veterēsque** reficiendās cūrent.⁷ Eārum
modum **fōrmamque** dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem **one-**
randī subductiōnēsque paulō facit **humiliōrēs**⁸ quam⁹
quibus in nostrō marī¹⁰ utī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō
magis,¹¹ quod propter **crēbrās commūtātiōnēs** aestuum
10 minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera ac
multitūdinem **iūmentōrum** trānsportandam paulō **lāti-**
ōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās
omnis **actuāriās** imperat fierī,¹² quam ad rem multum
humilitās adiuuat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās
15 nāvis ex **Hispaniā** **apportārī** iubet.

* * * * *

392. 1. **cōsulibus**: in the ab-
lative absolute with the preceding
proper names; *Lucius Pomitius and*
Appius Claudius being consuls, better,
in the consulship of Lucius Domitius
and Appius Claudius; two nouns may
be in the ablative absolute construc-
tion as well as a noun and a participle.
2. **ut**: meaning *as* or *when*, as
here, takes the indicative, not the
subjunctive.

3. **cōsuērat**: for full form, cf.
comparāsse 345, 3, *a*; for force of
the pluperfect form in this word, see
81, and 364, 2, *a*.

4. **lēgātīs imperat**: *he gives*
commands to the lieutenants, com-
mands the lieutenants.

5. **praefēcerat**: for preceding
legiōnibus, cf. 235, 5.

6. **quam plūrimās possint**: be-
fore this expression understand **tam**

multās, and translate literally, *so many ships as the most they are able; freely, the largest possible number of ships*. For mode of **possint**, cf. 230, 3.

7. **cūrent**: for use of this word with the preceding gerundive, cf. 356, 17.

8. **paulō humiliōrēs**: for irregular superlative of **humiliōrēs**, see 424, 2; **humiliōrēs** agrees with **eās** understood; for use of **paulō**, cf. 273, 1.

9. **quam**: *than*; after this word understand **eae sunt**.

10. **nostrō marī** = **Rōmānō marī**, i.e. the Mediterranean.

11. **id eō magis (facit)**: *this he does the more on this account*; for ablative of cause with comparative and **quod**-clause, cf. 257, 4; for comparison of **magis**, see 424, 5.

12. **imperat fierī**: **imperat** sometimes takes a passive infinitive. What construction does it usually take after it? Cf. lines 3-5 of this chapter and 133, 4. What follows **iubere**? See the next sentence.

393. 2. **Hīs cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque**¹ **per-**
actīs, in **citeriōrem Galliam** revertitur atque inde ad
exercitum proficiscitur. **Eō** cum **vēnisset**, **circumitīs**
omnibus hibernīs, singulārī militum studiō in summā
5 omnium rērum **inopiā** circiter **sexcentās** ēius generis
cūius² **suprā dēmōnstrāvimus** **nāvis** et longās octō et
vīgintī invēnit instructās³ neque multum **abesse** ab
eō, quā paucīs diēbus **dēdūcī** possint.⁴ **Conlaudātīs**
militibus atque iīs quī **negōtīō** praefuerant, quid fierī
10 velit ostendit atque omnēs ad portum **Itium** convenīre
iubet, quō ex portū **commodissimum** in Britanniam
trāiectum esse cōgnōverat circiter milium⁵ passuum
trīgintā ā continentī.

* * * * *

393. 1. **conventibus**: referring here to the courts which Caesar had been holding in Illyricum (east of the Adriatic), which was under his jurisdiction. A Roman provincial governor united in himself the duties of a civil ruler, a general, and a judge. The last function was discharged in the winter, as far as possible.

2. **cūius**: supply **generis nāvis**; **nāvis** being the object of **dēmōnstrāvimus**, *we have described*. For the fact referred to, see Chapter 1.

3. **instructās**: supply **esse**, forming the perfect passive infinitive; cf. 224, 3, *b*.

4. **possint**: the preceding **abesse** is impersonal, and **eō** is explained

by the **quān**-clause that follows it; it was not far distant from this, that they could be launched within a few days; freely, they are almost ready to be launched in a few days. Cf. 328, 14, b.
 5. **mīlium**: depends upon **trā-lectum**.

394. 5. Hīs rēbus cōstitūtis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit **sexāgintā** nāvis, quae in **Meldīs** factae erant, tempestāte **rēlectās** cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae
 5 revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum¹ atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milia **quattuor**,² principēsque ex omnibus cīvitatibus; ex quibus **perpaucōs**,³ quōrum in sē fidem⁴ perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs
 10 obsidum locō⁵ sēcum dūcere **dēcrēverat**, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

394. 1. **parātās ad nāvigandum**: cf. **idōneam ad nāvigandum** 158.

2. **numerō milia quattuor**: *four thousand in number*; the ablative here tells in what respect a thing is true, and is called the ablative of RESPECT (SPECIFICATION); a better example would be **virtūte reliquīs praestat**, *in valor he surpasses the rest*. How does this use of the abla-

tive differ from that in 12, 3? **mīlia** is in apposition with **equitātus**.

3. **ex quibus perpaucōs**: for meaning, cf. **ex reliquīs duās** 168, 12.

4. **in sē fidem**: *loyalty to himself*; **sē** is accusative; cf. **in populum Rōmānum studium** 363.

5. **obsidum locō**: *in the place of hostages, as hostages*; with **locō**, **in** may be omitted.

395. 6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est.¹ Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs² cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī,³ māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat⁴ sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitatīs dēferri; quod dictum⁵ Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque

recūsandī aut **dēprecandī** causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis **hospitibus** Caesar
 10 cōgnōverat. Ille⁶ omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, **partim** quod **īnsuētus** nāvigandī⁷ mare **timēret**, partim quod **religiōnibus** impediri sēsē diceret.⁸ **Posteāquam** id **obstinātē** sibi **negārī** vidit, omnī spē **impetrandī adēptā**, principēs Galliae
 15 **sollicitāre**, **sēvocāre singulōs** hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; **metū territāre**⁹: nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī **nōbilitāte spoliārētur**¹⁰; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in **cōnspectū** Galliae interficere verērētur,¹¹ hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs **necāret**;
 20 fidem reliquīs interpōnere,¹² **iūs iūrandum** **poscere** ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, **commūnī** cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

395. 1. **dictum est**: cf. 246, 1.

2. **in primīs**: adverbial phrase, among the first, especially, most of all.

3. **māgnī animī**: (a man) of great spirit; genitive of quality or description; cf. the similar use of the ablative, 339, 2.

4. **accēdēbat quod Dumnorīx dīxerat**: the fact that Dumnorix had said was added, freely, moreover Dumnorix had said; cf. comment on a similar clause in 356, 16.

5. **dictum**: saying; the participial form has here become a noun, as often; see **factum**, action, fact, two lines below.

6. **ille**: used here, as often, to change the subject in passing to a new sentence; **Caesar** is the subject of the last sentence, **Dumnorīx** of

this, and **ille** should be translated by naming its antecedent, **Dumnorīx**.

7. **īnsuētus nāvigandī**: unused to sailing; many adjectives of knowledge and ignorance take the genitive, often where our English idiom would suggest some other construction; cf. 139, 4, and 339, 4, c.

8. **quod . . . dīceret**: we might expect **quod (ut dīcēbat) impedīrētur**, because, as he said, he was detained.

9. **territāre**: a peculiar and somewhat rare use of the infinitive called the HISTORICAL infinitive; it is translated like an imperfect indicative and its subject if expressed is a nominative; *he alarmed them by fear*.

10. **spoliārētur**: for case of preceding **nōbilitāte**, cf. 187, 5.

11. **interficere verērētur**: a verb of fearing here, as often, takes a complementary infinitive (77, *e*).

When does it take a subjunctive? Cf. 361.

12. **fidem reliquīs interpōnere**: *he pledged his word to the rest*; historical infinitive.

396. 7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvītātī Haeduae dīgnitātis¹ tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque² rēbus posset Dumnorīgē statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, 5 prōspiciendum³ nē quid⁴ sibi ac rei pūblicae nocēre⁵ posset. Itaque diēs⁶ circiter quīnque et vīgintī in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvīgatiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locis flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgē 10 continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem milītēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus 15 postpositis, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat⁷; sī vim faciat⁸ neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō⁹ factūrum arbitrātus quī praesentis¹⁰ imperium neglēxisset. Ille¹¹ autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem¹² implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvītātis. Illi,¹¹ ut erat imperātum,¹³ circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

396. 1. tantum . . . dīgnitātis: cf. 266.

2. quibuscumque: nominative quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

3. prōspiciendum (esse): follows statuēbat repeated from the preceding clause; for use, cf. 246, 2.

4. quid: cf. 357.

5. nocēre: the direct object is

quid, the indirect objects are **sibi** and **rei publicae**, *to do any harm to him (Caesar) and the republic*.

6. **diēs**: for use of case, cf. 288, 7.

7. **retrahī imperat**: cf. 392, 12.

8. **sī faciat**: for mode and tense, cf. 230, 3, and 294.

9. **prō sãnō**: *in place of a sane (man), as a sane (man)*.

10. **praesentis**, of him (Caesar) *present, when he was present*.

11. **ille** (and **illi** at beginning of next sentence): cf. 395, 6.

12. **fidem**: here, *protection*, as often; see Vocabulary.

13. **ut erat imperātum**: cf. 392, 2, and 246, 1.

397. 8. His rēbus gestīs, **Lablēnō** in continētī cum **tribus** legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relīctō, ut portūs **tuerētur** et rem **frūmentāriam** prōvidēret, quae-
que¹ in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō
5 tempore et prō rē² caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus
et **parī** numerō equitum quem³ in continētī relīquerat
ad sōlis occāsum⁴ nāvīs solvit, et lēnī **Āfricō** prōvectus
mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit
et longius dēlātus aestū **ortā, lūce sub sinistrā** Britan-
10 niam relictam cōspēxit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtā-
tīōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem insulae
caperet⁵ **quā**⁶ optimum esse **ēgressum** superiōre aestāte
cōgnōverat. Quā in rē **admodum** fuit mīlitum virtūs⁷
laudanda, quī **vectōriīs** gravibusque nāvigiīs⁸ nōn inter-
15 missō **rēmigandī labōre** longārum nāvium cursum **adae-**
quārunt. Accessum est⁹ ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus
merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis¹⁰ est
vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex **captīvīs** cōgnōvit, cum
māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium per-
20 territae, quae cum **annōtinīs prīvātisque**, quās suī quis-
que commodī¹¹ causā fēcerat, **amplius octingentae**¹² ūnō
erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in supe-
riōra loca **abdiderant**.

397. 1. **quaeque**: two words | which connects the preceding **prō-**
quae, *what things, what*, and **-que** | **vidēret** with the following **cōgnō-**

sceret; often it is not the word to which **-que** is attached that it connects, but the clause which it introduces.

2. **prō tempore et prō rē**: in accordance with the time and the circumstances; see Vocabulary under **rēs**.

3. **cum pari numerō quem**: with the same number which.

4. **ad sōlis occāsum**: at sunset, NOT here *toward the west*, as the context shows.

5. **caperet**: for translation of this verb here, cf. 219, 10.

6. **quā**: here a relative adverb, meaning *where*.

7. **virtūs**: note the derivation of this word from **vir**, *man*; here it

means that the soldiers stood to their task "man fashion." It may be translated, *stamina* or *pluck*.

8. **vectōriis gravibusque nāvīgīs**: ablative of means, or ablative absolute with concessive force, *though their vessels were for freight and heavily loaded (heavy)*.

9. **accessum est**: cf. 246, 1.

10. **hostis**: note the number. What number has usually been used, and with what difference in meaning? Cf. 30 and 31.

11. **commodī**: here a noun, *convenience*.

12. **amplius (quam) octingentae**: with **amplius** and some other adverbs **quam**, *than*, is to be understood.

398. 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiaē cōnsēdissent, cohortibus **decem** ad mare relictis et equitibus **trecentīs** quī praesidiō nāvibus¹ essent,² dē
5 tertiā vigiliā³ ad hostīs contendit, eō minus veritus⁴ nāvibus, quod⁵ in litore **mollī** atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. **Ātrium** praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia⁶ passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū⁷
10 atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. **Repulsī** ab equitātū sē in silvās⁸ abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem **domestici** bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante **praeparāverant**; nam
15 crēbris arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant **praelūsī**. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi⁹ prohibēbant. At milites

legiōnis septimae, **testūdine** factā et **aggere** ad mūnitiōnēs **adiectō**, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulserunt paucis **vulneribus acceptis**. Sed eōs **fugientēs** longius Caesar prōsequi **vetuit**, et quod loci nātūram **ignōrābat**, et quod māgnā parte diēi **consūptā** mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus¹⁰ relinqui volēbat.

398. 1. **praesidiō nāvibus**: cf. 197, 6.

2. **quī . . . essent**: for use of subjunctive, cf. 119, 5.

3. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *during or in the third watch*.

4. **veritus**: perfect participle from **verēri**; it has, however, the force of a present participle, *fearing*; the next word **nāvibus** is a dative, *for the ships*.

5. **eō . . . quod**: cf. 392, 11.

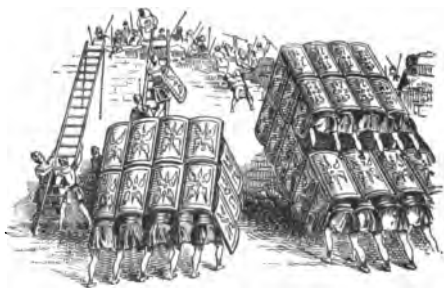
6. **mīlia**: for case, cf. 288, 7.

7. **equitātū**: *with the cavalry*; in accounts of military movements **cum** is sometimes omitted.

8. **in silvās**: the accusative because of the idea of motion in **abdidērunt**, *they put themselves off into the woods, they went into the woods and hid*.

9. **nostrōs ingredi**: for use here, cf. 187, 6.

10. **mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus**: *time for the fortifying of the camp*.



TESTŪDŌ

399. 10. **Postrīdiē** eius diēi¹ **māne tripertītō** milītēs equitēsque in **expeditiōnem** misit, ut eōs quī fūgerant **persequerentur**. His **aliquantum** itineris² prōgressis, cum iam **extrēmī** essent in **prōspectū**, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō
5 ad Caesarem vērunt quī nūntiārent³ superiōre nocte

māximā coörtā tempestāte prope omnīs nāvis adflīctās
 atque in litus ēlectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque
 sustinērent⁴ neque **nautae gubernātōrēs**que vim tem-
 pestātis **patī** possent: itaque ex eō **conkursū** nāvium
 10 māgnū esse **incommodum** acceptum.

399. 1. **postrīdiē ēius diēi**: *on-
 the-day-following as to (of) that day,
 on the day after that, the next day*;
 see Vocabulary for the derivation of
postrīdiē.

2. **aliquantum itineris**: for con-
 struction, cf. 266, and 173, 6, b.

3. **quī renūntiārent**: cf. 398, 2.

4. **sustinērent**: for mode, cf.
 230, 3.

400. 11. His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitā-
 tumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad
 nāvis revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat
cōram perspicit, **sīc** ut¹ āmissīs² circiter **quadrāgintā**
 5 nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidē-
 rentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus **fabrōs dēligit** et ex con-
 tinentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō **scribit** ut quam
 plūrimās possit³ iis legiōnibus⁴ quae sunt apud eum
 nāvis **īnstituāt**.⁵ Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae⁶ ac
 10 labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvis
 subdūcī⁷ et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne **coniungī**. In
 hīs rēbus circiter diēs decem cōnsūmit nē **nocturnīs**
 quidem⁸ temporibus ad labōrem⁹ militum intermissis.
 Subductīs nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis eāsdem
 15 cōpiās quās ante¹⁰ praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse
 eōdem unde **redierat** proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset,
 māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britan-
 nōrum convēnerant, **summā** imperī bellique admini-
 strandī commūnī cōnsiliō **permissā Cassivellaunō**,
 20 cūius fīnīs ā maritimīs cīvitatibus flūmen dīvidit, quod
 appellātur **Tamesis**,¹¹ ā marī circiter milia passuum
 octōgintā. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs civi-

tātibus continentia bella **intercesserant**; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque
25 praefēcerant.

400. 1. **sic ut**: *yet in such a condition that*; **sic** introduces a modification of the fact just stated—the wrecking of almost all the ships.

2. **āmissis**: the ablative absolute is here concessive—*though*.

3. **quam plūrimās possit**: for full form, cf. 392, 6.

4. **legiōnibus**: ablative of means; cf. 219, 2.

5. **scribit ut . . . instituat**: **scribit** is here a verb of urging, not one of saying—*he writes directing*; for syntax, cf. 133, 4.

6. **multae operae**: *although the matter was (one) of much pains*,

although the undertaking required much effort; the descriptive genitive (395, 3) is often found in the predicate.

7. **commodissimum . . . subdūcī**: *he decided that it was best for all the ships to be drawn up*.

8. **nē nocturnis quidem**: for meaning and emphasis, see Vocabulary under **quidem**.

9. **ad labōrem**: *in the work*.

10. **quās ante**: supply **reliquit**.

11. **Tamesis**: *the Thames*; like other names of rivers in **-is** it has the accusative in **-im**, the ablative in **-ī**; cf. **Araris** 312.

401. 12. Britanniae pars **interior** ab iis incolitur quōs
nātōs in insulā ipsī **memoriā** prōditum¹ dicunt; mari-
tima pars ab iis quī praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex
Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē² iis nōminibus civitā-
5 tum appellantur quibus ortī ex civitatibus eō pervenē-
runt³) et bellō inlātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs **colere**
coepērunt. Hominum⁴ est **infīnīta** multitudō crēberrima-
que aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, **pecorum** māgnus
numerus. Ūtuntur aut **nummō aureō** aut **tāleis ferreis**
10 ad certum **pondus exāminātis** prō nummō.⁵ Nāscitur⁶
ibi **plumbum album** in **mediterrāneis** regiōnibus, in
maritimis⁷ **ferrum**, sed ēius exigua est cōpia⁸; aere
ūtuntur **importātō**. Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in
Galliā, est praeter **fāgum** atque **abietem**. **Leporem**
15 et **gallīnam** et **ānserem** gustāre fās⁹ nōn putant;



REMAINS OF STONEHENGE, SUPPOSED TO BE A TEMPLE OF THE BRITONS

haec¹⁰ tamen alunt animi **voluptātisque** causā.¹¹ Loca sunt **temperātiōra** quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgōribus.¹²

401. 1. **quōs** . . . **prōditum**: **quōs** is the subject of the infinitive **nātōs** (*esse*), and **quōs nātōs esse** is the subject of **prōditum** (*esse*), *who they themselves say, according to tradition, were born on the island.*

2. **quī omnēs ferē**: *who almost all, almost all of whom*; note the difference between the Latin and English idiom.

3. **quibus** . . . **pervēnērunt**: *from which states having sprung they came thither, freely, from which they sprung and from which they came to Britain.*

4. **hominum**: *of men or of people*? See Vocabulary.

5. **prō nummō**: *in place of money, as money.*

6. **nāscitur**: *literally is born or produced*; translate *is found*.

7. **in maritimīs**: understand **regiōnibus**.

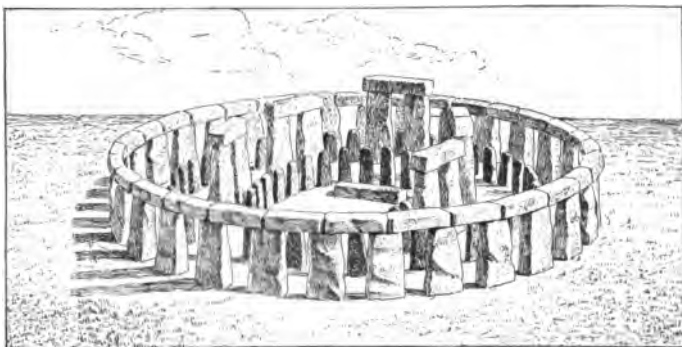
8. **ēius exigua est cōpia**: a mistake on Caesar's part; the greatness of England has been made possible in no small degree by her abundant supply of iron. Can you find any other mistake of Caesar in this chapter?

9. **fās**: note carefully meaning and form; with it understand **esse**.

10. **haec**: the antecedents are **leporem, gallinam, ānserem**; a pronoun or adjective agreeing with things or animals of different genders is always in the neuter.

11. **animī** . . . **causā**: *for the sake of the feelings, as a diversion.*

12. **remissiōribus frīgōribus**: *cold spells being milder, less intense*; note the comparative of the participle **remissus**.



STONEHENGE RESTORED

402. 13. Īnsula nātūrā¹ **triquetra**, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter **angulus**, quī est ad **Cantium**, **quō**² ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs **appelluntur**, ad orientem sōlem, inferior³ ad **merī-**
5 **diem spectat**. Hōc **pertinet** circiter mīlia passuum **quīngenta**. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque **occi-**
dentem sōlem; quā ex parte est **Hibernia**, **dīmidio**⁴ minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spa-
tiō **trānsmīssūs** atque⁵ ex Galliā est in Britanniam.
10 In hōc mediō cursū⁶ est īnsula quae appellātur **Mona**; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae⁷ īnsulae exīsti-
mantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub **brūmā** esse noctem. Nōs nihil
dē eō **percentātiōnibus** reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex
15 aquā mēnsūrīs⁸ breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est **longitūdō** lateris, ut fert⁹ illōrum **opīniō**, **septingentōrum** mīlium.¹⁰ Ter-
tium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī¹¹ nulla est **obiecta terra**, sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad **Ger-**
20 **māniam** spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum octingenta in

longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

402. 1. **nātūrā**: for use of ablative, cf. 394, 2.

2. **quōd**: here an adverb, *to which, whither*.

3. **Inferior**: limits **angulus** understood.

4. **dīmidio**: for use of case, cf. 273, 1.

5. **pari spatio transmissus** **atque**: *of the same length of passage as, freely, it (Ireland) is as far by sea (from Britain) as Gaul is from Britain*; for **pari spatio**, cf. 339, 2; **atque** after words of likeness or difference may be translated *as* or *than*.

6. **in hōc mediō cursū**: *in the middle of this passage (i.e. from Britain to Ireland)*; for this translation of **medius**, cf. 301.

7. **subiectae**: here with nearly

the meaning of the adjective *near*, though strictly a participle from **subicere**; it is nominative to agree with the subject of **existimantur**, with which verb **esse** is to be understood.

8. **certis ex aquā mēnsūris**: *by careful (definite) measurements by water, i.e. by the water clock, a Roman device for measuring time upon the principle of our sandglass.*

9. **fert**: an irregular form; cf. **ferre** 207, **ferret** 268, 5, 6. In what respect are all these forms irregular? Learn the conjugation of the verb from 441; here it means *goes, is current*.

10. **milium**: a predicate genitive of quality or description; cf. 400, 6.

11. **cui parti**: construe with **objecta**; cf. 235, 5.

403. 14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī¹ quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō² est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiorēs plērique frumenta nōn serunt, sed lacte³ et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiorēs⁴ sunt in pūgnā aspectū⁵; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā⁶ praeter caput et labrum superius.

* * * * *

403. 1. **ex his . . . hūmānissimī**: cf. 168, 12, 394, 3.

2. **quae regiō**: *a district which*. What literally?

3. **lacte**: for use of case, cf. 18.

4. **hōc horridiorēs**: **hōc** with the comparative may be explained by either 257, 4, or 273, 1.

5. **aspectū** : for use of ablative, cf. 394, 2.

6. **capillō . . . prōmissō atque omni parte . . . rāsā** : for this use of the ablative, cf. 339, 2; but it cannot be literally translated; study to express the idea in good English.

Note the large number of words and phrases in this chapter which, though perfectly clear in meaning, are difficult to translate. What is the best English for **ex his, quae regiō, maritima, ā Gallicā cōnsuetūdine, lacte**?

404. 15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācrit̄er proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita¹ tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus² superiōrēs fuerint³ atque eōs in silvās collisque **compulerint**; sed complūribus
5 interfectis **cupidius** īsecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī⁴ intermissō spatiō,⁵ **imprudentibus** nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statione prō castris conlocātī, ācrit̄er pūgnāvērunt; duā-
10 busque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque his primis⁶ legiōnum duārum, cum hae **perexiguō** intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē **per-rūpērunt** sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē
15 Q. Laberius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

404. 1. **ita** : limits **cōnflīxērunt** understood.

2. **partibus** : with this word as with **locō, locis** (394, 5), the preposition **in** may be omitted.

3. **fuerint** : what tense, according to 294, would here be expected after **cōnflīxērunt**? Exceptions in sequence occur in result clauses.

4. **illi** : for meaning, cf. 395, 6.

5. **spatiō** : here means *an interval of time*; six lines below in connection with **loci** it means *an interval of space or ground*.

6. **his primis** : *these, too, the first*; the first cohort of a legion was its best.

405. 16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō castris dīmīcārētur, intellēctum est

nostrōs propter **gravitātem** armōrum, quod neque inse-
 quī **cēdentis**¹ possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent,
 5 minus **aptōs** esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem
 māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, proptereā quod
 illi etiam **cōsultō** plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum
 ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsili-
 rent et pedibus² **disparī** proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat
 10 hūc ut **numquam** cōfertī sed rārī māgnisque inter-
 vāllīs proeliārentur³ statīōnēsque **dispositās** habērent,
 atque aliōs aliī **deinceps exciperent**,⁴ **integrīque** et
recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

405. 1. **cēdentis**: the participle
 is here a substantive, *those retreating*,
the retreating enemy; so, too, **recen-**
tēs and **dēfatigātis** near the end of
 the chapter.

2. **pedibus**: for use, cf. 278, 8;
 on the method of fighting here referred
 to, review 277.

3. **accēdēbat hūc ut . . . proe-**
liārentur: **ut proeliārentur** is a

substantive clause of result, the sub-
 ject of **accēdēbat**; cf. the use
 and translation of the **quod**-clause
 with **accēdēbat** in 395, 4; for
 the preceding **māgnis intervāllis**,
 cf. 192, 7.

4. **aliōs aliī deinceps excipe-**
rent: for exact force, cf. 214, 4; the
 clause may be translated, *they were*
supporting each other in turn.

406. 17. **Posterō diē procul** ā castrīs hostēs in colli-
 bus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et **lēnius** quam
prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō laccessere coepērunt. Sed
 meridiē, cum Caesar **pābulandī** causā trēs legiōnēs atque
 5 omnem equitātum cum C. **Trebōniō** lēgātō mīsisset, **re-**
pente ex omnibus partibus ad **pābulātōrēs advolāvēr-**
unt sic utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn **absisterent**.¹
 Nostrī ācritēr in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt,² neque
 finem sequendī fēcērunt **quoad** subsidiō cōfisi³ equi-
 10 tēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs⁴ hostīs
 ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī
conligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī

facultātem⁵ dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā **prōtinus** quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque post id
 15 tempus **unquam** summīs nobiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

406. 1. **sic . . . absterent:** *so (eagerly) that they did not stop short of (keep from) the standards and the legions, i.e. the main body of the Roman army.*

2. **reppulērunt:** supply **eōs** as its object.

3. **subsidiō cōnfisī:** *relying upon support;* **subsidiō** may be either dative or ablative; **cōnfidere** is semi-deponent (258).

4. **praecipitēs:** accusative limiting **hostīs**.

5. **suī conligendī . . . facultātem:** *a chance to collect themselves;* **suī** must be understood as a neuter singular of the possessive **suus**, -a, -um, referring to a plural subject; if it were a plural of the reflexive **sē**, we should have **suī conligendōrum**.

407. 18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim¹ in finīs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō² pedibus, atque hōc aegrē,³ trānsirī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad
 5 alteram flūminis **ripam** māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat **acūtīs sudibus praefixis**-que mūnita, eiusdemque generis⁴ sub aquā **dēfixae** sudēs flūmine **tegēbantur**. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captivīs **perfugis**que Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim
 10 legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs **iērun**t,⁵ cum capite sōlō ex aquā **exstārent**,⁶ ut⁷ hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

407. 1. **Tamesim:** for form, cf. 400, 11.

2. **locō:** cf. 394, 5, for omission of **in**.

3. **atque hōc aegrē:** *and in*

this, too, with difficulty; what precedes determines the construction of the pronoun; cf. 392, 11.

4. **Eiusdem generis:** depends upon **sudēs** following; cf. 395, 3.

5. **iŕunt**: review this verb carefully from 360 and 439.

6. **cum capite . . . exstārent**: **cum** is here concessive, *although*; cf. 316, 9, *c*; for **capite**, cf. 273, 1,

exstārent having the force of a comparative; cf. 293, 6, footnote.

7. **eā celeritāte . . . ut**: a demonstrative pronoun (like **eā**) introducing a result clause must be translated *such*.

408. 19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà¹ dēmōnstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē **contentiōnis**, dīmissis **ampliōribus** cōpiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relīctis, itinera nostra servābat² paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locis-
 5 que impeditis ac **silvestribus** sēsē **occultābat** atque iis regiōnibus³ quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius **praedandī vāstandī**que causā sē in agrōs **effunderet**, omnibus viis **sēmitis**que essedā-
 10 riōs ex silvis **ēmittēbat** et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum iis cōnfligēbat atque hōc metū⁴ lātius **vagārī** prohibēbat.⁵ Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur,⁶ et tantum in agris vāstandis **incendiis**que faciendis hostibus nocē-
 15 rētur⁷ quantum⁸ labōre atque itinere **legiōnārii** milītēs efficere poterant.

408. 1. **suprà**: see last lines of 406 for fact stated.

2. **servābat**: *kept watching*.

3. **iis regiōnibus quibus**: *in those districts in which*; the preposition **in** is exceptionally omitted.

4. **hōc metū** = **hūius rei metū**.

5. **vagārī prohibēbat**: for construction, cf. 187, 6.

6. **relinquēbātur ut . . . paterētur**: *it was left that he allow, bet-*

ter, nothing was left for Caesar but to allow; for a similar use of an impersonal verb with a substantive clause of result, cf. 405, 3; **discēdī**, is used impersonally.

7. **hostibus nocērētur**: **nocēre**, which takes a dative in the active, is used only impersonally in the passive, retaining the dative, here **hostibus**.

8. **tantum . . . quantum**: *so much . . . as*.

409. 20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns

Caesaris fidem secūsus¹ ad eum in continentem vēnerat (cūius **pater** in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfe-
 5 ctusque erat ā Cassivellaunō; ipse fugā **mortem** vitāve-
 rat) lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī
dēditūrōs² atque imperāta³ factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in
 cīvitātem mittat quī praesit⁴ imperiumque obtineat. Hīs
 10 Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque ex-
 ercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta
 celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque
 mīsērunt.

409. 1. **fidem secūsus**: *seeking the protection of Caesar*; for force of **secūsus**, cf. 398, 4.

2. **pollicentur sēsē dēditūrōs**: for contrast with English idiom, cf. 224, 3, *d, e*.

3. **imperāta**: *the things commanded, commands*.

4. **quī praesit**: for subjunctive, cf. 119, 5; the antecedent of **quī** is **aliquem** understood.

410. 21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque omnī militum¹
 iniuriā² prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontlāci, Ancalitēs,
 Bībrocī, Cassī lēgātīōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt.
 Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō **oppidum** Cas-
 5 sivellaunī abesse silvīs **palūdibusque** mūnītum, quō³
 satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit.⁴
 Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās
vāllō atque **fossā** mūniērunt, quō **incursiōnis** hostium
 vitandae causā convenīre cōsuērunt.⁵ Eō proficiscitur
 10 cum legiōnibus: locum reperit ēgrediē nātūrā atque
 opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus **oppū-
 gnāre** contendit. Hostēs **paulisper** morātī militum
 nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte
 oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris reper-
 15 tus⁶ multique⁷ in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque inter-
 fectī.⁸

410. 1. **militum**: *inflicted by the soldiers, at the hands of the soldiers.*

2. **iniuriā**: for use of case, cf. 187, 5.

3. **quō**: adverb, *whither, where*; so, too, three lines below.

4. **convēnerit**: for mode, cf. 230, 3; for tense, cf. 294.

5. **oñsuērunt**: for force of tense, cf. 81, and 392, 3.

6. **reptus**: supply *est*.

7. **multī**: how does the gender show that this means men and not cattle?

8. **interfectī**: how do you know that **sunt** goes with this form?

411. 22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur,¹ Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeērāt, **Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax**, nūntiōs
5 mittit atque his imperat uti coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra **nāvālia** dē **imprōvisō** adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hi cum² ad castra vēnissent, nostrī **ēruptiōne** factā, multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili **duce Lugotorige**, suos incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proe-
10 liō nūntiātō, **tot dētrīmentis** acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus **dēfectiōne** civitātum,³ lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē **dēditiōne** ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continenti propter **repentinōs** Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestā-
15 tis⁴ **superesset** atque id **facile extrahī** posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia **penderet**⁵ cōstituit; **interdicīt** atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.⁶

411. 1. **dum haec geruntur**: for use of tense here, cf. 288, 5.

2. **hi cum**: *when these men.*

3. **dēfectiōne civitātem**: *by the desertion of the states*, mentioned at the beginning of the last chapter.

4. **multum aestātis**: for use of

genitive, cf. 266; so, too, **quid . . . vectigālis**, just below.

5. **penderet**: for mode, cf. 288, 9, b.

6. **nē Mandubraciō . . . noceat**: for mode of **noceat**, cf. 208, 4; for case of **Mandubraciō**, cf. 396, 5.

412. 23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nullae tempestāte **dēperierant** nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus¹ exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus,² neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs **portāret dēsiderārētur**³; at ex iis quae **inānēs** ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, **priōris** commeātūs⁴ expositis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat⁵ numerō⁶ sexāgintā, perpaucae locum cape- rent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur.⁷ Quās cum **aliquamdiū** Caesar **frustrā** expectāsset, nē annī tem- pore ā nāvigātiōne **exclūderētur**,⁸ quod aequinoctium **suberat**, necessariō angustius militēs conlocāvit ac summā **tranquillitāte** cōsecūtā, secundā initā⁸ cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnisque incolumis nāvis **perdūxit**.

412. 1. **commeātibus**: here, *trips*.

2. **tot nāvigātiōnibus**: ablative absolute, *though the voyages were so many, though they sailed so many times*.

3. **accidit uti . . . dēsiderārē- tur**: cf. 240, 1.

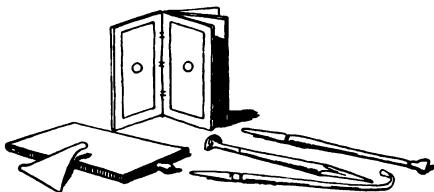
4. **quās faciendās cūrāverat**: for syntax and meaning, cf. 356, 17; for fact referred to, see Chapter 11.

5. **numerō**: for case, cf. 394, 2.

6. **rēicerentur**: after **accidit uti**, seven lines above.

7. **nē . . . exclūderētur**: for mode, cf. 370, 8, *c*.

8. **initā**: from **inire**; *the second watch having been entered upon, at the beginning of the second watch*.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

SUMMARY OF LATIN FORMS

The figures attached to the paradigms indicate the paragraphs of this book in which the given paradigms are treated.

NOUNS

413. FIRST DECLENSION. STEM ENDS IN *ā*

		Case Endings	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
			SING. PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>insula, fem.</i>	<i>insulae</i>	-a -ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>insulae</i>	<i>insulārum</i>	-ae -ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>insulae</i>	<i>insulis</i>	-ae -īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>insulam</i>	<i>insulās</i>	-am -ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>insulā</i>	<i>insulis</i>	-ā -īs

4, 8, 12

414. SECOND DECLENSION. STEM ENDS IN *o*

MASCULINE NOUNS

MASCULINE NOUNS					Masculine
SINGULAR					Case Endings
<i>Nom.</i>	lēgātus	Commius	ager	puer (<i>boy</i>)	-us, -er
<i>Gen.</i>	lēgātī	Commīi, Commī	agrī	puerī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	lēgātō	Commīō	agrō	puerō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	lēgātum	Commium	agrum	puerum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	lēgātō	Commīō	agrō	puerō	-ō
<i>Voc.</i> ¹	lēgāte	Commī			-e
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	lēgātī		agrī	puerī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	lēgātōrum		agrōrum	puerōrum	-ōrum

¹ Vocative, or case of address; in strictly Latin words this case differs from the nominative only in nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the 2d declension.

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lēgātis</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lēgātōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>-ōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lēgātis</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
	22	219, 5		

NEUTER NOUNS

Neuter
Case Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N., Acc.</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>	<i>-um</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bellī</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<i>proelii, proeli</i>	<i>proeliōrum</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
<i>D., Abl.</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>bellis</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>proeliis</i>	<i>-ō</i>	<i>-īs</i>
	17		17			

THIRD DECLENSION

415.

CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amor, masc.</i>	<i>frāter, masc.</i>	<i>ratio, fem.</i>	<i>multitūdō, fem.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amōris</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>rationis</i>	<i>multitūdinis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amōrī</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>rationī</i>	<i>multitūdinī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amōrem</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>rationem</i>	<i>multitūdinem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amōre</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>ratione</i>	<i>multitūdine</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amōrēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>rationēs</i>	<i>multitūdinēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amōrum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>rationum</i>	<i>multitūdinum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amōribus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>rationibus</i>	<i>multitūdinibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amōrēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>rationēs</i>	<i>multitūdinēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amōribus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>rationibus</i>	<i>multitūdinibus</i>
	101, 2	219, 5	54	54

SINGULAR

<i>N., Acc.</i>	<i>tempus, neut.</i>	<i>genus, neut.</i>	<i>flūmen, neut.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>temporis</i>	<i>generis</i>	<i>flūminis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>temporī</i>	<i>generī</i>	<i>flūminī</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tempore</i>	<i>genere</i>	<i>flūmine</i>

PLURAL

<i>N., Acc.</i>	tempora	genera	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	temporum	generum	flūminum
<i>D., Abl.</i>	temporibus	generibus	flūminibus
	139, 1	187, 1, 11	311, 4

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cīvitās, <i>fem.</i>	mīles, <i>masc.</i>	rēx, <i>masc.</i>	pāx, <i>fem.</i>	prīnceps, <i>masc.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvitātis	militis	rēgis	pācis	prīncipis
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvitātī	militī	rēgī	pācī	prīncipī
<i>Acc.</i>	cīvitātem	militem	rēgem	pācem	prīncipem
<i>Abl.</i>	cīvitāte	militē	rēge	pāce	prīncipe

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cīvitātēs	militēs	rēgēs	pācēs	prīncipēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvitātum, -ium	militum	rēgum	pācum	prīncipum
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvitātibus	militibus	rēgibus	pācibus	prīncipibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cīvitātēs	militēs	rēgēs	pācēs	prīncipēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cīvitātibus	militibus	rēgibus	pācibus	prīncipibus
	60	60	66	66	66

416.

I STEMS

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis, <i>masc.</i>	mare, <i>neut.</i>	cohors, <i>fem.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	maris	cohortis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	marī	cohortī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	mare	cohortem
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	marī	cohortē

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	maria	cohortēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	marium	cohortium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	maribus	cohortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs, -ēs	maria	cohortēs, -īs
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	maribus	cohortibus
	27, 31, 32	27, 31, 32	60

417. SUMMARY OF CASE ENDINGS OF THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS			I STEMS	
SINGULAR			SINGULAR	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	-s ¹	— ²	-s	-e
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-is	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	—	-em or -im ³	-e
<i>Abl.</i>	-e	-e	-e or -ī ³	-ī
PLURAL			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	-um	-um	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-ēs	-a	-īs or -ēs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

418. FOURTH DECLENSION. STEM ENDS IN u

SINGULAR			SINGULAR	
	<i>Masculine</i>	Case Endings	<i>Neuter</i>	Case Endings
<i>Nom.</i>	aditus	-us	cornū (<i>horn</i>)	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	aditūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	aditūī	-uī	cornū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	aditum	-um	cornū	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	aditū	-ū	cornū	-ū
PLURAL			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	aditūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adituum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	aditibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aditūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	aditibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

95, 3, 6

¹ The ending -s is very common here. For the various endings, with gender of each, see 298.

² The nominative is the same as the stem or is a modified form of the stem; see *flūmen*, *tempus*.

³ See 31, 3, 32, 400, 11.

419. FIFTH DECLENSION. STEM ENDS IN *ē*

SINGULAR			Case Endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs, masc.</i>	<i>rēs, fem.</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	-ēi, -ēi
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	-ēi, -ēi
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	-ē
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēbus
	167, 4	167, 4	

ADJECTIVES

420. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>māgnus</i>	<i>māgna</i>	<i>māgnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>māgnī</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgnī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgnō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>māgnum</i>	<i>māgnam</i>	<i>māgnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnā</i>	<i>māgnō</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>māgne</i>		
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>māgnī</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgna</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>māgnōrum</i>	<i>māgnārum</i>	<i>māgnōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>māgnōs</i>	<i>māgnās</i>	<i>māgna</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>

Most adjectives with masculine ending *-er*, of the 2d declension, are declined like **ager** (414), **insula** (413), and **bellum** (414), as follows : —

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	noster	nostra	nostrum
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
	etc.	etc.	etc.

	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
	etc.	etc.	etc.

90, and 219, 5

421. Nine adjectives of the 1st and 2d declensions have *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-ī* in the dative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter alike ; they are the following : —

alius , <i>another.</i>	ūnus , <i>one.</i>	alter , <i>the other.</i>
sōlus , <i>alone.</i>	ūllus , <i>any.</i>	uter , <i>which of the two.</i>
tōtus , <i>whole.</i>	nūllus , <i>none.</i>	neuter , <i>neither.</i>

245, 4

The adjective **alius**, which is regular in the plural, has some special peculiarities in the singular ; thus, —

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	alterius ¹	alterius ¹	alterius ¹
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō

245, 4, d

¹ Sometimes the *i* in *-ius* is long, sometimes short. This genitive is almost always used instead of **alius**.

422. DECLENSION OF **Duo** (153, 3)

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duo, duōs	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

423. THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	brevis ¹	breve	brevior	brevius
<i>Gen.</i>	brevis		breviōris	
<i>Dat.</i>	brevī		breviōrī	
<i>Acc.</i>	brevem	breve	breviōrem	brevius
<i>Abl.</i>	brevī		breviōre	

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	brevēs	brevia	breviōrēs	breviōra
<i>Gen.</i>	brevium		breviōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	brevibus		breviōribus	
<i>Acc.</i>	brevīs, -ēs	brevia	breviōrēs	breviōra
<i>Abl.</i>	brevibus		breviōribus	

32

119, 2

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	vocāns	
<i>Gen.</i>	vocantis	
<i>Dat.</i>	vocantī	
<i>Acc.</i>	vocantem	vocāns
<i>Abl.</i>	vocante, -ī	

PLURAL

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	vocantēs	vocantia
<i>Gen.</i>	vocantium	
<i>Dat.</i>	vocantibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	vocantīs, -ēs	vocantia
<i>Abl.</i>	vocantibus	

60, 4, and 203, 2

¹ A few adjectives of the 3d declension have **-er** in the nominative singular masculine, but are in other respects declined like **brevis**; cf. **celer** 175 and **pedester** 193.

424. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS IRREGULARLY COMPARED (240, 3)

1. Adjectives in *-er* add *-rimus* to this ending to form the superlative ; thus, —

<i>celer</i> ,	<i>celerior</i> ,	<i>celerrimus</i> .
<i>ācer</i> , <i>sharp</i> ,	<i>ācrior</i> ,	<i>ācerrimus</i> .

2. Five adjectives — *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, and *humilis* — form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem of the positive, stripped of its final vowel ; thus, —

<i>facilis</i> , <i>easy</i> ,	<i>facilior</i> ,	<i>facillimus</i> .
--------------------------------	-------------------	---------------------

3. Several adjectives change their stem in comparison : —

<i>bonus</i> , <i>good</i> ,	<i>melior</i> , <i>better</i> ,	<i>optimus</i> , <i>best</i> .
<i>malus</i> , <i>bad</i> ,	<i>pēior</i> , <i>worse</i> ,	<i>pessimus</i> , <i>worst</i> .
<i>parvus</i> , <i>small</i> ,	<i>minor</i> , <i>less</i> ,	<i>minimus</i> , <i>least</i> .
<i>māgnus</i> ,	<i>māior</i> , <i>larger</i> ,	<i>māximus</i> , <i>largest</i> .
<i>multus</i> ,	(Wanting)	<i>plūrimus</i> ,
<i>multa</i> ,	(Wanting)	<i>plūrima</i> ,
<i>multum</i> ,	<i>plūs</i> , <i>more</i> ,	<i>plūrimum</i> ,

4. The following have either a positive limited in its use or no positive at all : —

<i>posterior</i> , <i>later</i> ,	<i>postrēmus</i> or <i>postumus</i> .
<i>exterior</i> , <i>outer</i> ,	<i>extrēmus</i> or <i>extimus</i> .
<i>inferior</i> , <i>lower</i> ,	<i>Infimus</i> or <i>Imus</i> .
<i>superior</i> , <i>higher</i> ,	<i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i> .
<i>prior</i> , <i>former</i> ,	<i>prīmus</i> , <i>first</i> .
<i>citerior</i> , <i>on this side</i> ,	<i>citimus</i> , <i>nearest</i> .
<i>ulterior</i> , <i>farther</i> ,	<i>ultimus</i> .
<i>interior</i> , <i>inner</i> ,	<i>intimus</i> .
<i>propior</i> , <i>nearer</i> ,	<i>proximus</i> .

5. Irregular adverbs : —

<i>benē</i> , <i>well</i> ,	<i>melius</i> ,	<i>optimē</i> .
<i>malē</i> , <i>ill</i> ,	<i>pēius</i> ,	<i>pessimē</i> .

māgnoperē, *greatly*,
nōn multum, parum, *little*,
multum, *much*,
diū, *long*,
prope, *near*,

magis, *more*,
minus,
plūs,
diūtius,
propius,

māximē, *most*.
minimē.
plūrimum.
diūtissimē.
proximē.

425.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS

1. ūnus, -a, -um, *one*
2. duo, duae, duo, *two*
3. trēs, tria, *three*
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim (sexdecim)
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. ūndēvigintī
20. vīgintī
21. { vīgintī ūnus
ūnus et vīgintī
22. { vīgintī duo
duo et vīgintī
30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā

ORDINALS

- prīmus, -a, -um, *first*
- secundus (alter), *second*
- tertius, *third*
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- ūndēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus prīmus
- { ūnus et vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus secundus
- { alter et vicēsīmus
- trīcēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quīnquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus
- octōgēsīmus

90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum	centēsīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
1000.	mille	mīllēsīmus

PRONOUNS

426. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

SINGULAR

	<i>First Person</i>	<i>Second Person</i>	<i>Third Person</i>	<i>Third Person, Reflexive</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	is, <i>he</i> ¹	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	ēius, <i>his</i>	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	eī	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē, <i>me, myself</i>	tē, <i>thee, thyself</i>	eum, <i>him</i>	sē (sēsē), <i>himself, herself, itself</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	eō	sē (sēsē)

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	eī, īi, ī, <i>they</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	{ nostrum nostrī }	{ vestrum vestrī }	eōrum, <i>their</i>	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs, īis	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs, <i>us, ourselves</i>	vōs, <i>you, yourselves</i>	eōs, <i>them</i>	sē (sēsē), <i>themselves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs, īis	sē (sēsē)
	323	323	71, 5, and 6	124, and 126, 8

427. PRONOMINAL POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

<i>1st Person.</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our</i> .
<i>2d Person.</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy, your</i> .	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your</i> .
<i>3d Person, Reflexive.</i>	{ suus, -a, -um, <i>his, hers, its</i> . suus, -a, -um, <i>their</i> .	

¹ Only the masculine is here given; the feminine and neuter forms of the demonstrative are also used as personal pronouns; see forms of all genders in 428.

428.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

113, 6

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

192, 2

Iste, *that of yours*, is declined like *ille*; *ipse*, *self*, is declined like *ille*, except that the neuter nominative and accusative singular is regular—*ipsum*. See 113, 11.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, īi, ī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>

71

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> ¹	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ²	<i>eīsdem</i> ²	<i>eīsdem</i> ²
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

153, 8

¹ *īdem* and *īdem* also occur.² *īisdem* and *īsdem* also occur.

429. RELATIVE (71)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

430. INTERROGATIVE (108)¹

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid		
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius			
<i>Dat.</i>	cui			(Like the plural of the relative)
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid		
<i>Abl.</i>	quō			

VERBS

431. THE VERB *Esse* (76, 165, 345, 9)

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR
sum, I am
es, thou art, you are
est, he (she, it) is

PLURAL
sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

Imperfect

eram, I was
erās, thou wast, you were
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were

¹ The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod** is declined like the relative (429). The indefinite pronouns, if substantive, are declined like **quis, quid**; if adjective, like **quī, quae, quod**.

<i>Future</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
erō, <i>I shall be</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
eris, <i>thou wilt be, you will be</i>	eritis, <i>you will be</i>
erit, <i>he will be</i>	erunt, <i>they will be</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	
fuī, <i>I have been, was</i>	fuius, <i>we have been, were</i>
fuisti, <i>thou hast been, you have been,</i> <i>were</i>	fuius, <i>you have been, were</i>
fuit, <i>he has been, was</i>	fuerunt } <i>they have been, were</i> fuere }
<i>Pluperfect</i>	
fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>
fuerās, <i>thou hadst been, you had been</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>
fuerat, <i>he had been</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	
fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>
fueris, <i>thou wilt have been, you will</i> <i>have been</i>	fueritis, <i>you will have been</i>
fuerit, <i>he will have been</i>	fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
sim	simus
sīs	sitis
sit	sint
<i>Imperfect</i>	
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent
<i>Perfect</i>	
fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint
<i>Pluperfect</i>	
fuissem	fuissemus
fuisēs	fuissetis
fuisset	fuisissent

IMPERATIVE*Present*

SINGULAR
es, *be thou*

PLURAL
este, *be ye*

Future

estō, *thou shalt be*
estō, *he shall be*

estōte, *ye shall be*
suntō, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE**PARTICIPLE**

Pres. esse, *to be*

Perf. fuisse, *to have been*

Fut. futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

futūrus, *about to be*

432. FIRST CONJUGATION:¹ PRESENT STEM ENDS IN **a**

Principal Parts: **vocā-re** **vocāv-it** **vocāt-us**

ACTIVE VOICE**PASSIVE VOICE****INDICATIVE***Present*

I am calling, call

I am being called, am called

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

voc-ō

vocā-mus

voc-o-r

vocā-mur

vocā-s

vocā-tis

vocā-ris

vocā-minī

voca-t

voca-nt

vocā-tur

voca-ntur

Imperfect

I was calling, called

I was being called, was called

vocā-ba-m

vocā-bā-mus

vocā-ba-r

vocā-bā-mur

vocā-bā-s

vocā-bā-tis

vocā-bā-ris, -re

vocā-bā-minī

vocā-ba-t

vocā-ba-nt

vocā-bā-tur

vocā-ba-ntur

Future

I shall be calling, shall call

I shall be called

vocā-b-ō

vocā-bi-mus

vocā-bo-r

vocā-bi-mur

vocā-bi-s

vocā-bi-tis

vocā-be-ris, -re

vocā-bi-minī

vocā-bi-t

vocā-bu-nt

vocā-bi-tur

vocā-bu-ntur

¹ For paragraphs in which the formation of the various forms are discussed, see Table of Contents, page 5, and Review Lessons.

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
		<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>I have called, called</i>		<i>I have been called, was called</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
vocāv-ī	vocāv- imus	vocāt-us sum	vocāt-ī sumus
vocāv-istī	vocāv- istis	vocāt-us es	vocāt-ī estis
vocāv-it	vocāv- ērunt, -ēre	vocāt-us est ¹	vocāt-ī sunt
		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
<i>I had called</i>		<i>I had been called</i>	
vocāv- era-m	vocāv- erā-mus	vocāt-us eram	vocāt-ī erāmus
vocāv- erā-s	vocāv- era-tis	vocāt-us erās	vocāt-ī erātis
vocāv- era-t	vocāv- era-nt	vocāt-us erat	vocāt-ī erant
		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
<i>I shall have called</i>		<i>I shall have been called</i>	
vocāv- er-ō	vocāv- eri-mus	vocāt-us erō	vocāt-ī erimus
vocāv- eri-s	vocāv- eri-tis	vocāt-us eris	vocāt-ī eritis
vocāv- eri-t	vocāv- eri-nt	vocāt-us erit	vocāt-ī erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
voce-m	vocē-mus	voce-r	vocē-mur
vocē-s	vocē-tis	vocē-ris, -re	vocē-mini
voce-t	voce-nt	vocē-tur	voce-ntur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
vocā-re-m	vocā-rē-mus	vocā-re-r	vocā-rē-mur
vocā-rē-s	vocā-rē-tis	vocā-rē-ris, -re	vocā-rē-mini
vocā-re-t	vocā-re-nt	vocā-rē-tur	vocā-re-ntur
<i>Perfect</i>			
vocāv-eri-m	vocāv-eri-mus	vocāt-us sim	vocāt-ī simus
vocāv-eri-s	vocāv-eri-tis	vocāt-us sis	vocāt-ī sitis
vocāv-eri-t	vocāv-eri-nt	vocāt-us sit	vocāt-ī sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
vocāv-isse-m	vocāv-issē-mus	vocāt-us essem	vocāt-ī essēmus
vocāv-issē-s	vocāv-issē-tis	vocāt-us essēs	vocāt-ī essētis
vocāv-isse-t	vocāv-isse-nt	vocāt-us esset	vocāt-ī essent

¹ The feminine and neuter singular are **vocāta est** and **vocātum est**, and the feminine and neuter plural **vocātae sunt** and **vocāta sunt**.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>call thou</i>	<i>call ye</i>	<i>be thou called</i>	<i>be ye called</i>
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
vocā	vocā-te	vocā-re	vocā-minī

Future

<i>thou shalt call</i>	<i>ye shall call</i>	<i>thou shalt be called</i>	<i>they shall be called</i>
vocā-tō	vocā-tōte	vocā-tor	
vocā-tō	voca-ntō	vocā-tor	voca-ntor

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. vocā-re, to call</i>	<i>vocā-rī, to be called</i>
<i>Perf. vocāv-isse, to have called</i>	<i>vocāt-us, -a, -um esse, to have been called</i>
<i>Fut. vocāt-ūr-us, -a, -um esse, to be about to call</i>	<i>vocāt-um¹ īrī, to be about to be called</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. vocā-ns, calling</i>	<i>Perf. vocāt-us, -a, -um, having been called, called</i>
<i>Fut. vocāt-ūr-us, -a, -um, about to call</i>	<i>Gerundive voca-nd-us, -a, -um, to be called, must be called</i>

GERUND

<i>Gen. voca-nd-ī</i>
<i>Dat. voca-nd-ō</i>
<i>Acc. voca-nd-um</i>
<i>Abl. voca-nd-ō, by calling</i>

SUPINE

<i>Acc. vocāt-um,¹ to call</i>
<i>Abl. vocāt-ū,¹ to call, in calling</i>

¹ It should be understood that the supines given in these sample verbs are inserted for the sake of making a complete paradigm. With the exception of *audītū*, they are rarely or never found.

433. SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT STEM ENDS IN *ē*

Principal Parts: **monē-re** **monu-it** **monit-us**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE VOICE

Present

I am advising, advise

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monē-ō	monē-mus
monē-s	monē-tis
monē-t	monē-nt

I am being advised, am advised

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monē-o-r	monē-mur
monē-ris	monē-mini
monē-tur	monē-ntur

Imperfect

I was advising, advised

monē-ba-m	monē-bā-mus
monē-bā-s	monē-bā-tis
monē-ba-t	monē-ba-nt

I was being advised, was advised

monē-ba-r	monē-bā-mur
monē-bā-ris, -re	monē-bā-mini
monē-bā-tur	monē-ba-ntur

Future

I shall be advising, shall advise

monē-b-ō	monē-bi-mus
monē-bi-s	monē-bi-tis
monē-bi-t	monē-bu-nt

I shall be advised

monē-bo-r	monē-bi-mur
monē-be-ris, -re	monē-bi-mini
monē-bi-tur	monē-bu-ntur

Perfect

I have advised, advised

monu-ī	monu-īmus
monu-istī	monu-istis
monu-it	monu-ērunt, -ēre

I have been advised, was advised

monit-us sum	monit-ī sumus
monit-us es	monit-ī estis
monit-us est ¹	monit-ī sunt ¹

Pluperfect

I had advised

monu-ēra-m	monu-ērā-mus
monu-ērā-s	monu-ērā-tis
monu-ēra-t	monu-ēra-nt

I had been advised

monit-us eram	monit-ī erāmus
monit-us erās	monit-ī erātis
monit-us erat	monit-ī erant

¹ The feminine singular is **monita est**, plural, **monitae sunt**, and the neuter **monitum est**, **monita sunt**.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

*Future Perfect**I shall have advised**I shall have been advised*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monu-er-ō	monu-eri-mus	monit-us erō	monit-ī erimus
monu-eri-s	monu-eri-tis	monit-us eris	monit-ī eritis
monu-eri-t	monu-eri-nt	monit-us erit	monit-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

mone-a-m	mone-ā-mus	mone-a-r	mone-ā-mur
mone-ā-s	mone-ā-tis	mone-ā-ris, -re	mone-ā-mini
mone-a-t	mone-a-nt	mone-ā-tur	mone-a-ntur

Imperfect

monē-re-m	monē-rē-mus	monē-re-r	monē-rē-mur
monē-rē-s	monē-rē-tis	monē-rē-ris, -re	monē-rē-mini
monē-re-t	monē-re-nt	monē-rē-tur	monē-re-ntur

Perfect

monu-eri-m	monu-eri-mus	monit-us sim	monit-ī sīmus
monu-eri-s	monu-eri-tis	monit-us sis	monit-ī sītis
monu-eri-t	monu-eri-nt	monit-us sit	monit-ī sint

Pluperfect

monu-isse-m	monu-issē-mus	monit-us essem	monit-ī essēmus
monu-issē-s	monu-issē-tis	monit-us essēs	monit-ī essētis
monu-isse-t	monu-isse-nt	monit-us esset	monit-ī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>advise thou</i>	<i>advise ye</i>	<i>be thou advised</i>	<i>be ye advised</i>
monē	monē-te	monē-re	monē-mini

Future

<i>thou shalt advise</i>	<i>ye shall advise</i>	<i>thou shalt be advised</i>	<i>they shall be advised</i>
monē-tō	monē-tōte	monē-tor	—
monē-tō	mone-ntō	monē-tor	mone-ntor

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INFINITIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>monē-re, to advise</i>	<i>monē-rī, to be advised</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>monu-isse, to have advised</i>	<i>monit-us, -a, -um esse, to have been advised</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>monit-ūr-us, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise</i>	<i>monit-um īrī, to be about to be advised</i>	
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>monē-ns, advising</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>monit-us, -a, -um, having been advised, advised</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>monit-ūr-us, -a, -um, about to advise</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>	<i>mone-nd-us, -a, -um, to be advised, must be advised</i>
GERUND			
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mone-nd-ī</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mone-nd-ō</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mone-nd-um</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mone-nd-ō, by advising</i>		
SUPINE			
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>monit-um, to advise</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>monit-ū, to advise, in advising</i>		

434. THIRD CONJUGATION: PRESENT STEM ENDS
IN *ĕ*Principal Parts: **dūce-re** **dūx-it** **duct-us**

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>I am leading, lead</i>		<i>I am being led, am led</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūc-ō	dūci-mus	dūc-o-r	dūci-mur
dūci-s	dūci-tis	dūce-ris	dūci-minī
dūci-t	dūcu-nt	dūci-tur	dūcu-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

*Imperfect**I was leading, led**I was being led, was led*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcē-ba-m	dūcē-bā-mus
dūcē-bā-s	dūcē-bā-tis
dūcē-ba-t	dūcē-ba-nt

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcē-ba-r	dūcē-bā-mur
dūcē-bā-ris, -re	dūcē-bā-mini
dūcē-bā-tur	dūcē-ba-ntur

*Future**I shall be leading, shall lead**I shall be led*

dūca-m	dūcē-mus
dūcē-s	dūcē-tis
dūce-t	dūce-nt

dūca-r	dūcē-mur
dūcē-ris, -re	dūcē-mini
dūcē-tur	dūce-ntur

*Perfect**I have led, led**I have been led, was led*

dūx-ī	dūx-imus
dūx-istī	dūx-istis
dūx-it	dūx-ērunt, -ēre

duct-us sum	duct-ī sumus
duct-us es	duct-ī estis
duct-us est ¹	duct-ī sunt ¹

*Pluperfect**I had led**I had been led*

dūx-era-m	dūx-erā-mus
dūx-erā-s	dūx-erā-tis
dūx-era-t	dūx-era-nt

duct-us eram	duct-ī erāmus
duct-us erās	duct-ī erātis
duct-us erat	duct-ī erant

*Future Perfect**I shall have led**I shall have been led*

dūx-er-ō	dūx-eri-mus
dūx-eri-s	dūx-eri-tis
dūx-eri-t	dūx-eri-nt

duct-us erō	duct-ī erimus
duct-us eris	duct-ī eritis
duct-us erit	duct-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

dūca-m	dūcā-mus
dūcā-s	dūcā-tis
dūca-t	dūca-nt

dūca-r	dūcā-mur
dūcā-ris, -re	dūcā-mini
dūcā-tur	dūca-ntur

¹ The feminine singular is **ducta est**, plural **ductae sunt**, and the neuter **ductum est, ducta sunt**.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūce-rē-m	dūce-rē-mus	dūce-rē-r	dūce-rē-mur
dūce-rē-s	dūce-rē-tis	dūce-rē-ris, -re	dūce-rē-mini
dūce-rē-t	dūce-rē-nt	dūce-rē-tur	dūce-rē-ntur

Perfect

dūx-erī-m	dūx-erī-mus	duct-us sim	duct-ī simus
dūx-erī-s	dūx-erī-tis	duct-us sīs	duct-ī sītis
dūx-erī-t	dūx-erī-nt	duct-us sit	duct-ī sint

Pluperfect

dūx-isse-m	dūx-issē-mus	duct-us essem	duct-ī essēmus
dūx-issē-s	dūx-issē-tis	duct-us essēs	duct-ī essētis
dūx-isse-t	dūx-isse-nt	duct-us esset	duct-ī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>lead thou</i>	<i>lead ye</i>	<i>be thou led</i>	<i>be ye led</i>
(dūce) dūc ¹	dūci-te	dūce-re	dūci-mini

Future

<i>thou shalt lead</i>	<i>ye shall lead</i>	<i>thou shalt be led</i>	<i>they shall be led</i>
dūci-tō	dūci-tōte	dūci-tor	—
dūci-tō	dūcu-ntō	dūci-tor	dūcu-ntor

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> dūce-re, to lead	dūc-ī, to be led
<i>Perf.</i> dūx-isse, to have led	duct-us, -a, -um esse, to have been led
<i>Fut.</i> duct-ūr-us, -a, -um esse, to be about to lead	duct-um irī, to be about to be led

¹ The shortening of the imperative from **dūce** to **dūc** is exceptional; the present imperative singular of the 3d conjugation regularly ends in **e**; thus, **mitte**.

ACTIVE VOICE		PARTICIPLE	PASSIVE VOICE	
<i>Pres.</i>	dūcē-ns, <i>leading</i>		<i>Perf.</i>	duct-us, -a, -um, <i>having been led, led</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	duct-ū-r-us, -a, -um, <i>about to lead</i>		<i>Gerundive</i>	dūce-nd-us, -a, -um, <i>to be led, must be led</i>

GERUND	
<i>Gen.</i>	dūce-nd-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	dūce-nd-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	dūce-nd-um
<i>Abl.</i>	dūce-nd-ō, <i>by leading</i>

SUPINE	
<i>Acc.</i>	duct-um, <i>to lead</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	duct-ū, <i>to lead, in leading</i>

435. FOURTH CONJUGATION: PRESENT STEM ENDS IN I

Principal Parts: **audī-re** **audīv-it** **audī-tus**

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>I am hearing, hear</i>		<i>I am being heard, am heard</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audi-ō	audi-mus	audi-o-r	audi-mur
audi-s	audi-tis	audi-ris	audi-mini
audi-t	audi-u-nt	audi-tur	audi-u-ntur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>I was hearing, heard</i>		<i>I was being heard, was heard</i>	
audi-ē-ba-m	audi-ē-bā-mus	audi-ē-ba-r	audi-ē-bā-mur
audi-ē-bā-s	audi-ē-bā-tis	audi-ē-bā-ris, -re	audi-ē-bā-mini
audi-ē-ba-t	audi-ē-ba-nt	audi-ē-bā-tur	audi-ē-ba-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
		<i>Future</i>	
<i>I shall be hearing, shall hear</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audi-a-m	audi- ē -mus	audi-a-r	audi- ē -mur
audi- ēs -s	audi- ēs -tis	audi- ēs -ris, -re	audi- ēs -minī
audi-e-t	audi-e-nt	audi- ē -tur	audi-e-ntur
		<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>I have heard, heard</i>		<i>I have been heard, was heard</i>	
audiv- i	audiv- imus	audīt-us sum	audīt-ī sumus
audiv- istī	audiv- istis	audīt-us es	audīt-ī estis
audiv-it	audiv- ērunt, -ēre	audīt-us est ¹	audīt-ī sunt ¹
		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
<i>I had heard</i>		<i>I had been heard</i>	
audiv- era -m	audiv- erā -mus	audīt-us eram	audīt-ī erāmus
audiv- erā -s	audiv- erā -tis	audīt-us erās	audīt-ī erātis
audiv- era -t	audiv- era -nt	audīt-us erat	audīt-ī erant
		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
<i>I shall have heard</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
audiv- erō	audiv- erī -mus	audīt-us erō	audīt-ī erimus
audiv- erī -s	audiv- erī -tis	audīt-us eris	audīt-ī eritis
audiv- erī -t	audiv- erī -nt	audīt-us erit	audīt-ī erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
audi-a-m	audi- ā -mus	audi-a-r	audi- ā -mur
audi- ās -s	audi- ās -tis	audi- ās -ris, -re	audi- ās -minī
audi-a-t	audi-a-nt	audi- ā -tur	audi-a-ntur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
audī-re-m	audī-r ē -mus	audī-re-r	audī-r ē -mur
audī-r ēs -s	audī-r ēs -tis	audī-r ēs -ris, -re	audī-r ēs -minī
audī-re-t	audī-re-nt	audī-r ē -tur	audī-re-ntur
<i>Perfect</i>			
audiv- erī -m	audiv- erī -mus	audīt-us sim	audīt-ī simus
audiv- erī -s	audiv- erī -tis	audīt-us sis	audīt-ī sitis
audiv- erī -t	audiv- erī -nt	audīt-us sit	audīt-ī sint

¹ The feminine singular is **audita est**, plural, **auditae sunt**; the neuter **auditum est**, **audita sunt**.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiv- isse -m	audiv- issē -mus	audīt-us essem	audīt-ī essēmus
audiv- issē -s	audiv- issē -tis	audīt-us essēs	audīt-ī essētis
audiv- isse -t	audiv- isse -nt	audīt-us esset	audīt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>hear thou</i>	<i>hear ye</i>	<i>be thou heard</i>	<i>be ye heard</i>
audī	audī-te	audī-re	audī-mini

Future

<i>thou shalt hear</i>	<i>ye shall hear</i>	<i>thou shalt be heard they shall be heard</i>	
audī-tō	audī-tōte	audī-tor	_____
audī-tō	audī-u-ntō	audī-tor	audī-u-ntor

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> audī-re, <i>to hear</i>	audī-rī, <i>to be heard</i>
<i>Perf.</i> audiv-isse, <i>to have heard</i>	audīt-us, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i> audīt-ūr us, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	audīt-um irī, <i>to be about to be heard</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> audi-ē-ns, <i>hearing</i>	<i>Perf.</i> audīt-us, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i> audīt-ūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	<i>Gerundive</i> audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, <i>to be heard, must be heard</i>

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> audi-e-nd-ī
<i>Dat.</i> audi-e-nd-ō
<i>Acc.</i> audi-e-nd-um
<i>Abl.</i> audi-e-nd-ō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> audīt-um, <i>to hear</i>
<i>Abl.</i> audīt-ū, <i>to hear, in hearing</i>

436. VERBS IN -*io* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (214, 10)

Principal Parts: **capiō capere cēpit captus**

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis	capiāris, -re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimus	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capimini	capiāmini
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
capiebam	caperem	capiebar	caperer
capiebās	caperēs	capiebāris, -re	caperēris, -re
capiebat	caperet	capiebātur	caperētur
capiebāmus	caperēmus	capiebāmur	caperēmur
capiebātis	caperētis	capiebāmini	caperēmini
capiebant	caperent	capiebantur	caperentur
<i>Future</i>			
capiam		capiar	
capies		capieris, -re	
capiet		capietur	
capiemus		capiemur	
capietis		capiemini	
capient		capientur	

IMPERATIVE

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
SINGULAR	cape	capitō	SINGULAR	capere	capitor
		capitō			capitor
PLURAL	capite	capitōte	PLURAL	capimini	capiuntor
		capiuntō			

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INFINITIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	capere		capī
GERUND			
<i>Gen.</i>	capiendī		
<i>Present Participle</i>	capiēns		<i>Gerundive</i> capiendus

**437. THE IRREGULAR VERB *Fīō*, *I am made, become*,
Fierī, *Factus* (356, 10, c)**

The irregularities are all in the present system, which is thus inflected : —

INDICATIVE			
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Pres.</i>	fīō, fīs, fit		—, —, fiunt
<i>Impf.</i>	fiēbam, fiēbās, fiēbat		fiēbāmus, fiēbātis, fiēbant
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam, fiēs, fiet		fiēmus, fiētis, fient

SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	fiam, fiās, fiat		fiāmus, fiātis, fiant
<i>Impf.</i>	fierem, fierēs, fieret		fierēmus, fierētis, fierent

IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	fī		fite
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fieri		<i>Gerundive</i> faciendus

**438. THE IRREGULAR VERB *Possum*, *Posse*, *Potuit*
(76, 165, 345, 9)**

All irregularities of tense inflection are in the present system as follows : —

INDICATIVE			
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest		possumus, potestis, possunt
<i>Impf.</i>	poteram, poterās, poterat		poterāmus, poterātis, poterant
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō, poteris, poterit		poterimus, poteritis, poterunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> possim, possis, possit	possimus, possitis, possint
<i>Impf.</i> possem, possēs, posset	possēmus, possētis, possent

Present Infinitive posse

Present Participle potēns (used always as simple adjective — *powerful*)

439. THE IRREGULAR VERB *Īre, Iit, Itūrus* (360)

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> eō, īs, it	īmus, ītis, eunt
<i>Impf.</i> ībam, ībās, ībat	ībāmus, ībātis, ībant
<i>Fut.</i> ībō, ībis, ībit	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt
<i>Perf.</i> īī, īstī, ¹ iit	iimus, īstis, iērunt. iēre
<i>Plpf.</i> ieram, ierās, ierat	ierāmus, ierātis, ierant
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> ierō, ieris, ierit	ierimus, ieritis, ierint

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> eam, eās, eat	eāmus, eātis, eant
<i>Impf.</i> īrem, īrēs, īret	īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
<i>Perf.</i> ierim, ieris, ierit	ierimus, ieritis, ierint
<i>Plpf.</i> īssem, īssēs, īsset	īssēmus, īssētis, īssent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> ī	īte
<i>Fut.</i> itō, itō	itōte, euntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> īre
<i>Perf.</i> īsse
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

īēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis
itūrus

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> eundī

¹ For the loss of *-vi-* in this and many other forms of the verb, cf. 345, 3, and 392, 3.

440. THE IRREGULAR VERBS **Volō, Nōlō, Mālō** (368)**volō, velle, voluit, to wish, be willing****nōlō, nōlle, nōluit, to be unwilling****mālō, mälle, māluit, to wish more, prefer**

All irregularities of tense inflection are in the present system.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Present</i>					
volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velis	nōlis	mālis
vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velitis	nōlītis	mālītis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Imperfect</i>					
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	vellet	nōllet	māllet
<i>Future</i>					
volet	nōlet	mālet			
IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	— nōlī	—	<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle
	— nōlite	—			mälle
<i>Fut.</i>	— nōlītō, nōlītō	—	PARTICIPLE		
	— nōlītōte, nōluntō	—	<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns

441. THE IRREGULAR VERB **Ferre (Ferō), Tulit, Lātus**
(402, 9)

All irregularities, apart from the use of another verb root in the perfect and participle, occur in the present system.

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert	ferimus, fertis, ferunt	
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam, ferēbās, ferēbat	ferēbāmus, ferēbātis, ferēbant	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, feret	ferēmus, ferētis, ferent	

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> feram, ferās, ferat	ferāmus, ferātis, ferant
<i>Impf.</i> ferrem, ferrēs, ferret	ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> fer	ferite
<i>Fut.</i> fertō, fertō	fertōte, feruntō

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ferre	ferēns

GERUND
<i>Gen.</i> ferendī

PASSIVE VOICE**INDICATIVE**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> feror, ferris, fertur	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur
<i>Impf.</i> ferēbar, ferēbāris, -re, ferēbātur	ferēbāmur, ferēbāminī, ferēbantur
<i>Fut.</i> ferar, ferēris, -re, ferētur	ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> ferar, ferāris, -re, ferātur	ferāmur, ferāminī, ferantur
<i>Impf.</i> ferrer, ferrēris, -re, ferrētur	ferrēmur, ferrēminī, ferrentur

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> ferre	feriminī
<i>Fut.</i> fertor, fertor	——, feruntor

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ferri	<i>Gerundive</i> ferendus

VOCABULARY

It has been considered not only unnecessary but harmful to the student to repeat in the Vocabulary facts which he should already know, and facts which are governed by those simple rules, a knowledge of which is essential to any use of the language. The repetition of such facts blinds the student to the existence of the rules which govern them, and impairs that self-reliance which is necessary to success. Accordingly, the pupil has not been told with every recurrence of a noun in *-tās* that its genitive is *-tātis*, or with every recurrence of a verb in *-āre* that its perfect and participle end in *-āvī* and *-ātus*. Exceptions to rules are always given. A SUMMARY TREATMENT OF THE GENDER OF ALL DECLENSIONS WILL BE FOUND IN 298; A SUMMARY OF REGULAR THIRD DECLENSION FORMS IN 415-417. If the genitive of a noun in *-us* is not given, it is a masculine of the second declension.

A slight divergence from the usual method of giving the parts of verbs has been made. In Caesar and the other narrative authors usually read by beginners, the first person of verbs is rare. Accordingly the first person singular of the present indicative is as a rule omitted, and the third singular of the perfect is given instead of the first singular. The forms thus selected as the principal parts are those universally given as such in English and German. The first person singular of the present indicative is, however, given for verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation and for irregular verbs like *sum* and *volō*.

The Arabic numerals at the end of the definitions, if not preceded by the Roman numeral *v*, refer to the LESSON in which the word is first used; if preceded by *v* they refer to the Chapter of the Fifth Book of the Gallic War in which the word first occurs (see 392-412). By means of these figures the pupil may review the USE of every word in Latin text, and examine once more whatever is said about it in the Lesson or Chapter where it first occurs. In many cases the treatment of a word in the Lesson Vocabulary is somewhat fuller than in the General Vocabulary.

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl. (*ā* is used before consonants, *ab* before vowels and *h*),
from, by. 3.

abdere, -didit, -ditus, to put away,
hide. v. 8.

abdidērunt, abditus, etc.; see *ab-*
dere.

abesse (absum), āfuit, āfutūrus, to
be away, be absent, be distant. v. 2.

abiēs, -ietis, fem., a fir tree. v. 12.

absēns, in form a pres. partic. of
abesse, absent.

absistere, abstitit, —, to stand away
from, withdraw, desist. v. 17.

absum; see *abesse*.

ac; see *atque*.

accēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, to go to,
approach; used in act. with pass.
sense, to be added. 27.

accidere, -cidit, —, (*ad* + *cadere*, to
fall), to fall upon, befall, happen. 26.

accipere, -cēpit, -ceptus, to receive,
accept. v. 9.

accūsāre (ad + causa), to call to
account, blame, accuse. 56.

aciēs, -ēi, a sharp edge, keenness, a

- sharp look, the front of an army, line of battle.* 52.
- ācritēr**, adv., *sharply, vigorously, bravely.* 37.
- āctuariūs** (*agere*), *easily driven, swift; a nāvis āctuāria* was one driven by oars as well as sails. v. 1.
- acūtus** (*acuere, to sharpen*), *sharpened, pointed, sharp.* v. 18.
- ad**, prep. with *accus.*, *to, toward, near, for.* 3.
- adaequāre** (*aequus, level, equal*), *to make equal, equal, be equal, reach, attain.* v. 8.
- addūcere**, **-dūxit**, **-ductus**, *to lead to or on, draw in, influence.* 12.
- adēptus**; partic. of *adimere*.
- adeō**; see *adire*.
- adesse** (*adsum*), **-fuit**, **-futūrus**, *to be near, be present, assist.* 55.
- adfinitās**, *nearness, relationship by marriage.* 62.
- afflictāre**, *to break to pieces, shatter, destroy; to trouble.* 42.
- adfligere**, **-flīxit**, **-flīctus**, *to strike upon, overthrow, shatter.* 13.
- adhibēre**, **-hibuit**, **-hibitus**, *to hold to, summon, apply, employ.* 67.
- adicere** (**-iō**), **-iēcīt**, **-iectus**, *to throw to, put near, add.* v. 9.
- adigere**, **-ēgit**, **-actus** (*agere*), *to drive to, thrust home.* 29.
- adimere**, **-ēmit**, **-ēptus** (*emere*), *to take away.* v. 6.
- adire** (**-eō**), **-iit**, **-itus**, *irreg.*, *to go to, approach; takes direct object.* 18.
- aditus**, **-ūs** (*adire*), *approach, way in, entrance.* 18.
- adiuvāre**, **-iūvit**, **-iūtus**, *to help.* v. 1.
- administrāre**, *to manage, control, superintend.* 1.
- admittere**, **-misīt**, **-missus**, *to send to, let go to, permit, commit.* 23.
- admodum**, adv., *to the (proper) limit, completely, very.* v. 8.
- adoriri**, **-ortus**, *to rise up to, approach, attack; commonly used only in last sense.* 37.
- adsum**; see *adesse*.
- adulēscēns**, *growing, young; as noun, a young man or woman.* v. 20.
- adulēscēntia**, *youth.* 66.
- adventus**, **-ūs**, *a coming to, arrival.* 51.
- adversus**, partic. of *advertere*, often used as a simple adj., *turned toward, facing, in front; also, opposed, adverse, unfavorable; rēs adversae, adverse things, misfortune.*
- advertere**, **-vertit**, **-versus**, *to turn to or toward.* 41.
- advolāre**, *to fly to, hasten to.* v. 17.
- aedificāre** (*aedēs, a house, and root of facere*), *to build.* v. 1.
- aedificium**, *a building.* 52.
- aegrē**, adv., (*aeger, sick*), *painfully, with difficulty, scarcely; for comparison, see 240, 3, d.* 48.
- aequinoctium** (*aequus, equal + nox*), *the time when day and night are equal, the equinox.* 53.
- aes**, *aeris*, neut., *copper, bronze; since bronze was used in coins, money; aes aliēnum, the money of another, debt.* 46.
- aestās**, *summer.* 17.
- aestus**, **-ūs**, *heaving heat (cf. aestās), heaving water, billows, tide.* 30.
- Āfricus**, *African; with ventus understood, the African or southwest wind.* v. 8.
- āfuit**, etc.; see *abesse*.
- ager**, **agrī**, masc., *a field, farm, territory, open country.* 38.
- agere**, **ēgit**, **actus**, *to set in motion, drive, act, do, discuss.* 65.
- agger**, **-eris**, masc. (*ad + gerere*), *a mass, heap; in war, a mound erected before the walls of a besieged city to sustain battering engines.* v. 9.

aggregāre (*grex, gregis, a flock*), to add to a flock, attach, join. 37.

āgmen (*agere*), that which is driven, an army on the march, line of march, column. v. 19.

alacritās (*alacer, eager*), liveliness, eagerness. 33.

albus, white. v. 12.

alere, aluit, **altus** (*alitus*), to nourish, support. 61.

aliēnus (*alius*), belonging to another, foreign, alien, unfavorable; **aes aliēnum**, money of another, debt. 51.

aliquamdiū, adv., for sometime, awhile. v. 23.

aliquantus, adj., some, considerable; the neut. form, **aliquantum**, is used both as a noun and as an adv., some, somewhat, considerably. v. 10.

aliquis, **aliquid**, pron., declined like **quis** 430, but has **aliqua** instead of **aliquae** in neut. plur., some one, any one, something, anything. 37.

alius, **alia**, **aliud**, (for decl., see 421), another, other, different; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another. 37.

alter, **altera**, **alterum**, one of two, the other, the second; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other. 43.

altitūdō (*altus*), height or depth. 11.

altus, high or deep. 6.

āmentia (*ā + mēns, mind*), want of reason, madness, folly. v. 7.

amicitia (*amicus, friend*), friendship. 66.

āmittere, -mīsīt, -missus, to let go, let slip, lose. 43.

amor, love, desire, longing. 66.

amplē, fully, amply; most frequently in the comparative **amplius**, as adv., adj., and noun, more. v. 8.

amplus, ample, large, spacious, full, splendid, distinguished, glorious. v. 19.

Ancalitēs, -um, a British tribe. v. 21.

ancora, an anchor. 9.

angulus, a corner, angle. v. 13.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely. 29.

angustus, narrow. 45.

animadvertere (*animum + ad + vertere*), -vertit, -versus, to turn the mind to, attend to, notice; in eum **animadvertere**, to punish him. 34.

animus, soul, mind, feelings, disposition, spirit, courage. 64.

annōtinus, adj., a year old, of the year before, of last year. v. 8.

annus, a year. 26.

annuus, adj., annual, for a year. 57.

ānser, -eris, masc., a goose. v. 12.

ante, adv., and prep. with accus., before, of both space and time. 52.

anteā, adv., before, beforehand. 57.

antepōnere, -posuit, -positus, to place or put before, to prefer. 41.

antiquus (*ante*), old, ancient, former. 62.

Ap.; see **Appius**.

apertus, open. 30.

appellāre, to call by name. 5.

appellere, -pulit, -pulsus, to drive to; of vessels, bring in, bring to land. v. 13.

Appius, a Roman first name. v. 1.

apportāre, to carry to, bring in. v. 1.

appropinquāre (*propinquus*), to draw near, approach. 36.

appulsus; partic. of **appellere**.

aptus, fitted, fit, suited, adapted. v. 16.

apud, prep. with accus., with, near, among; **apud Caesarem** means before Caesar, in the works of Caesar, or at Caesar's house, according as Caesar is thought of as a judge, an author, or a householder. 57.

aqua, water. 1.

aquila, an eagle; a metal eagle was the standard of the Roman legion. 2.

Arar or **Araris** (for decl., see 400, 11),

masc., a river of Gaul, now the *Saône*. 55.
arbitrāri, to believe, think. 21.
arbor, arbōris, fem., a tree. v. 9.
arcessere, -cessivit, -cessitus, (accēdere), to cause to come, summon, fetch. 40.
āridus, dry; in the neut. as a noun, dry land. 33.
arma, only in plur., arms; especially defensive arms and armor. 10.
armāmenta, only in plur., (armāre), equipment, tools; if of a ship, rigging, tackle. 10.
armāre, to arm, equip, fit out. 9.
aspectus, -ūs, a seeing, sight; appearance, aspect. v. 14.
at, conj., but. 32.
atque or **ac**, and also, and; gives prominence to what follows it. 19.
Atrebās, -ātis, an Atrebatian; the Atrebatians lived in Northern Gaul and probably in Britain. 23.
Ātrius, a Roman name. v. 9.
attāctus; partic. of **attingere**.
attigit, etc.; see **attingere**.
attingere, -tigit, -tāctus, (tangere, to touch), to touch upon, reach. 29.
auctōritās, authority, influence, advice. 23.
auctus; partic. of **augēre**.
audācia, daring, boldness, audacity; cf. **audēre**. 60.
audācter, adv., boldly. 32.
audēre, ausus est, semi-deponent, to dare, venture. 24.
audire, audīvit, auditus, to hear, listen to. 11.
augēre, auxit, auctus, to increase, enlarge, transitive; cf. the intransitive **crēscere**. 61.
aureus (aurum, gold), made of gold, golden. v. 12.
auriga, masc., a charioteer. 2.
Aurunculēius, a Roman name. 28.

ausus; partic. of **audēre**.
aut, conj., or; **aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or. 20.
autem, conj., but, however, moreover; never stands first in its clause, but usually after the first word. 32.
auxiliāri, to give help, aid. 42.
auxilium, aid, help; in plur., auxiliary forces. 17.
āvertere, -vertit, -versus, to turn away; **āversus**, turned away, with one's back turned; cf. **adversus**. 55.

B

barbarus, talking jargon, foreign, uncivilized, not Greek or Roman; as noun, an uncivilized man, barbarian. 13.
Belgium, the country of the Belgians, Belgium. v. 12.
bellum, war. 4.
Bibrocī, a tribe of Britain. v. 21.
Biturigēs, -um, a Gallic tribe. 61.
bonus, good; for comp., cf. 424, 3. 42.
brevis, short. 7.
Britanni, the Britons, people of Britain. 5.
Britannia, Britain, the land of the Britons, now Great Britain. 5.
brūma (for **brevumia**, sup. of **brevis**, with **diēs** understood), the shortest day in the year, the winter solstice (December 22); winter. v. 13.

C

C., for **Gāius**.
caeruleus (caelum, sky), like the sky, blue, dark blue. v. 14.
Caesar, Caesaris, full name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, a great Roman, — writer, general, statesman. 17.
Cantium, Kent, in the southeastern part of what is now England. v. 13.

capillus (**caput**), *the hair of the head.*

v. 14.

capere (-iō), **cēpit**, **captus**, *to take, capture.* 37.

capitis, **capita**, etc.; see **caput**.

captivus (**capere**), *adj., captive; as noun, a captive, prisoner.* v. 8.

caput, -itis, *neut., head.* v. 14.

carō, **carnis**, *fem., flesh.* v. 14.

Carvilius, a British king. v. 22.

Cassī, a tribe of Britain. v. 21.

Cassivellaunus, a British chief. v. 11.

castrum, *a fortress or fortified city; usually in the plur., castra, a military camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, (**cadere**, *to fall*), *a falling, falling out, event, occurrence, chance, mischance.* 46.

causa, *cause, reason, case* (in court). 1.

cēdere, **cessit**, **cessūrus**, *to go, give place, withdraw, yield.* v. 16.

celer, *masc., celeris, fem., celere*, *neut.; the masc. is like the fem. except in the nom. sing.; swift, quick.* 30.

celeritās, *quickness.* 52.

celeriter, *adv., quickly; for comparison, see 240, 3, d.* 42.

Cēnimāgnī, a tribe in Britain. v. 21.

centum, *indecl., a hundred.* v. 13.

certē, *adv., surely, certainly.* 34.

certus (**cernere**, *to separate, determine*), *determined, fixed, certain, sure.* 63.

cessit, **cessūrus**, etc.; see **cēdere**.

cēterus, *the other, the rest of, the remaining; usually in plural.* v. 6.

Cingetorix, -īgis, a British king. v. 22.

circiter, *adv., about, nearly, not far from.* 27.

circuitus, -ūs, (**circum** + **īre**), *a going around, circuit.* v. 13.

circum, *adv., and prep. with accus., around, about, all around.* 61.

circumdare, -**edit**, -**datus**, *to put around, surround.* 15.

circumēd; see **circumīre**.

circumīre (-eō), -iit, -itus, *to go around, go the rounds of, inspect, canvass* (in seeking office). v. 1.

circumsistere, -stitit or -stetit, —, *to stand around, to surround.* 51.

citerior, *comp. adj., nearer, hither; to a Roman meant what was nearer Rome.* v. 1.

cito, *quickly.* 50.

civitās (**civis**, *citizen*), *citizenship, a state, the body politic.* 12.

clam, *adv., and prep. with abl., secretly, without the knowledge of.* 43.

clāmitāre, *to keep crying out, to make an outcry.* v. 7.

classis, *a fleet.* 6.

Claudius, a Roman name. v. 1.

coāctus; *partic. of cōgere.*

coēgit; see **cōgere**.

coepit, *pf. (present wanting), partic., coeptus, he has begun, he began.* 15.

coērcēre, -ercuit, -ercitus, *to inclose on all sides, check, restrain.* 58.

cōgere, **coēgit**, **coāctus**, (**com** for **cum** + **agere**), *to drive together, collect, compel.* 27.

cōgnōscere, **cōgnōvit**, **cōgnitus**, *to become acquainted with, learn; pf. he has learned, he knows.* 18.

cohors, *a cohort, a tenth of a legion.* 12.

cohortāri, *to urge, encourage; stronger form than hortāri.* 36.

colere, **coluit**, **cultus**, *to till, cultivate; cherish, honor, worship.* v. 12.

collis, *masc., a hill.* 6.

color, *color.* v. 14.

commeātus, -ūs, (**commeāre**, *to go back and forth*), *a going back and forth, a trip; provisions, supplies.* 45.

commendāre (**mandāre**), *to intrust, commend, recommend.* 40.

commilitō, -ōnis, *fellow-soldier.* 35.

committere, -mīsīt, -missus, *to let go together, join, intrust, commit*; **committēre proelium**, *to join or begin battle*. 24.

Commīus, a Gaul sent by Caesar to explore Britain. 5.

commodē, adv., (**modus**), *in due measure, fitly, properly, well*. 46.

commodus (**com** + **modus**), *with due measure, suitable, convenient, easy, agreeable*; as noun in neut., **commodum**, *a convenience, advantage*. v. 2.

commonefacere (-iō), -fēcīt, -factus; pass. **commonefiō** (**monēre**), *to call to mind, remind, admonish*. 65.

commorārī, *to stay, delay, tarry*. v. 7.

commovēre, -mōvīt, -mōtus, *to move deeply, disturb, disquiet*. 66.

communis, *common, general, universal*. v. 6.

commutātiō (**mutāre**, *to change*), *change*. v. 1.

comparāre, *to make ready, prepare; get, procure*. 46.

compellere, -pulīt, -pulsus, *to drive together or vigorously, collect, force, compel*. v. 15.

complectī, -plexus, *to embrace*. 65.

complēre, -plēvīt, -plētus, *to fill, fill up, fill full*. 13.

complūrēs (gen., **complūrium**), adj. or noun, *found only in the plur., many*. 22.

comportāre, *to carry together*. 55.

comprehendere, -prehendīt, -prehēsus, *to take hold of, grasp, seize, arrest*. 39.

cōnārī, *to try, undertake*. 64.

concilium, *an assembly, council*. 59.

concursum, -ūs, (**currere**, *to run*), *a running together, concourse; onset, collision*. v. 10.

condōnāre, *to give up, sacrifice, remit, pardon, condone*. 67.

cōnferre, -tulīt, -lātus, *to bring together, collect, compare; to devote, apply, ascribe; sē cōnferre*, *to betake oneself*. 39.

cōnfertus (**cōnfercīre**, *to press together*), *pressed close together, crowded, compact*. 48.

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately*. 47.

cōnficere (-iō), -fēcīt, -fectus, *to accomplish, finish; weaken, wear out* (cf. Eng. "do up"). v. 2.

cōnfidere, -fīsus est, (semi-deponent like **audēre**), *to trust, believe*. 45.

cōnfirmāre (**fīrmus**), *to strengthen, cheer up, encourage; affirm, assert*. 14.

cōnfsisus; partic. of **cōnfidere**.

conicere (-iō), -iēcīt, -iectus, (**con** + **iacere**), *to throw together, throw with energy, hurl; to put together in thought, conclude, conjecture*. 33.

coniungere, -iūnxīt, -iūnctus, *to join together, unite*. v. 11.

coniūrātiō (**coniūrāre**, *to swear together*), *a conspiracy*. 43.

conlātus; partic. of **cōnferre**.

conlaudāre, *to praise highly, commend*. v. 2.

conlectus; partic. of **conligere**.

conligere, -lēgīt, -lectus, *to gather together, collect, recover*. v. 17.

conlocāre (**locus**), *to place, set, station, arrange*; this word NEVER means *to collect*, the **con-** in composition meaning *firmly, not together*. 49.

conloquī, -locūtus, *to talk together, converse, confer*. 45.

cōnscendere, -scendīt, -scēnsus, *to ascend, climb, go on board* (of ships). 28.

cōnsēdīt; see **cōnsidere**.

cōnsequī, -secūtus, *to pursue, overtake, attain, obtain*. 38.

cōnsessus; partic. of **cōnsidere**.

cōnsidere, -sēdit, -sessus, to sit, hold sessions, encamp, settle. v. 9.

cōnsilium, a plan, planning power, shrewdness, prudence. 4.

cōnsimilis, very like. v. 12.

cōnsistere, -stitit, -stitus, to stand, take a stand, halt; to consist in, depend upon (with prep. in). 33.

cōnsōlārī, to comfort, console. 67.

cōnspectus, -ūs, (cōnspicere), sight, view. v. 6.

cōnspicārī, to get sight of, see. v. 9.

cōnspicere (-iō), -spēxit, -spectus, to look at attentively, perceive. 29.

cōnstāre, -stitit, -stātūrus, to agree, be consistent; to stand firm; to be sure, evident; to consist of (with ex), depend upon (with in), to stand at, cost. 43.

cōnstitit; see **cōnsistere** and **cōnstāre**.

cōnstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, to place, establish, determine, appoint. 23.

cōnstitus; partic. of **cōnsistere**.

cōnsuēscere, -suēvit, -suētus, to become accustomed; usually has in the perfect the force of the present, he has become accustomed, he is wont. 15.

cōnsuētūdō, habit, way of living, usage, practice, familiarity. 25.

cōnsul, **cōnsulis**, the title of one of the two chief executive officers at Rome. v. 1.

cōnsultō, adv., (cōnsilium), deliberately, on purpose, purposely. v. 16.

cōnsūmere, -sūmpsit, -sūmptus, to use up, eat up, consume. v. 9.

contendere, -tendit, -tentus, to stretch tight, strive, contend, hasten. 15.

contentiō, a stretching, struggle, contest. v. 19.

continēns (continēre), bounding, neighboring; continuous, uninter-

rupted; of character, continent, temperate. As noun, a mainland, continent. 40.

continēre, -tinuit, -tentus, to hold together, bound, hem in, hold fast; **contentus** sometimes means satisfied, content. 14.

continuus, continuous, successive. 51.

contrā, adv., and prep. with accus., opposite, opposite to. 19.

contulit; see **cōnferre**.

convenire, -vēnit, -ventum, to come together. 22.

conventus, -ūs, a coming together, meeting, court. 59.

convocāre, to call together. 30.

coōriri, coōrtus, to come forth, arise, break forth. 40.

cōpia, plenty, a supply; in plur., troops, forces, riches. 21.

cōram, adv., and prep. with abl., (com (cum) + ōs, ōris, face), face to face, in the presence of, in person. v. 11.

corpus, -oris, body. v. 14.

cōrus, the northwest wind. v. 7.

cotidianus, adj., (cotidiē), daily. 50.

cotidiē, adv., (quot + diēs), daily, every day. 46.

Cotta, masc., a Roman name. 2.

creāre, to make, create, elect. 57.

crēber, **crēbra**, **crēbrum**, thick, frequent, repeated. v. 1.

crēscere, **crēvit**, **crētūrus**, to grow, increase. 61.

culpa, fault, blame. 39.

cultus; partic. of **colere**.

cum, prep. with abl., with, in company with. 3.

cum, conj., when, after, while, because, since, although. 33.

cunctārī, to delay, hesitate. 35.

cupere (-iō), **cupivit**, **cupītus**, to long for, desire; to be well disposed. 60.

cupidē, adv., eagerly. v. 15.

cupidus (*cupere*), *desirous, fond.* 60.
cūrāre, *to care for, attend to; takes direct object.* 63.
currus, -ūs, (*currere, to run*), *a chariot.* 49.
cursus, -ūs, (*currere, to run*), *a running, course, voyage, journey.* 38.
cūstōs, -ōdis, *a guard, keeper.* 67.

D

dare, dedit, datus, *to give; note that the a is short by exception.* 15.
dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, for, concerning, of.* 3.
dēbēre, **dēbuit**, **dēbitus**, (**dē** + **habēre**), *to hold or keep from, owe; in moral sense dēbeō, I am under obligation, I ought.* 58.
decem, indecl., *ten.* v. 9.
dēcernere, -crēvit, -crētus, *to decide, judge.* v. 5.
decimus, *tenth.* 35.
dēclivis, (**clivus**, *a slope*), *sloping down.* 50.
dēcrēvit, **dēcrētus**, etc.; see **dēcernere**.
dēdecus, -oris, *disgrace.* 25.
dēdere, -didit, -ditus, *to give away, give up, surrender.* v. 20.
dedit; see **dare**.
dēditio (**dēdere**), *a surrender.* v. 22.
dēditus; partic. of **dēdere**.
dēducere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead down or off, draw down, launch.* v. 12.
dēesse (**dēsum**), **dēfuit**, -**futūrus**, *to be wanting, fail, be at fault.* 38.
dēfatigāre, *to tire out, fatigue.* v. 16.
dēfectiō (**dēficere**), *a failing, failure, lack; a defection, revolt.* v. 22.
dēfendere, -fendit, -fēnsus, *to ward off; defend.* v. 7.
dēferre, -tulit, -lātus, *to bring away, grant, confer; to give an account of, report.* 39.

dēficere (-iō), -fēcit, -fectus (**dē** + **facere**), *to withdraw, revolt, fail, be wanting.* 18.
dēfigere, -fixit, -fixus, *to fasten down, or down in, or down into, to plant, set.* v. 18.
dēicere or **dēicere** (-iō), -iēcit, -iectus, *to throw down, drive out, destroy.* 36.
deinceps, adv., (**deinde** + **capere**), *taking the next place, in order, successively.* v. 16.
deinde, adv., *then, next.* 52.
dēlātus; partic. of **dēferre**.
dēlēctus; partic. of **dēligere**.
dēligāre, *to bind down, bind fast.* 8.
dēligere, -lēgit, -lēctus, *to pick out, choose.* v. 11.
dēlitiscere or -**litescere**, -lituit, —, *to hide away, lie hid.* 48.
dēmetere, -messuit, -messus, *to cut down, reap.* 48.
dēminuere -minuit, -minūtus, (**minus**), *to lessen.* 62.
dēmōstrāre, *to point out, show, explain.* 2.
dēmum, adv., *at length, at last.* 57.
dēperire (-eō), -iit, -itūrus, *to go to ruin, perish, be lost.* v. 23.
dēpōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to place down, lay aside.* 48.
dēprecārī (**prex**), *to avert by prayer, seek to avoid, plead with:* v. 6.
dēsiderāre, *to long for, ask, desire; miss, lack, lose.* v. 23.
dēsignāre (**signum**), *to mark out, point out, describe, designate.* 59.
dēsilire, -siluit, -sultus, *to leap down.* 33.
dēspērāre (**spēs**), *to be hopeless, despair.* 63.
dēstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to set down, abandon, forsake.* 56.
dēsultus; partic. of **dēsilire**.
dēsum; see **dēesse**.

dēterrere, -terrui, -territus, *to frighten from, deter*; cf. terror. 58.

dētrimentum (dē + terere, trivit, tritus, *to rub*; cf. Eng. *trite*), *that which is worn away, wear and tear, loss, damage, detriment*. v. 22.

dētulit; see **dēferre**.

deus (the plur. cases are often contracted, thus nom. dī, gen. deum, dat. and abl. dis), *a god*. 35.

dexter, -tera, -terum, or -tra, -trum, *on the right side, the right*; comp. **dexterior**, superl. **dextimus**; **dexter** or **dextra**, with **manus** understood, *the right hand*, often used as a pledge of friendship. 67.

dicere, dixit, dictus, *to say*. 26.

diēs, -ēī, masc. by exception, *day*; often fem. in sing. when it means *length of time* or *a set day*. 24.

differre, distulit, dilātus, (dis, *apart* + ferre), *to carry apart, spread abroad; to defer, postpone; to differ, be different*. v. 14.

difficultās, *difficulty*. 32.

dignitās (dignus, *worthy*), *worthiness, worth, rank, honor, dignity*. v. 7.

dilātus; partic. of **differre**.

dimicāre, *to fight, struggle*. v. 16.

dīmidium (dis, *apart* + medius), *the half, one half*. v. 13.

dimittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send different ways, dismiss, give up*. 21.

discēdere, -cessit, -cessurus, *to go apart, go away, depart*. 45.

dispār (pār), *unequal, unlike, ill-matched*. v. 16.

dispergere, -persit, -persus, *to scatter, disperse*. 48.

dispōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to place here and there, arrange, dispose*. v. 16.

distribuere, -tribuit, -tributus, *to distribute, assign*. 27.

distulit; see **differre**.

diū, adv., for comp., see 424, 5, (akin to diēs), *all day, a long time, long*; used only of time; cf. **longē**, used of space. 52.

Dīviciācus, a Haeduan leader, and friend of the Romans. 59.

dō; 1st pers. sing. pres. indic. of **dare**. **dolor**, *a pain, ache; suffering, grief, sorrow*. 66.

domesticus (domus), *of home, domestic, civil* (of war). v. 9.

Domitius, a Roman name. v. 1.

domus, -ūs, fem. by exception, *a house, home*; it has some forms of the 2d declension. 23.

dubitāre, *to doubt, hesitate*. 58.

dūcere, dūxit, ductus, *to lead, draw, draw out, prolong, put off, delay; draw an inference, consider*. 12.

dum, conj., *while, until*. 25.

Dumnorix, -īgis, a Haeduan leader. 59.

duo, duae, duo, *two*; for decl., see 422. 27.

duodecim, indecl., (duo + decem), *twelve*. 46.

duodēvigintī, indecl., *two from twenty, eighteen*. 27.

uplicāre (duplex, *double*), *to double*. 53.

dūrus, *hard, to the touch, hardy, vigorous, rude, harsh, severe, difficult*.

Dūrus, a Roman name. v. 15.

dux, ducis, *a leader, guide*. v. 22.

E

ē, prep.; see **ex**.

eadem; see **idem**.

efficere (-iō), -fēcīt, -fectus, (ex + facere), *to make out, work out, bring to pass, cause, accomplish*. 42.

effūdīt; see **effundere**.

effugere (iō), -fūgīt, —, trans. or intrans., *to flee away, escape from*. 37.

- effundere**, -fūdīt, -fūsus, *to pour out, spread abroad, waste, scatter.* v. 19.
- ego**, *I*; for decl., see 426. 35.
- ēgredī** (-ior), -gressus, trans. or intrans., *to go out, go out of, disembark, land.* 24.
- ēgregiē**, *excellently.* v. 9.
- ēgregius** (grex, *herd*), *exceptional, choice, excellent.* 64.
- ēgressus**; partic. of **ēgredī**.
- ēgressus**, -ūs, *a going out, a landing* (when used of ships). v. 8.
- ēicere** (-iō), -iēcīt, -iectus, *to cast out, cast away, wreck; expel, eject, exile.* v. 10.
- ēiectus**; partic. from **ēicere**.
- emere**, ēmit, ēmptus, (originally *to take*), *to buy.* 56.
- ēmittere**, -misīt, -missus, *to send out, let go forth, set free.* v. 19.
- ēmptus**; partic. of **emere**.
- enim**, conj., *for*; follows the first word of the clause. 19.
- ēnūntiāre**, *to speak out, express, disclose.* 56.
- eō**, adv., *to that place, thither.* 23.
- eō**, eunt, eat, eundum, etc.; see **īre**.
- eōdem**, adv., *to the same place.* 41.
- eōdem**; abl. of **īdem**.
- eques**, -itis, *a horseman, knight, cavalry soldier.* 14.
- equester**, adj., *of a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry*; for decl., cf. **pedester** 193. Cf. meaning of **equus**, **eques**, **equitātus**. 63.
- equitātus**, -ūs, *collective noun, cavalry*; cf. **equus**, **eques**. 32.
- equus**, *a horse.* 14.
- erant**; impf. tense of **esse**.
- ēripere**, (-iō), -ripuit, -reptus, (ē + rapere), *to snatch away, rescue.* 58.
- ēruptiō** (ē + rumpere, *to break*), *a breaking forth, rush, sally.* v. 22.
- esse** (sum), fuit, *to be*; est, *he is*; futūrus, *about to be*; for inflection, see 431. 1.
- essedā** (or **essedum**), *a war chariot peculiar to Gaul and Britain.* 5.
- essedārius**, *a driver of an esseda, a charioteer in Gaul or Britain.* 5.
- est**, *he, she, it is*; see **esse**.
- et**, conj., *and*; et . . . et, *both . . . and.* 5.
- etiam**, adv., *also, even.* 34.
- etsi**, conj., *although.* 15.
- ēvenire**, -vēnit, -ventūrus, *to come out, turn out, happen.* 35.
- ēventus**, -ūs, (ēvenire), *an occurrence, fortune, fate; the outcome, consequence.* 46.
- ex**, prep. with abl., *out of, from.* Sometimes ē before consonants. 3.
- exāmināre**, *to weigh.* v. 12.
- excēdere**, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go out, depart.* 47.
- excipere** (-iō), -cēpit, -ceptus, *to take out, take up, catch, come next to, succeed, meet, receive.* v. 16.
- excludere** (ex + claudere, *to shut*), *to shut out, exclude, prevent.* v. 23.
- excūsare** (ex + causa), *to excuse.* 25.
- exercitātiō**, *exercise, training.* 50.
- exercitus**, -ūs, (exercēre, *to train*), *a trained body, an army.* 28.
- exiguitās** (exiguus), *scantiness, smallness.* 45.
- exiguus**, *narrow, small.* 17.
- exīstimāre** (ex + aestimāre), *to estimate, esteem, think.* 26.
- exīstimātiō** (exīstimāre), *judgment, opinion, reputation.* 66.
- expedire**, -pedivit, -peditus, (ex + pēs, *pedis*), *to extricate, disentangle, set free, bring forward; to be useful; expeditus, unencumbered, without baggage.* 11.
- expeditiō** (expedire), *a getting ready, a despatching; hence, an expedition.* v. 10.

expellere, -pult, -pulsus, *to drive out.* 51.

explorare, *to search out, examine, ascertain, make sure.* v. 1.

expōnere, -posuit, -positus *to place or put out, land; to expose, display; to set forth, explain.* 29.

expulit, expulsus, etc.; see **expellere**.

expectare, *to wait for, await.* 1.

extare or **extare**, —, —, *to stand out, stand forth, be prominent; appear, exist, be extant.* v. 18.

exterior, *outer, exterior.* v. 10.

extrahere, -trāxit, -trāctus, *to draw out, protract, waste.* v. 22.

extrēmus, *outermost, farthest, the end of; see exterior.*

F

faber, -brī, (root of **facere**), *a maker, blacksmith, carpenter, artisan.* v. 11.

facere (-iō), **fēcit, factus**, *to make, do.* 21.

facile, adv., *easily; for comparison, see 424, 2.* v. 22.

facultās, *power, opportunity, means, a supply.* 24.

fāgus, fem., *a beech tree.* v. 12.

familiāris (**familia**, *household*), *of the household, private, intimate; as noun, a friend; rēs familiāris, private property.* 61.

fās, indecl. noun, *divine law, right, a thing permitted.* v. 12.

favere, **fāvit, fautūrus**, *to be favorable, to favor; intrans., and takes dat. of person.* 62.

fēliciter, adv., (**fēlix**, *fortunate*), *fortunately, auspiciously.* 35.

ferē, adv., *usually, almost.* 1.

ferre, **tulit, lātus**, *to bear, carry, endure; for inflection, see 441.* 22.

ferreus (**ferrum**), *made of iron, iron.* v. 12.

ferrum, *iron.* v. 12.

fidēlis, *faithful.* 7.

fidēs, -ei, *faith, good faith, a promise, promise of protection, protection.* 24.

fieri, factus est, *to be made or done, to happen; for inflection, see 437.* 30.

figūra, *shape, figure.* 34.

finis, masc. by exception, *end; in plur., limits, boundaries, confines, territory.* 63.

finitimus (**finis**), *bordering upon, neighboring; as noun, a neighbor.* 7.

firmiter, adv., *firmly.* 37.

firmus, *strong, firm, loyal.* v. 20.

flāgitare, *to ask repeatedly or earnestly; to demand, importune, dun.* 55.

flāre, *to blow.* v. 7.

flectere, **flēxit, flexus**, *to bend, turn.* 50.

flēre, **flēvit, flētus**, *to weep; for parts, cf. 382, 1.* 67.

flēxit, flexus, etc., see **flectere**.

flō; see **flāre**.

fluctus, -ūs, (**fluere**, *to flow*), *a wave.* 32.

flūmen, flūminis, neut., (**fluere**, *to flow*), *a river.* 55.

fōrma, *form, shape.* v. 1.

fortūna, *luck, fortune, good or bad; possessions.* 38.

fossa (partic. of **fodere**, *to dig*), *that which has been dug, a ditch, trench.* v. 21.

frangere, **frēgit, frāctus**, *to break, break down, fracture, wreck.* 43.

frāter, -tris, *brother.* 59.

frāternus, *belonging to a brother, brother's, for or of a brother, brotherly, fraternal.* 59.

frēgit, etc.; see **frangere**.

frigus, -oris, neut., *cold; in plur. with the same meaning, or cold spells, frosts.* 55.

frūmentāri, *to get grain, forage.* 47.
frūmentārius (**frūmentum**), *pertain-*

ing to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply. v. 8.
frūmentum, *grain.* 4.
frustrā, adv., *to no purpose, in vain.* v. 23.
fuerant, fuērunt, etc.; see **esse**.
fuga, *flight.* 38.
fugere (-iō), **fūgit**, **fugitūrus**, *to flee, run away.* v. 9.
fuit, etc.; see **esse**.
funda, *a sling; for sling shot, see* 6. 9.
fūnis, masc., *a rope.* 6.
futūrus, etc.; see **esse**.

G

Gāius, a Roman first name; in English, *Caius.* 5.
Gallia, *Gaul, the country.* 6.
Gallicus, adj., *Gallic, belonging to Gaul or its people.* 6.
gallina, *a hen.* v. 12.
Gallus, *a Gaul, an inhabitant of the country.* 6.
genus, -eris, *kind, class.* 18.
gerere, gessit, **gestus**, *to carry, carry on, do, wage.* 18.
Germānia, *Germany.* v. 13.
gessit, gestus, etc.; see **gerere**.
grātia, *favor, either shown or received; hence kindness, gratitude, or popularity; sometimes like causa, with a genitive, cause, reason, sake.* 60.
gravis, *heavy, severe, weighty, influential.* 7.
gravitās (gravis), *weight, heaviness; severity, dullness; importance, dignity, influence.* v. 16.
graviter, adv., *heavily, violently, disagreeably, (cf. graviter ferre, to take ill, take hard, be vexed), weightily, impressively.* 46.
gubernātor (gubernāre, *to steer*), *a steersman, pilot.* v. 10.
gustāre, *to taste.* v. 12.

H

habēre, habuit, habitus, *to have, hold, own, consider.* 10.
haec; see **hic**.
Haeduus, adj., *Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan, one of the Haeduans, a tribe of Central Gaul in alliance with the Romans.* 55.
Helvētius, adj., *Helvetian; as noun, a Helvetian. The Helvetians occupied the territory of modern Switzerland.* 62.
hī; see **hic**.
Hibernia, *Ireland.* v. 13.
hībernus (hiems), adj., *belonging to winter; hiberna (with castra understood), winter quarters.* v. 1.
hic, haec, hoc, adj. and pron. referring to what is near the speaker or writer, *this, the latter, the following, the present; for declension, see* 113, 1 and 6. 17.
hiemāre (hiems), *to pass the winter, winter.* 43.
hiems (hiemps), *hiemis, winter.* 17.
Hispānia, *Spain.* v. 1.
hoc; see **hic**.
homō, -inis, masc. and fem., *a human being, man; in plural, people.* 1.
honor, *honor, office.* 62.
hōra, *an hour.* 29.
horridus, *standing on end, shaggy, rough, savage, horrid.* v. 14.
hortāri, hortātus, *to urge, encourage, harangue.* 23.
hospes, -itis, masc., *an entertainer, host, guest, visitor, a friend in another country, foreign representative.* v. 6.
hostis, masc. by meaning, *an enemy; hostēs, the enemy, as in English.* 6.
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.* 22.
huic; see **hic**.

hūmānus (*homō*), of man, human, humane, kind, civilized. v. 14.

humilis (*humus*, earth), low, lowly, humble, mean; for comp., see 424, 2. v. 1.

humilitās (*humilis*), lowness; meanness, baseness. v. 1.

I

iacere (*-iō*), **iēcit**, **iactus**, to throw. 36.
iactāre (*iacere*), to throw repeatedly, throw about; when used of words, to bandy, discuss. 59.

iam, adv., now, already, at length. 65.

ibi, adv., in that place, there. 23.

īdem (for *isdem*), **eadem**, **idem**, the same; for declension, see 428. 27.

idōneus, fit, suitable. 9.

iēcit; see **iacere**.

ignōrāre, not to know, to be ignorant. v. 9.

ignōscere, **ignōvit**, **ignōtus**, to grant pardon, pardon. 39.

ignōtus, unknown. 10.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, 192, 2, pron. and adj., he, she, it, that, yonder, that well-known, famous. 33.

illīc, adv., in that place, there, yonder. 61.

illō, adv., to that place, thither. 19.

impedimentum (**impedire**), that which hinders, a hindrance; in plur., the heavy baggage of an army, the baggage train, including the beasts of burden. 14.

impedire, **-pedivit**, **-peditus**, (in + **pēs**, **pedis**), to entangle, hinder, impede; **impeditus**, hindered, encumbered with baggage, embarrassed, taken at a disadvantage. 11.

imperāre (**imperium**), to give orders, command, levy. 24.

imperātor, **-ōris**, (**imperāre**), commander, general, commander-in-chief. 19.

imperitus (in neg. + **peritus**, tried), inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 25.

imperium, command, supreme power, government. 22.

impetrāre, to obtain one's request, gain assent, get permission. v. 6.

impetus, **-ūs**, (**petere**), an attack, impulse, violence, force. 38.

implorāre, to call for help, implore. v. 7.

importāre, to carry in, import. v. 12.

improbis (**probare**), not good, bad, excessive, reckless. 58.

imprōvisus, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvisō**, from the unforeseen, unexpectedly. v. 22.

imprūdēns (in + **prō** + **vidēns**), not foreseeing, unaware, unexpected, heedless. v. 15.

imprudentia (**imprūdēns**), want of foresight, imprudence, ignorance. 39.

in, prep. with accus. and abl.: with accus., into; with abl., in, on, among, at. 3.

inānis, empty, worthless, vain. v. 23.

incendere, **-cendit**, **-cēnsus**, to set on fire, fire, kindle, ignite. 52.

incendium (**incendere**), a fire. v. 19.

incēnsus; partic. of **incendere**.

incertus, not fixed, unsettled, uncertain. 48.

incitāre, to stir up, arouse. 2.

incōgnitus (**cōgnōscere**), not examined, untried, unknown. 19.

incolere, **-coluit**, —, to dwell, dwell in, inhabit. 20.

incolumis, safe, in safety, uninjured. 7.

incommodus, inconvenient, unsuitable, unpleasant; as noun in neut.,

- incommodum**, inconvenience, "unpleasantness," misfortune, loss. v. 10.
- incursiō** (*currere*, to run), a running against, inroad, incursion. v. 21.
- inde**, adv., from that place, thence. 17.
- inēō**, ineunt, etc.; see **inīre**.
- inferre**, intulit, inlātus, to bring in, bring upon or against; **signa inferre**, to advance, attack. 40.
- inferus**, below, beneath, low; for comp., see 424, 4; as noun, **inferi**, the ones below, i.e., in Hades, the dead. 41.
- inficere** (-iō), -fēcit, -fectus, to put in (cf. **praefficere**), stain, dye, infect. v. 14.
- infinitus** (*finis*), endless, unlimited, infinite. v. 12.
- infirmus**, not strong, weak. 53.
- infra**, adv., and prep. with accus., below, underneath. 53.
- ingredi** (-ior), -gressus, to go into, enter. v. 9.
- inīre** (-eō), -iit, -itus, to go into, enter, begin; **inīre cōsiliū**, to form a plan. 47.
- initium** (*inīre*), a going into, beginning. 63.
- iniūria** (in neg. + *iūs, iūris*), wrong, injustice, outrage. 67.
- iniussū** (in neg. + *iubēre*), found only in abl., without command. 63.
- inopia** (in neg. + root of *ops*; cf. *copia* = *com-opia*), need, want. v. 2.
- inquit**, says he; found commonly only in the pres. and fut. ind., and always after one or more words of a direct quotation. 35.
- insciēns**, unknowing, unaware; cf. **sciēre**. 63.
- insequi**, -secūtus, to follow up. v. 7.
- insinuāre** (*sinus*, a curve), to wind in, work one's way in, insinuate. 49.
- insistere**, **instatit**, —, to stand on; to follow up, pursue. 50.
- instabilis** (*stāre*, to stand), not steadfast, unsteady. 30.
- instāre**, -stitit, -stātūrus, to stand upon, approach press upon, threaten. For case used with it, see 235, 5. 56.
- instatit**; see **insistere** and **instāre**.
- instituire**, -stituit, -stitūtus, to put in place, arrange, make ready, establish, undertake, begin; determine; instruct, train up. v. 11.
- institūtum** (partic. of **instituire**), mode of life, habit, custom. 1.
- instruere**, -strūxit, -strūctus, to build in, form, draw up, make ready, furnish. v. 2.
- insuēfactus** (in + *suēscere*, to become accustomed + *facere*), made accustomed to, trained. 33.
- insuētus** (in neg. + *suēscere*; cf. *cōsuēscere*), unaccustomed. v. 6.
- insula**, an island. 1.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, (in + *tangere*, to touch), untouched, unhurt, whole, complete, fresh, undecided; **dē integro**, ab **integrō**, anew, afresh. v. 16.
- intelligere**, -lēxit, -lēctus, (inter, between + *legere*, to choose), to see into, discern, understand. 45.
- inter**, prep. with accus., between, among. 22.
- intercēdere**, -cessit, -cessūrus, to come between, intervene, exist between, come to pass. v. 11.
- intercessit**, etc.; see **intercēdere**.
- interclūdere**, -clūsit, -clūsus, (inter + *claudere*, to shut), to shut out or in, cut off, intercept. 45.
- interdicere**, -dixit, -dictus, to interpose by speaking, forbid, interdict; followed by the dat. of the person and the abl. of the thing. v. 22.
- interea**, adv., meanwhile. 40.
- interficere** (-iō), -fēcit, -fectus, to put out of the way, kill. 48.

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the mean-time.* 22.

interior (424, 4), *inner.* v. 12.

intermittere, -mīsīt, -missus, *to leave off, leave unoccupied, interrupt.* 21.

interpōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to put between, interpose, bring forward, pledge; suggest.* 47.

interpres, -etis, *an interpreter.* 64.

intervallum (vāllum), *a space between ramparts, interval, distance.* v. 16.

intrā, adv., and prep. with accus., *within.* v. 9.

introitus, -ūs, (intrō, *within* + īre), *a going in, entrance.* v. 9.

inūsītātus (ūtī), *unusual, strange.* 34.

inūtilis, *useless.* 10.

invenire, -vēnit, -ventus, *to come upon, find.* v. 2.

ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *intensive pron., (428), selves, themselves, in person, the very, the mere.* 19.

īre (eō), **iit**, **itūrus**, (439), *to go.* v. 18.

is, **ea**, **id**, *demons. and pers. pron. and demons. adj. (71, 5), he, she, it, that, this, such.* 14.

ita, adv., *thus, so; limiting verbs.* 29.

Italia, *Italy.* v. 1.

itaque, adv. and conj., *therefore.* 9.

item, adv., *also.* 36.

iter, **itineris**, neut., (īre), *a way, route, journey, march; iter facere, often means to march.* 47.

itineris, **itinere**, etc.; see **iter**.

Itius, *a harbor in Gaul, on the English Channel at its narrowest part.* v. 2.

iubēre, **iussit**, **iussus**, *to order, command.* 15.

iūdicāre, *to judge, believe.* 2.

iugum (iungere, *to join*), *that which joins, a yoke, for cattle or horses; conquered armies, in token of submission, were often sent under a yoke consisting of a spear set on*

two uprights (cf. Eng. subjugate); a yoke-shaped hill, a ridge. 50.

iumentum (iugum), *a beast of burden, horse, mule.* v. 1.

iūrāre, *to take oath, swear; iūs iūrandum, an oath.* v. 6.

iūs, **iūris**, neut., *right, justice, common or universal law.* v. 6.

iussit, **iussus**, etc.; see **iubēre**.

iūstitia, *justice, sense of justice.* 64.

L

L.; see **Lūcius**.

Laberius, *a Roman name.* v. 15.

Labiēnus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.* v. 8.

labor, *toil, effort, labor.* v. 8.

labōrāre, *to labor, toil, struggle, be hard pressed.* 38.

labrum, *lip, top, edge.* v. 14.

lāc, **lactis**, neut., *milk.* v. 14.

laccessere, **laccessivit**, **laccessitus**, *to provoke, irritate, attack, harass.* 51.

lacrima, *a tear.* 65.

largīrī, **largītus**, *to give bountifully, give bribes.* 61.

largiter, adv., *largely, bountifully.* 61.

lātē, adv., *widely, far and wide.* 52.

lateris, **latera**, etc.; see **latus**, *side.*

lātus, *wide, broad.* v. 1.

lātus; partic. of **ferre**.

latus, -eris, *side, flank.* 32.

laudāre, *to praise.* v. 8.

lēgātīō (lēgāre, *send as deputy*), *the office of ambassador, an embassy, legation.* v. 21.

lēgātus (lēgāre, *send as deputy*), *a deputy, legate, lieutenant, ambassador.* 5.

legiō, *a legion; the Roman legion was a body of soldiers, numbering in the army of Caesar about 3600 men.* 11.

legiōnārius, adj., (legiō), *of a legion, legionary.* v. 19.

lēnis, *smooth, gentle*. 41.
lēniter (**lēnis**), *softly, gently*. v. 17.
lepus, -oris, masc., *a hare*. v. 12.
liber, -era, -erum, *free*. v. 7.
liberālitās (**liber**), *the quality of a freeman, generosity*. 60.
liberāliter (**liber**), *adv., like a freeman, generously, courteously*. 23.
liberāre (**liber**), *to free*. 32.
liberē (**liber**), *adv., freely*. 59.
libertās (**liber**), *freedom, liberty*. 58.
licērī, **licitus**, *to bid (at an auction)*. 60.
Liscus, *a Haeduan ruler*. 57.
lītus, -oris, *seashore, beach*. 25.
locus, masc. (but in plur., **loca**, neut.), *a place*. 13.
locūtus; *partic. of loquī*.
longē, *adv., far, by far*. 38.
longinquus (**longus**), *far off, distant, prolonged*. 40.
longitūdō (**longus**), *length*. v. 13.
longus, *long*; **nāvis longa**, *a war ship*. 6.
loquī, **locūtus**, *to speak, talk*. 65.
Lūcius, *a Roman first name*. v. 1.
Lugotorix, -īgis, *a Briton*. v. 22.
lūna, *the moon*. 42.
lūx, **lūcis**, *light*. v. 8.

M

magistrātus, -ūs, *a civil office, civil officer, ruler, magistrate*. 57.
māgnus, *big, large, great*. 2.
māgnitūdō (**māgnus**), *greatness, size, magnitude*. 11.
māgnopere, *adv., greatly, much*; *comp. magis, more; superl. mājimē, most, especially, very*. 32.
mandāre, *to put into the hand, commit, intrust, command*. 2.
mandātum (**mandāre**), *a thing intrusted, commission, command*. 39.
Mandubracius, *a Briton*. v. 20.

māne, *adv., in the morning, early in the morning*. v. 10.
manus, -ūs, *fem. by exception, hand; also a band of men, force*. 32.
mare, *a sea*. 6.
maritimus (**mare**), *pertaining to the sea, marine, sea*. 8.
māter, -tris, *mother*. 61.
māteria, *timber, wood*. 46.
mātūrus, *ripe, mature, early*. 17.
mē; *see ego*.
mediterrāneus (**medius** + **terra**), *inland, remote from the sea*. v. 12.
medius, *the middle, the middle of*. 53.
Meldī, *a Gallic tribe*. v. 5.
membrum, *an arm or a leg, limb*. 33.
memoria, *memory, remembrance; period of remembrance, generation; historical narrative, history*. v. 12.
Menapiī, *a Belgian tribe*. 28.
mēnsus; *partic. of mētīrī*.
mercātor, *a trader, merchant*. 19.
merīdiānus (**merīdiēs**), *adj., cf mid-day, noon*. v. 8.
merīdiēs, —, -em, *accus., -ē, abl., masc., (medius + diēs), mid-day, noon; the south*. v. 13.
messuit, **messus**, etc.; *see metere*.
metere, **messuit**, **messus**, *to reap, mow, harvest*. 48.
mētīrī, **mēnsus**, *to measure*. 56.
metus, -ūs, *dread, fear, apprehension*. v. 6.
meus, *my*; cf. 427, and *accus. mē*. 35.
miles, -itis, *a soldier*. 12.
militāris, *pertaining to soldiers, military*. 7.
mille, *in sing. usually an indeclinable adj., a thousand; the plur., mīlia or millia, is a noun declined like the plur. of mare*. 27.
minimē; *see parum*.
minimus, **minor**, etc.; *see parvus*.
minuere, **minuit**, **minūtus**, (**minus**), *to lessen, diminish*. 66.

minus; see **parum**.

mittere, **misit**, **missus**, to let go, send.

14.

mōbilitās (**movēre**, to move), activity, mobility; changeableness, fickleness.

50.

moderārī, to restrain, moderate, manage, guide. 50.

modo, adv., only, just now, lately. 18.

modus, measure, manner, mode, fashion. 39.

mollis, soft, tender, delicate. v. 9.

Mona, the Isle of Man. v. 13.

monēre, **monuit**, **monitus**, to remind, advise, warn. 10.

mōns, masc. by exception, a mountain. 12.

morārī, trans. or intrans., to delay, remain. 17.

Morinī, the Morinians, a tribe of northern Gaul on the English Channel at its narrowest point. 13.

mors, death. v. 20.

mōtus, -ūs (**movēre**, to move), a moving, motion. 30.

multitūdō (**multus**), a great number, multitude. 11.

multum and **multō**, advs., much; **multō** is really an abl., and is used as a rule only with comparatives. 56.

multus, much; in plur., many; in the comp. the sing. has only the neut. plūs, plūris, more; see 424, 3 and 266, 5. 40.

mūnīre, **mūnivit**, **mūnītus**, to fortify. v. 9.

mūnitiō (**mūnīre**), a fortifying, fortification. v. 9.

N

nactus; partic. of **nanciscī**.

nam, conj. in principal clauses, for. 34.

namque, conj., a strengthened **nam**, for, and in fact. 51.

nanciscī, **nactus** or **nanctus**, to get, obtain, find. 28.

nāscī, **nātus**, to be born, spring up; to be found. v. 12.

nātiō (**nāscī**), a birth, a race of people, nation. 11.

nātūra (**nāscī**), nature, character. 29.

nātus; partic. of **nāscī**.

nauta (for **nāvitā** from **nāvis**) a sailor, boatman. v. 10.

nāvālis, adj., of ships, for ships, naval. v. 22.

nāvigāre, intransitive, to sail. 3.

nāvigātiō (**nāvigāre**), the act of sailing, sailing, a voyage. 53.

nāvigium, a vessel, ship. 38.

nāvis, a ship, boat. 6.

nē, adv. and conj.; as adv. no, not, used with a subjunctive of will or wish; as a conj. used to introduce a negative purpose clause, so that not, lest. 36.

nec; see **neque**.

necāre (**nex**), to kill. v. 6.

necessāriō, adv., necessarily, unavoidably. 41.

necessārius (**necesse**), necessary, unavoidable, needful; as noun, a relative, friend. 56.

necesse (found only in the nom. and accus. sing. neut.), unavoidable, necessary. 43.

negāre, to say . . . not, to deny. v. 6.

neglegere, -lēxit, -lēctus, to disregard, neglect. v. 7.

negōtium (**nec** + **ōtium**, ease), business, trouble. v. 2.

nēmō (**nē** + **homō**), gen. wanting, dat. **nēminī**, no man, no one. 11.

nēquāquam, adv., by no means, not at all. 29.

neque or **nec**, and not; **neque** . . . **neque**, neither . . . nor. 9.

nervus, a sinew, muscle, cord, nerve; force, strength. 66.

neu; see *nēve*.

nēve or *neu* (*nē* + *ve*, or), and not, and that not, and lest. v. 22.

nex, *necis*, death, especially a violent death. 57.

nihil, indecl. but an abl. form *nihilō* occurs, nothing. v. 7.

nisi, conj., if not, unless. 32.

nīti, *nīxus*, or *nīsus*, to press upon, lean upon, strive, struggle. 33.

nōbilis (cf. *nōtus*), well-known, high-born. 61.

nōbilitās (*nōbilis*), celebrity, high birth, the nobility. v. 6.

nocēre, *nocuit*, *nocitūrus*, to do harm, hurt, injure. v. 7.

noctū, abl. form used as an adv., at night, by night. 42.

nocturnus (*nox*), adj., of night, by night, nightly, nocturnal. v. 11.

nōlle (*nōlō*), *nōluit*, —, (*nē* + *velle*), not to wish, to be unwilling. 55.

nōmen (cf. *nōtus*), a means of knowing, name. 62.

nōn, adv., not. 2.

nōndum, adv., not yet. 46.

nōnus, ninth. 29.

nōs, we; see *ego*.

noster, *nostra*, *nostrum*, our. 17.

nōtus (*nōscere*, to come to know), known, well-known. 14.

novitās (*novus*), newness, strangeness, novelty. 14.

novus, new, strange, novel. 8.

nox, *noctis*, night. 42.

nūbere, *nūpsit*, *nūptus*, to veil one's self, hence to marry (said of the woman); takes the dat. of the name of the man. 62.

nūllus (*nē* + *ūllus*), adj., not any, none, no; as noun, nobody, nothing. 41.

numerus, a number. 8.

nummus, a piece of money, money; a Roman coin. v. 12.

numquam or *nunquam*, adv., (*nē* + *umquam*), at no time, never. v. 16.

nūntiāre, to make known, report, announce. 2.

nūntius, a messenger, or a message, news. 5.

nūpsit, *nūptus*, etc.; see *nūbere*.

nūtus, -ūs, (*nuere*, to nod), found only in nom. sing., and accus. and abl. sing. and plur., a nod, hint, command. 30.

O

ob, prep. with accus., on account of; in composition, toward, before, in the way, against. 3.

obicere (-iō), -iēcit, -iectus, to cast in the way or against, oppose, expose, present, offer; "throw in the teeth," taunt. v. 13.

obsecrāre, to beseech, implore. 65.

obses, -idis, masc. or fem., a hostage; hostages were human beings given by a person or nation to guarantee the fulfillment of an agreement; if the agreement was broken, the hostage might be killed. 12.

obstinātē, adv., firmly, persistently. v. 6.

obtemperāre, to submit, be obedient. 22.

obtestārī (*testis*, a witness), to call as a witness, appeal to, entreat. 35.

obtinēre, -tinuit, -tentus (*tenēre*), to hold against all comers, own, possess; does NOT in Caesar mean obtain. 58.

occāsus, -ūs (*ob* + *cadere*, to fall), a falling, setting; *occāsus sōlis*, sunset, the west. 41.

occidere, -cidit, -cāsūrus, (*ob* + *cadere*, to fall), to fall, perish; of the sun and stars, to set. v. 13.

occidere, -cīdit, -cīsus, (ob + caedere, to cut), to cut down, slay. 52.

occultāre, to hide, conceal. v. 19.

occupāre, to seize, take possession of. 8.

occupātiō (occupāre), a seizure, engrossment in any employment, occupation. 11.

occurrere, -currit, -cursus, to run up, meet, fall in with, resist. 37.

Ōceanus, the ocean. 42.

octingenti, eight hundred. v. 8.

octō, indecl., eight. 27.

octōgintā, indecl., eighty. 27.

oculus, an eye. v. 16.

ōdisse, ōdit, to hate; used only in the pf. system and act. voice; but **ōdit** is pres. in sense, *he hates*; the plupf. has the sense of an impf., and the fut. pf. that of a fut. 62.

offendere, -fendit, -fēnsus, to hit against, stumble, hurt, offend. 64.

offēnsiō (offendere), a striking against, stumbling, offense. 65.

offēnsus; partic. of **offendere**.

officiū, a service, kindly service, obligation, duty. 35.

omnīnō, adv. (omnis), altogether, in all, wholly, at all. 33.

omnis, all, every, of all sorts. 7.

onera, onere, etc.; see **onus**.

onerāre (onus), to load. v. 1.

onerārius, adj. (onus), of burden, for freight, transport. 27.

onus, -eris, a burden. 32.

opera, service, pains, care, effort; dare operam, to take care. v. 7.

operis, opera, etc.; see **opus**.

opiniō, impression, belief, expectation, reputation, opinion. v. 13.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impersonal, it is necessary, proper, right, it behooves. 43.

oppidum, a town, stronghold. v. 21.

opportūnē, adv. (**opportūnus**), seasonably, opportunely. 26.

opportūnus, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune. 10.

oppugnāre, to fight against, assault, besiege. v. 21.

(**ops**), not found in nom. and dat. sing., help, aid; in plur., **opēs**, means, resources, property. 66.

opus, -eris, work, piece of work, task; literary work, book, military work, fortification, artistic work, art. v. 9.

ōra, a coast. 4.

ōrāre, to treat, entreat, beg. 67.

ōrātiō (ōrāre), a speaking, talk, speech. 57.

ōrātor (ōrāre), a speaker, orator, ambassador. 39.

ōrdō, -dinis, masc., a row, rank, order, class. 11.

oriri, ortus, to rise, begin. v. 8.

ostendere, -tendit, -tentus (obs (for ob) + **tendere**, to stretch), to spread before, show. 26.

P

pābulāri (pābulum), to forage. v. 17.

pābulātor, a forager. v. 17.

pābulum (pāscere, to feed, pasture), that which feeds, food, especially for animals, fodder. 55.

paene, adv., almost. 66.

pāgus, a district, canton, region. 28.

palūs, -ūdis, fem., a swamp. v. 21.

pār, adj. with one ending for all genders in the nom., abl. **pari**, equal. v. 8.

parāre, to make ready, prepare. 1.

pārēre, pārui, —, to appear, be evident; to appear at call, obey. v. 7.

pars, a part, direction, side, respect. 12.

partim, adv., partly, in part. v. 6.

parum, adv., too little; for comparison see 424, 5. 42.

- parvus**, *little, small*; for comp., see 424, 2. 42.
- passus**, -ūs, *a pace*; a Roman measure about five feet long, a thousand of which made a Roman mile. 27.
- passus**; partic. of **pati**.
- pater**, -tris, *father*. v. 20.
- pati** (-ior), **passus**, *to suffer, permit, let, bear, undergo*. v. 10.
- pauci**, -cae, -ca, (plur.), *few*. 40.
- paucitās** (**pauci**), *fewness, a small number*. 45.
- paulātim**, adv., (**paulum**), *little by little, gradually*. 45.
- paulisper**, adv., *for a little while*. v. 21.
- paulō**, adv., *by a little, a little, somewhat*; in Caesar used only with comparatives. 29.
- paulum**, adv., *a little, somewhat*. 33.
- pāx**, **pācis**, *peace*. 13.
- pecus**, -oris, *cattle, a flock or herd*. v. 12.
- pedes**, -itis, (**pēs**), *a footman, a foot-soldier, one of the infantry*. 14.
- pedester**, **pedestris**, **pedestre**, (**pēs**); the masc. is like the fem. except in the nom. sing.; *on foot, on land, infantry*. 33.
- pedis**, **pedēs**, etc.; see **pēs**.
- peditātus**, -ūs, *infantry*. 51.
- pellere**, **pepulit**, **pulsus**, *to strike, drive, put to flight, defeat*. 52.
- pellis**, *a skin, a hide, leather*. v. 14.
- pendere**, **pendit**, **pēnsus**, *to suspend, weigh, pay, undergo (as a punishment)*. v. 22.
- pēnsus**; partic. of **pendere**.
- pendit**; see **pendere**.
- pepulit**; see **pellere**.
- per**, prep. with accus., *through, over*; in composition, *through, thoroughly, thoroughly, very*. 3.
- peragere**, -ēgit, -āctus, *to carry through, go through with, finish*. v. 2.
- percontātiō**, *to search, search persistently, question, inquire*. v. 13.
- percurrere**, -cucurrit or -currit, -cursus, *to run along, run through, traverse*. 50.
- perducere**, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead or bring through; to draw out, prolong; to bring or win over*. v. 23.
- perēgit**; see **peragere**.
- perequitāre**, partic. wanting, (**equitēs**), *to ride through, ride about*. 14.
- perexiguus**, *very contracted, very narrow, very small*. v. 15.
- perferre**, -tulit, -lātus, *to bear through or home, bring news, spread abroad; endure to the end*. 22.
- perfuga**, masc., (**per** + **fugere**), *a deserter*. v. 18.
- periculum**, *that which tests, peril, danger*. 4.
- perlātus**; partic. of **perferre**.
- permanēre**, -mānsit, -mānsūrus, *to stay, continue*. 23.
- permittere**, -misit, -missus, *to let go, hand over, intrust; let, allow, permit*. v. 11.
- permovere**, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to move deeply, arouse, excite*. 34.
- perniciēs**, -ēī, *destruction, ruin*. 66.
- perpauci**, *very few*. v. 5.
- perpetuus**, *continuous, unbroken, whole; in perpetuum (tempus), for all time, forever*. 51.
- perumpere**, -rūpit, -ruptus, *to break through*. v. 15.
- persequi**, -secūtus, *to follow persistently, follow up, hunt down, chase, pursue, avenge*. v. 10.
- perspicere** (-io), -spēxit, -spectus, *to look through, perceive, ascertain*. 18.
- perterrere**, -terrui, -territus, *to frighten through and through, terrify*. 10.
- pertinere**, -tinuit, —, *to stretch out,*

extend, tend; to belong, pertain, concern. v. 13.
pertulit; see **perferre**.
perturbāre, *they throw into confusion, disturb, alarm.* 8.
perturbātiō (**perturbāre**), *disorder, confusion.* 11.
pervenire, -**vēnit**, -**ventum**, *to come through; ad civitatem pervenire, to arrive at or in the state.* 22.
pēs, **pedis**, *a foot of man or beast, and also the measure of length.* 12.
petere, **petivit** or **petiit**, **petitus**, *to aim at, seek, ask.* 20.
plānus, *flat, level; clear, obvious.* 1.
plēbs, **plēbis**, fem., (same root as **plēnus**), *the common people, commons.* 58.
plēnus, *full.* 42.
plērumque, adv., *for the most part, usually.* 18.
plērusque, -**raque**, -**rumque**, *the greater part of, most; in plur., most, most men or things, very many.* v. 14.
plumbum, *lead; plumbum album, tin.* v. 12.
plūrimus, **plūs**, etc.; see **multus**.
pollicērī, **pollicitus**, *to promise.* 22.
pondus, -**eris**, *weight.* v. 12.
pōnere, **posuit**, **positus**, *to put, place, set; castra pōnere, to pitch a camp.* 65.
populus, *a people, the people, the citizens.* 5.
porta, *a gate.* 4.
portāre, *to carry.* v. 23.
portōrium (**portāre**), *a tax, especially a tax paid on goods imported, duty, customs.* 60.
portus, -**ūs**, *a harbor.* 18.
poscere, **poposcit**, —, *to ask urgently, demand.* v. 6.
positus; partic. of **pōnere**.
posse (**possum**), **potuit**, *to be able; for inflection, see 438.* 15.

post, adv., and prep. with accus., *after, behind, afterwards, later.* 26.
postea, adv., *after, afterwards.* 43.
posteaquam, conj., *after that, as soon as, after.* v. 6.
(posterus), not found in nom. sing. masc.; for comp., see 424, 4; *coming after, following; posterī, as noun, coming generations, posterity.* v. 17.
postpōnere, -**posuit**, -**positus**, *to put after, postpone, esteem less, neglect.* v. 7.
postquam, conj., *after, as soon as.* 41.
postridiē, adv., (**posterī** (for **posterō**) + **diē**), *on the day after, the next day.* v. 10.
postulāre, *to demand, require.* 30.
posuit; see **pōnere**.
potentia, *might, power, authority, influence (personal and political but not official).* 61.
potest; see **posse**.
potestās, *power, lawful authority.* 57.
potuit; see **posse**.
praeceps, adj., nom. the same for all genders, gen. **praecipitis**, abl. **praecipiti**, (**prae**, *before* + **caput**), *head foremost, headlong, steep, abrupt, rapid.* 50.
praeccludere, -**clūsit**, -**clūsus**, (**prae**, *in front of* + **claudere**, *to shut*), *to shut off, close.* v. 9.
praeda, *plunder, booty.* 5.
praedāre (**praeda**), *to plunder.* v. 19.
praedicāre, *to declare openly, publish, proclaim, boast; distinguish from praedicere, to say beforehand, foretell.* 51.
praecēsse, (-**sum**), -**fuit**, -**futūrus**, *to be over, to command; takes the dat.; the pres. partic. praesēns means present, immediate.* 59.
praefectus (partic. of **praeficere**, *to set over*), *an overseer, commander; in Caesar, a colonel of cavalry.* 25.

praeficere (-iō), -fēcit, -fectus, to set over, put in command; the English word "do" was once used in sense of put; "don," do-on, put on. v. 1.
praefigere, -fixit, -fixus, to fasten before or at the point, affix. v. 18.
praefuit, **praefuturus**; see **praeēsse**.
praemittere, -misit, -missus, to send ahead, let go ahead. 21.
praeparāre, to prepare beforehand. v. 9.
praesēns; see **praeēsse**. 59.
praesertim, adv., especially. 56.
praesidium, a defense, garrison, fortification. 28.
praestāre, -stitit, -stitus, to stand before, excel (with dat.); **prae-stat**, it is better; also transitively, to fulfill, discharge, show, furnish. 35.
praesum; see **praeēsse**.
praeter, prep. with accus., along by, contrary to, except, but, in addition to, besides. 19.
praetereā, adv., beyond this, besides. 27.
praeterire (-eō), -iit, -itus, to go by, pass over, neglect; **praeterita**, things gone by, bygones, the past. 64.
prehendere; see **prēndere**.
premere, **pressit**, **pressus**, to press, press down, press hard. 32.
prēndere (or uncontracted **prehendere**), **prēndit**, **prēnsus**, to grasp, catch, hold. 67.
pretium, price, value. 60.
prex, **precis**, a prayer, entreaty, curse; usually found only in the plur. 56.
pridiē, adv., (root **prō-**, **pri-**, before + **diēs**), on the day before; cf. **postrīdiē**. v. 17.
primō, adv., at first, in the first place. 49.
primum, adv., at first, first; **quam primum**, as soon as possible. 21.

primus, first, first of. 7.
princeps, **principis**, adj. or noun, first, chief, leader. 13.
principātus, -ūs, (**princeps**), the leadership, principate. 58.
prior, adj. in comp., 424, 4, former, previous, first (of two). v. 23.
pristinus, former, early, pristine. 38.
priusquam, conj., sooner than, before. 21.
privātum, adv., privately, in private. 58.
privātus, private, personal. v. 8.
prō, prep. with abl., in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to. 3.
probāre, to approve, prove. 4.
prōcēdere, -cessit, -cessurus, to go forward, advance, proceed. 47.
procul, adv., at a distance. v. 17.
prōdere, -didit, -ditus, to put forth, transmit, disclose, betray. 35.
prōducere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead forth, draw out, prolong. 12.
proeliārī, to join battle, fight in battle, battle. 49.
proelium, a battle. 1.
profectiō (**proficiscī**), a departure, start. v. 7.
profectus; partic. of **proficiscī**.
proficiscī, **profectus**, to set out, depart, start. 17.
prōgredi, -gressus, to go forth, advance, proceed. 24.
prohibēre, -hibuit, -hibitus, (**prō** + **habēre**), to hold before, hold off, keep off, prevent. 10.
prōicere (-iō), -iēcit, -iectus, to throw forward, throw forth, throw away. 36.
prōmittere, -misit, -missus, to let go, let grow (of the hair); set forth in view, promise. v. 14.
prope, adv., and prep. with accus., near; for comp., see 424, 5. 36.

prōpellere, -pult, -pulsus, to drive forward, drive away. 34.
propinquus, adj., near, related by blood; as nom. plur. in both masc. and fem., **propinquī**, **propinquae**, kinsmen, kinswomen, relatives. 10.
propior, comp. adj., nearer; positive wanting, sup. **proximus**. 36.
prōpōnere, -posuit, **positus**, to put or set forth, declare, set before the mind, purpose. 57.
propter, prep. with accus., on account of, because of. 26.
propterea, adv., on account of this, therefore; usually in the combination **propterea quod**, which may be translated simply because. 60.
prōpugnāre, to go forth to fight, sally forth, fight in defense. v. 9.
prōpult, **prōpulsus**; see **prōpellere**.
prōsequi, -secutus, to follow forth, escort; to follow up, pursue. 24.
prōspectus, -ūs, an outlook, distant view, sight. v. 10.
prōspectus; partic. of **prōspicere**.
prōspicere (-iō), -spēxit, -spectus, to look ahead, look out, watch, foresee, provide for. v. 7.
prōtinus, adv., right onward, continuously, immediately, forthwith. v. 17.
prōvectus; partic. of **prōvehere**.
prōvehere, -vexit, -vectus, to carry forward; in pass., to be carried forward, to advance, proceed; note active translation. 41.
prōvexit; see **prōvehere**.
prōvidere, -vidit, -vīsus, to foresee, take precautions, provide, provide for. 43.
prōvincia, a province, i.e. a territory governed by a magistrate sent from Rome; in the Gallic War the name is applied especially to that part of Transalpine Gaul which had been conquered by the Romans long be-

fore Caesar's time; this part of France is now called *Provence*. 64.
prōvīsus; partic. of **prōvidere**.
proximē; see **prope**.
proximus; see **propior**.
pūblicē, adv., publicly, by public authority, in the name of the state. 55.
pūblicus (**populus**), of the people, public; **rēs pūblica**, commonwealth, public interest, re-public. 35.
pūgna, fighting, a battle. 7.
pūgnāre, to fight. 7.
pulsus; partic. of **pellere**.
pulvis, **pulveris**, masc., dust. 47.
putāre, to clean, prune, clear up, settle (of accounts); reckon, think. v. 12.

Q

Q., for **Quīntus**.
quā, adv., where. v. 8.
quadrāgintā, indecl., forty. v. 11.
quaerere, **quaesivit**, **quaesitus**, to seek, look for, ask. 59.
quaestor, a quaestor, treasurer, paymaster. 25.
quam, inter. and rel. adv. and conj., as, how, than. 20.
quantum, rel. adv., (**quantus**), as much as, so much as, so far as. 24.
quantus, inter. or rel. adj., how great? how much? as great as; after **tantus**, as. 20.
quārtus, fourth. 29.
quattuor, indecl., four. v. 5.
-que, enclitic conj., and; making a closer connection than **et**. 23.
queri, **questus**, to complain. 40.
quī, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron. and adj., (71, 6), who, which, what, that. 14.
quī, **quae**, **quod**, inter. adj., of what sort? what? 20.
quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, (declined like **quī**), pron. and

pronominal adj., *whoever, whatever*.

37.

quidem, adv. of emphasis, calling attention often to the preceding word, *in truth, certainly, at least*; **nē Caesar quidem**, *not even Caesar*; note position of **Caesar**. 55.

quīn, conj. and adv., *in truth, nay more*; with subjv., *that, but that, from, without*; sometimes equal to the relative **quī** and a negative, *who . . . not*. 58.

quīngenti, *five hundred*. v. 13.

quīnque, indecl., *five*. v. 7.

quīntus, *fifth*. 24.

Quīntus, a Roman first name.

quis, quid, for decl., see 430; inter. substantive pron., *who? what?* 20.

quis, qua, quid, indef. pron., *some one, any one, something, anything*; declined like the interrog. **quis**, but note **qua** for **quae** in nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut. The indef. **quis**, in **Caesar**, is usually found only after **sī, nisi, nē, num**. 63.

quisquam, masc. and fem., **quicquam** or **quidquam**, neut.; gen. **cūiusquam**; dat. **cuiquam**; accus. **quemquam**, masc., **quidquam**, or **quicquam**, neut.; abl. **quōquam**: indef. pron. and adj., used only in negative, conditional, and comparative sentences, *any, anybody, anything*. 19.

quisque, quidque, gen. **cūiusque**, dat. **cuique**, etc., indef. pron. and adj., *each, each one, every one, everything*; adj. form **quisque, quaeque, quodque**. 65.

quō, inter., rel. and indef. adv., *to what place? to which place, whither, to any place*; cf. **quā**. v. 13.

quoad, conj. (the adv. **quō** + **ad**), *up to which point, as far as, until, as long as*. v. 17.

quod, conj., *because, for, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that*. 7.

quot, indecl. rel. and interrog. adj., *how many? as many as*. 27.

quotannīs, or quot annīs, adv., *every year, yearly*. v. 1.

R

rādere, rāsīt, rāsus, *to scrape, rub, shave, graze*. v. 14.

rārus, adj., *of loose texture, far apart, here and there, rare*. v. 9.

rāsus; partic. of **rādere**.

ratio, *a reckoning, consideration, plan, method, system, reason*; **habēre ratiōnem**, *to keep an account, take account*. 53.

rebelliō (bellum), *a renewal of war, rebellion*. 43.

recēns, *fresh, recent, vigorous*. v. 16.

receptus, -ūs, (recipere), *retreat, way of retreat*. 49.

receptus; partic. of **recipere**.

recipere (-iō), **-cēpit, -ceptus**, *to take back, recover, receive*; **sē recipit**, *he betakes himself, withdraws*. 26.

recūsāre (re-, back, against + causa), *to make an objection, refuse*. v. 6.

redēmit, redēptus, etc.; see **redimere**.

redeō; see **redire**.

redimere, -ēmit, -ēptus, (emere), *to buy back, buy up, purchase*. 60.

redire (-eō), **rediit, reditus**, *to go back, return*. v. 11.

reditus, -ūs, (redire), *a going back, return*. 45.

redūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead back, draw back, restore*. 12.

referre, rettulit, relātus, *to bear back, report, announce*; **pedem referre**, *to retreat*. 34.

reficere (-iō), **-fēcit, -fectus**, *to make again, repair, restore, refresh*. 43.

regiō, *a direction, part of the country, region*. 11.

rēgnum (**rēx**), *royal power, kingdom.* 63.

rēicere (-iō), **rēiēcit**, **rēiectus**, *to throw back.* v. 5.

relātus; partic. of **referre**.

relictus; partic. of **relinquere**.

religiō, *conscientiousness, sense of right, scruple, religion.* v. 6.

relinquere, -liquit, -lictus, *to leave behind, abandon.* 26.

reliquit; see **relinquere**.

reliquus, *remaining, left, the rest of.* 17.

remanēre, -mānsit, —, *to stay behind, remain.* 23.

rēmigāre (**rēmex**, *a rower*), *to row.* v. 8.

remigrāre, *to move back, return.* 8.

remittere, -misit, -missus, *to send back, let go back, relax, remit, give up.* 23.

removēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to move back, remove.* 34.

rēmus, *an oar.* 8.

renūntiāre, *to bring back word, report.* 24.

repellere, -pulit, -pulsus, *to drive back.* v. 9.

repente, adv., *suddenly.* v. 17.

repentinus, *sudden.* v. 22.

reperire, **repperit**, **repertus**, *to find out.* 20.

reportāre, *to carry back, carry off* (in case of a victory). 3.

repperit; see **reperire**.

reprehendere, -prehendit, -prehēnsus, (to hold back), *blame, reprehend.* 67.

repugnāre, *to fight back, resist, be opposed, be repugnant.* 64.

repulit, **repulsus**, etc.; see **repellere**.

rēs, **rei**, *a thing, matter, fact, circumstance, condition, interest; rēs secundae, prosperity; rēs adversae, adversity; prō rē, according to circumstances; rēs frumentāria, grain supply; rēs militāris, warfare, mili-*

tary science; rēs familiāris, private property; rēs pūblica, commonweal, commonwealth, public interest, re-public; novae rēs, a new form of government, revolution. 21.

resistere, -stitit, —, *to stand back, make a stand, resist.* v. 7.

restituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to set up again, restore.* 62.

retinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, *to hold back; to hold fast, retain.* 59.

retrahere, -trāxit, -trāctus, *to drag back, bring back.* v. 7.

rettulit; see **referre**.

reverti, **reversus**, *deponent, but usually the act. form revertit is used in the perfect, to turn back, return.* 21.

revocāre, *to call back.* v. 7.

rēx, **rēgis**, *king.* 13.

rīpa, *bank (of a river).* v. 18.

rogāre, *to ask.* 67.

Rōmānus, adj. and noun, *Roman or a Roman.* 6.

rota, *a wheel.* 49.

Rūfus (probably meaning *red*), a Roman first name. 13.

rūrsus, adv., (for **reversus** from **revertere**, *to turn back*), *turned back, back, again, anew.* 45.

S

Sabīnus, a Roman name. 25.

saepe, adv., *often.* v. 7.

sagitta, *an arrow.* 2.

sānus, *sound, sound in mind, sane.* v. 7.

satis, as indecl. adj. in nom. and accus., *enough, sufficient*; as noun, *enough, a sufficiency*; as adv., *enough, sufficiently.* 26.

satus, partic. of **serere**; *sown; begotten, born.*

scapha, *a skiff, boat.* 2.

scīre, **scīvīt**, **scītus**, *to know; īnscīēns*

- (in neg. + *scire*), *unknowing, unaware*. 63.
- scribere, scripsit, scriptus**, to write. v. 11.
- sē**, pron., accus. sing. or plur. of **sui**.
- sēcrētō**, adv., *separately, secretly*. 60.
- secundus** (**sequi**), *following, second, favorable* (probably from a wind following right astern). 30.
- secūtus**; partic. of **sequi**.
- sed**, conj., *but*. 20.
- sēditiosus** (**sēditio**, *discord*), *full of discord, quarrelsome, seditious*. 58.
- Segontiāci**, a tribe in Britain. v. 21.
- Segovax, -actis**, a British king. v. 22.
- sēmita**, a footpath, byway. v. 19.
- semper**, adv., *always, ever*. 61.
- sententia** (**sentire**), *an opinion, view, judgment, belief*. 2.
- sentire, sēnsit, sēnsus**, to feel, perceive, think; experience, find. 59.
- sēparātīm**, adv., *apart, separately*. 65.
- septem**, indecl. adj., *seven*. 30.
- septentriō**, masc., *the seven stars in the Great Bear, the northern sky, the north*. 11.
- septimus** (**septem**), *seventh*. 47.
- septingenti**, *seven hundred*. v. 13.
- Sēquani**, the *Sequanians*, a Gallic tribe near the *Haeduans*. 63.
- sequi, secūtus**, to follow, take as guide, obey, seek, strive after. 24.
- serere, sēvit, satus**, to sow, plant, produce. v. 14.
- servāre**, to save, save the life of, preserve. 8.
- sētius** (**sēcious**), adv. in comp., *less; nihilō sētius*, *less by nothing, nevertheless*. v. 7.
- sēvit**; see **serere**.
- sēvocāre**, to call aside. v. 6.
- sexāgintā**, indecl., *sixty*. v. 5.
- sexcenti**, *six hundred*. v. 2.
- sī**, conj., *if, whether*. 8.
- sic**, adv., *thus, in this way, so*. v. 11.
- signum**, a sign, signal, standard. 4.
- silva**, a forest. 2.
- silvestris** (**silva**), of a wood, wooded, woody. v. 19.
- simul**, adv., *at the same time, together, at once*. 33.
- sine**, prep. with abl., *without*. 3.
- singulāris**, one by one, alone, unique, exceptional, remarkable. 37.
- singuli**, nom. plur., *one apiece, one at a time, singly*. v. 6.
- sinister, -tra, -trum**, at the left hand, left. v. 8.
- sōl, sōlis**, masc., *the sun; oriēns sōl*, *the rising sun, east*. 41.
- sollicitāre**, to stir up, make uneasy, instigate, tamper with. v. 6.
- sōlum**; see **sōlus**.
- sōlus** (for decl., see 421), *alone, sole*; the neut. sing. **sōlum** is used as an adverb, only. 59.
- solūtus**; partic. of **solvere**.
- solvere, solvit, solūtus**, to loosen, set free, pay, fulfill; often used of ships, when **nāvem** or **nāvis** may be understood, to set sail. 28.
- soror**, sister. 62.
- spatium**, space, extent, distance; used both of place and time. 52.
- speciēs, -ei**, sight, semblance, appearance, pretense. 34.
- spectāre**, to look at, face, front, lie, be situated. v. 13.
- speculātōrius**, adj., of spies, observation. 38.
- spēs, spei**, hope, expectation. 63.
- spoliāre**, to deprive, strip, despoil. v. 6.
- stabilitās** (**stāre**), steadfastness, firmness. 50.
- statim**, adv., on the spot, straightway, immediately. 39.
- statiō** (**stāre**), a standing, station, sentinel's beat, anchorage, harbor; a sentry, sentinel. 47.

statuere, statuit, statūtus, to cause to stand, set, fix, decide, determine. 65.
strepitus, -ūs, a confused noise, din, rattle, clatter. 49.
studium, desire, zeal, pursuit. 4.
sub, prep. with accus. and abl.; with abl., of rest in a place, under, at the foot of, close to, at; with accus., of motion toward, to a position under, beneath; of time, at, just before. v. 8.
subducere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead away, withdraw, draw from below, haul up, beach. 12.
subductiō (subducere), a drawing up, hauling ashore, beaching. v. 1.
subesse (-sum), —, to be under, concealed in; to be near, to approach. v. 23.
subicere (-iō), -iēcit, -iectus, to throw under, place under, make subject, expose, subject. 36.
subitō, adv., suddenly. 40.
sublātus; partic. of **tollere**.
sublevāre, to lift from beneath, lift up, aid. 56.
subministrāre, to give as aid, provide, furnish. 17.
submittere, -mīsīt, -missus, to let down, send secretly, send as aid. 21.
submovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, to move away, dislodge, drive off. 34.
subsequi, -secūtus, to follow after, follow close. 24.
subsidiū, troops in reserve, auxiliaries, support, help. 38.
subsum; see **subesse**.
subvehere, -vexit, -vectus, to carry from below, carry up. 55.
succedere, -cessit, -cessūrus, to come from below, come up or near, come into the place of, succeed; to be successful, succeed. 47.
succidere, -cīdit, -cīsus, (caedere, to cut), to cut off below, cut from under, fell. v. 9.

sudis, a stake, pile. v. 18.
suī, reflex. pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; for decl., see 426. 20.
Sulpicius, a Roman name. 25.
sūmere, sūmpsīt, sūmptus, to take, take in hand, assume, appropriate. 56.
summa, the top, chief point, main thing, sum, general control; summa imperi, the chief command. v. 11.
summus; see **superus**.
sūmpsīt, sūmptus; see **sūmere**.
sūmptus, -ūs (sūmere), outlay, expense. 61.
superāre, to overcome. 4.
superesse (-sum), -fuit, -futūrus, to be (left) over, remain, survive. v. 22.
supersum; see **superesse**.
superus, adj., what is above, upper; comp. **superior**, of place, higher, of time, former; superl. **suprēmus** or **summus**, the highest, the highest part of, the top of. 22.
suppetere, -petīvit, -petītus, to be on hand, in store. 55.
supplicium, a kneeling, punishment, usually of death, because criminals were beheaded while kneeling. 64.
suprā, adv., above, before. 39.
suscipere (-iō), -cēpit, -ceptus, to take from beneath, take up, undertake. 56.
suspiciāri, to suspect. 46.
suspiciō (sub + specere, to see; cf. perspicere), mistrust, suspicion. 46.
sustinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, to hold from beneath, hold up, sustain, withstand. 14.
sustulit; see **tollere**.
suus, reflex. possessive adj., his, her, its, or their. 38.

T

tacēre, tacuit, tacitus, trans. and intrans., to be silent, be silent about, pass over in silence. 57.

tālea, a rod, bar. v. 12.

tam, adv., *so*; limiting adjs. and advs. 56.

tamen, *nevertheless, yet*; often used as a correlative to *etsi*. 15.

Tamesis, masc., accus. -im, abl. -ī, the Thames. v. 11.

tandem, at length (cf. the Eng. "to drive tandem"), finally; in impatient questions, *pray, tell me*. v. 7.

tantulus (tantus), *so little, such little, such trifling*. 26.

tantum, adv., (**tantus**), *so greatly, so much, so far*. 50.

tantus, *so great, such large, such*. 36.

tardē, adv., *slowly, tardily*. 29.

Taximagulus, a British king. v. 22.

tegere, tēxit, tēctus, to cover, hide, protect. v. 18.

tēlum, a dart, spear. 29.

temerē, adv., *blindly, recklessly, without cause*. 19.

tēmō, -ōnis, a pole or tongue of a wagon. 50.

temperantia (temperāre), self-control, temperance. 64.

temperāre (tempus), to observe proper measure, control oneself, be temperate; rule, control, regulate. v. 12.

tempestās (tempus), a portion of time, season, weather, storm. 28.

tempus, -oris, time. 18.

tenēre, tenuit, —, to hold, keep, possess; keep back, restrain. 14.

tergum, a back. 26.

terra, the earth, ground, land. v. 13.

terrītāre, —, —, (**terrēre**, to frighten), to keep in fear, alarm. v. 6.

terror, fright. 19.

tertius, third. 28.

testūdō, a tortoise, a lyre (made of a tortoise shell), an arched room, an arched shed, or a roof of interlocked shields; see p. 249. v. 9.

timēre, timuit, —, to fear. v. 6.

timor (timēre), fear. 51.

Titūrius, a Roman name. 25.

tollere, sustulit, sublātus, to lift, raise; to take off, destroy, kill. 30.

tormentum (torquēre, to twist), a hurling engine, a twisted cord, a rack; anguish, torment. 34.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*. v. 22.

tōtus (for decl., see 421) the whole, the whole of. 43.

trādūcere or trānsdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead or draw across. 63.

trāiectus, -ūs, (trāicere, to throw across), a crossing over, passing over, passage. 21.

tranquillitās, quietness, calm. v. 23.

trānsire (-eō), -iit, -itus, to go across, cross, pass over. 45.

trānsmisus, -ūs, a passing over, passage. v. 13.

trānsportāre, to carry across, transport. 25.

Trebōnius, a Roman name; Caius Trebonius was a political supporter and army officer of Caesar, but afterward one of the conspirators against him. v. 17.

trēs, neut. tria, three. v. 8.

tribuere, tribuit, tribūtus, to assign, allot, bestow. v. 7.

tribūnus, a tribune, a military officer; also an officer, defender and representative of the common people at Rome; cf. the word Tribune as the name of a newspaper. 30.

tribus; see **trēs**.

trigintā, indecl., thirty. 52.

Trinobantēs, -um, a British tribe. v. 20.

tripertitō, adv., in three parts, into three parts. v. 10.

triquetrus, adj., with three corners, triangular. v. 13.

Troucillus, *Caius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. 64.

tuērī, tūtus, to look at, watch, watch over, guard. v. 8.

tulit, tulerat, etc.; see **ferre**.

tum, adv., then, at that time. v. 36.

turma, a troop, company, squadron (of cavalry). 4.

tūtus; partic. of **tuērī**; as adj. means protected, safe.

U

ubi, inter. and rel. conj. and adv., where, in which place, in what place? when. 20.

ūllus, adj. (for decl., see 421), any; used only in negative, conditional, and comparative sentences. 42.

ulterior (424, 4), farther, more remote. 28.

ultrō, adv., beyond, besides, without compulsion, voluntarily. 40.

umquam (unquam), at any time, ever. v. 17.

ūnā, adv., together. 23.

unde, inter. and rel. adv., from which place, from what place? whence? 20.

undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides. 20.

ūniversus, adj., all together, all in one, in a body, en masse. 36.

ūnus (for decl., see 421), one, alone. 30.

ūsus, -ūs, use, practice, experience. 18.

ūsus; partic. of **ūtī**.

ut or **utī**, conj., how, as, when; that, in order that, so that. 21.

utroque, utraque, utrumque (for decl., see **uter**, 421), each, either, both. 37.

ūtī, ūsus, to enjoy, take advantage of, use; governs the ablative. 20.

utī; see **ut**.

uxor, wife. 62.

V

vadum, a shallow place, ford. 37.

vagārī, to wander, roam about. v. 19.

valēre, valuit, valitūrus, to be strong, well, in good health; to be able; imperative **valē**, farewell. 58.

Valerius, a Roman name. 64.

vāllum (vāllus, a stake), a line of palisades, rampart, wall. v. 21.

vāstāre, to lay waste, ravage. v. 19.

vectigal, -ālis, neut. (has the endings of **mare** (416) except in nom. and accus. sing.), tax, revenue. 60.

vectōrius (vehere, to carry), adj., of carrying, transport, freight. v. 8.

vel, conj., or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or; as adv., even. 65.

velle (volō), voluit; for inflection, see 440; to wish, be willing. 26.

Veneticus, adj., of (or with) the Veneti or Venetians, Venetian. 22.

venire, vēnit, ventum, to come. 22.

ventitāre (venire), to keep coming, resort. 47.

ventus, the wind. 9.

verbum, a word. 67.

verērī, veritus, to feel awe of, fear. 64.

vergere, —, —, to slope, be situated. 17.

vergobretus, vergobret, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans. 57.

vērō, adv., in truth, surely, in fact, but. 37.

vertere, vertit, versus, to turn. 41.

vērūs, true, right, genuine, well-founded; the neut. sing. is often a noun meaning truth. 60.

vestire, vestivit, vestitus, (vestis, a garment), to cover with a garment, clothe. v. 14.

vetāre, vetuit, vetitus, to forbid. v. 9.

veterēs, veteris, etc.; see **vetus**.

vetitus; partic. of **vetāre**.

vetuit ; see **vetāre**.

vetus, masc., fem., and neut. nom. sing.; gen. **veteris** ; other endings like those of **vocāns**, 423, except those of the forms **vetera** and **veterum** ; *old, of long standing, former* ; sup. **veterrimus**. v. 1.

via, way, road ; way, method. v. 19.

viciēs or **viciēns**, adv., *twenty times*. v. 13.

vidēre, **vidit**, **visus**, *to see*, both of the eyes and the mind ; in passive, *to be seen, seem, seem good*. 41.

vigilia, *a watching, watch* of the night ; one of the four equal parts into which the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise. 28.

vīgintī, indecl., *twenty*. v. 2.

vinculum, *that which binds, bond, chain*. 4.

vīrēs ; see **vīs**.

virtūs, -tūtis, fem., (*vir, man*), *manliness, virtue, bravery*. 12.

vīs, fem., gen. and dat. sing. rare, accus. **vim**, abl. **vī** ; nom. plur. **vīrēs**, gen. **vīrium**, etc.; meaning in sing. *force, violence* ; in plur. *strength, power*. 52.

visus ; partic. of **vidēre**.

vīta, *life*. 57.

vītāre, *to avoid, shun*. 67.

vitrum, woad, a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

vīvere, **vīxit**, —, *to live*. v. 14.

vocāre, *to call, summon*. 3.

volō, **volēbat**, **voluit**, etc.; see **velle**.

voluntās (**volō**), *will, wish, inclination, consent, good will*. 62.

voluptās (**volō**), *satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight*. v. 12.

Volusēnus, a Roman officer. 21.

vōx, **vōcis**, *voice, utterance, saying*. 13.

vulgus, 2d decl., neut. by exception, *the crowd, the masses, the rabble*. 66.

vulnus, -eris, *a wound*. v. 9.

vult, **vultis**, etc.; see **velle**.

